

ADAMAWA FULFULDE

AN INTRODUCTORY COURSE

by

CORINNE A. PELLETIER

A. NEIL SKINNER

Text recorded by Umaru Yerima Isa

Illustrations by Robert Cavey

revised 1981



ADAMAWA FULFULDE  
AN INTRODUCTORY COURSE

by

CORINNE A. PELLETIER

A. NEIL SKINNER

Text recorded by Umaru Yerima Isa

Illustrations by Robert Cavey

revised 1981

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The preparation of this book involved the participation of many people to whom we are grateful. First and foremost, we are grateful to those Fulbe who helped: Umaru Yerima Isa who, in addition to recording the tapes, contributed a great amount of editorial information for the Fulfulde text; Muhammadu Bashiru Abba Wali, Ahmed Song, Gidado Bakari, Mustapha Abba and his wife Aishatu.

Ivan Dihoff of the African Studies Program at Boston University provided excellent comment.

At the University of Wisconsin - Madison, there have been many who have given of their time and expertise. Graduate students Christine Holten, Lucy Jarosz and Joko Sengova enthusiastically participated in the test teaching of the course and provided valuable insight and suggestions.

Pat Sanden, Secretary for the Department of African Languages and Literature, graciously and competently discharged the administrative duties of the project.

Laura Beckett skillfully typed innumerable drafts and helped in the organization of the data.

T. R. Goldsworthy, director, Jim Armbrecht, recording and duplication technician, Lamar Karow, lab services librarian, and Mildred Lyle, acquisitions librarian, of the Laboratories for Recorded Instruction, aided us at the many stages of tape production.

We are particularly grateful to Randall K. Thomte who served as linguistics consultant for the textbook and who meticulously edited and proofread the final drafts.

We appreciate the financial support accorded this project by the United States Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare.

We thank the University of Wisconsin Department of African Languages and Literature and the U. W. African Studies Program which also provided excellent facilities and cooperation during the preparation of the text. Some of the work was also done while one of the authors was at Ahmadu Bello University, Zaria, Nigeria; and the help of the Department of Nigerian and African Languages of that University is also acknowledged.

The book was prepared, edited and formatted on an NBI System II word processor. Vincent Pelletier operated the NBI and prepared the final copy. Special thanks to Gary Benzine and Bev Tracy of the Gordon Flesch Company, Madison, Wisconsin.

## INTRODUCTION

The language called Fulfulde by its original speakers, the Fulbe people, is now spoken by millions of West Africans - from the Gambia to Cameroun. The Fulbe are traditionally nomad cattle-owners whose way of life is inextricably tied to their livestock. In some regions, however, the Fulbe have turned to a more settled existence as farmers and as Muslim scholars. From this latter group sprang, during the nineteenth century, several reform movements which culminated in the establishment of kingdoms ruled by Fulbe emirs. Thus, economically and politically, Fulfulde speakers have greatly influenced much of West Africa's development.

Spread over a wide geographical area, the Fulfulde language has diverged, through time, into a number of mutually intelligible dialects. This book is concerned with the dialect that is spoken in Adamawa (Gongola State of Nigeria) and in border regions of the Republic of Cameroun. In this border area, Fulfulde is used as a second language, especially for trade. For this reason, among others, the Adamawa dialect is different from the Fulfulde which is spoken further west whence the ancestors of the Adamawa Fulbe came. Fortunately for the student, its use as a lingua franca has resulted in some simplification of the grammar.

While primarily concerned with teaching the student to speak the Fulfulde language, our choices of vocabulary and dialogue have been largely determined by considerations of introducing some Fulbe cultural information. The inclusion of illustrations in the text has also been prompted by this consideration. To be told that *tummude* means *calabash* is one thing; to see an illustration of a calabash in use (i.e. in some kind of cultural context) is, we feel, a far more effective way of language teaching.

This book is intended as a teach-yourself aid for those who are not necessarily language specialists. It is not a grammar, and the amount of vocabulary is restricted to what a student can thoroughly master during the course. The student interested in a detailed grammar of Fulfulde is referred to Stennes (1967). The standard Fulfulde dictionary is Taylor (1931).

Since Adamawa Fulfulde: An Introductory Course is a competency based, self-teaching text, indispensable to its efficient use is a set of accompanying audio tapes available from the Laboratories for Recorded Instruction, UW-Madison, Madison, Wisconsin 53706.

This competency based course requires the student to thoroughly master all of the material presented in a given lesson before proceeding to the following lesson. Since language learning is not an overnight process, and since it unavoidably involves some hard work, the following guidelines will be of use to the student.

## Dialogues

It is important to memorize the dialogue or narrative for each lesson. The teacher on the tape will say it for you once at a normal pace, and then twice more, giving you time to repeat. Repeat the dialogue for as long as it takes to be able to recite smoothly and without hesitation, imitating the teacher's "normal pace" pronunciation. It is not advisable, however, to persist in this endeavor for more than twenty minutes without a break.

## Vocabulary

Our aim has been to introduce only as much vocabulary as can be completely mastered during the course. A recommended practice for facilitating vocabulary acquisition is to make cards with the Fulfulde word on one side and the English equivalent on the other, and to review the cards often.

## Drills

Again mastery is the keynote. If necessary, use the textbook when you first attempt a drill, but work on a lesson until you can do all the drills with the book closed. And, as with dialogue mastery, it is not advisable to do drill practice for more than twenty minutes at a time. Once you are fairly comfortable with Fulfulde pronunciation, you may wish to review or practice a drill without using the tape. You may find it useful to cover the answer while keeping the cues visible, and, for some of the drills, to cover first one portion and then the other.

## Jangde timmunde - *final reading*

As with the drills, you may prefer to look at the textbook the first time through, but don't be satisfied until you can comfortably understand the jangde timmunde with the book closed. Repeat the phrases after the teacher for additional fluency practice, and then read the entire jangde aloud on your own without relying on the tape.

## Ngewta - *conversation*

The illustrations at the end of the lessons are designed to stimulate spontaneous comment from you in Fulfulde. Be sure to use as much vocabulary and as many grammatical constructions as possible both from the lesson you've just completed, and from previous lessons. Do not, however, attempt lengthy or complicated explanations. This will only prove frustrating and shift your concentration away from what you have mastered. If you continue to study Fulfulde in a deliberate, thorough manner, you will master complex speech in time. For the present, you are learning introductory material in a competency based course.

Although primarily designed for self-teaching, the course is well suited for a tutorial or classroom situation. The teacher is advised to heed the guidelines provided above; and, in addition, the following points will be useful.

Practice the dialogue until a lively and natural sounding exchange is achieved. Be sure to change roles so that the student gets practice with each one.

For long sentences, the technique of "backward build-up" is effective. Have the student repeat the last phrase until he or she knows it, and then the second to last phrase, then both together, and so on until the entire sentence has been learned.

For example, repeat each step as many times as necessary:

1) Teacher: ...*haa wuro ma'b'be*.

Student repeats.

2) T       ...*jangirde maw'be*...  
   S

3) T       ...*jangirde maw'be haa wuro ma'b'be*.  
   S

4) T       O *yi'di nastugo*...  
   S

5) T       O *yi'di nastugo jangirde maw'be haa wuro ma'b'be*.  
   S

Although thorough mastery is the mainstay of the course, beware of carrying on drill practice for longer than twenty minutes at a time. To be efficient, the student needs a break from such concentrated effort; and this applies to classroom work as well as to practice with the tapes.

Do, however, insist that the vocabulary and grammatical structures be accurately reproduced. Don't settle for less than perfect in this regard, no matter how long it takes. The object of the course is not to complete it in record time, but to master the Fulfulde presented.

For the *Ngewta* section, a teacher can prompt the student by asking questions and also encourage the student to ask questions in turn. Care must be taken during these sessions, however, not to introduce items extraneous to the text. There may be a strong temptation for the teacher to elaborate and for the student to take extensive notes in a futile effort to retain too much too soon.

It is our sincere wish that your introduction to the study of Adamawa Fulfulde be a stimulating and rewarding experience.

C.A.P.

A.N.S.

July, 1978

Madison, Wisconsin

English text appears in this typestyle.  
Fulfulde text appears in this typestyle.  
Translations appear in this typestyle.

**Page Image  
not Available**

**Missing Page  
vii**



Lesson 7	----- Pronunciation: nasals 'Don 'do, 'don ton, wala 'do, wala ton 'Dume 'don?, 'dume ton? Noun classes: 'dam and ka	65
Lesson 8	----- Pronunciation: glottal 'y Haa, haa nder Impersonal possessive pronouns after prepositions and locatives Noun classes: nga and ngo	77
Lesson 9	----- Noun class: ngol The Continuous: an ongoing action —— 'don wa'da 'dume? —— 'don defa 'dume? . Pronouns as direct objects with the Continuous	90
Lesson 10	----- Noun class: ndi The days of the week The Continuous in the sense of "does regularly" The Continuous in the sense of "an action taking place at the time of speaking" Jooni, jonta	102
Lesson 11	----- Noun class: o Negative of the Continuous: -ataa The Relative Future: -ata	111
Lesson 12	----- 'Be Subject pronouns: mi, a, o, min, en, on, 'be Inclusive and exclusive "we" 'Don, wala 'don: concerning the whereabouts of a person Fuh	121
Lesson 13	----- The Stative	131
Lesson 14	----- Expressions: mi yetti, sey nyande go The Negative of the Stative: -aaki, -aay The -no suffix: Past Continuous and Past Stative	140

Lesson 15	-----	147
	dow les haa dow haa les haa jungo haa toy Noun classes: ki and ngel feere	
Lesson 16	-----	161
	Non-human emphatic pronouns Possessive pronouns after dow, les, kombi and yaasi	
Lesson 17	-----	171
	Noun class: 'be Initial consonant alternation in human nouns	
Lesson 18	-----	179
	Noun plurals ending in -e Noun class: 'de Initial consonant alternation in non-human nouns Maa, koo, malla, maa boo, koo boo	
Lesson 19	-----	186
	Noun plurals ending in -i Noun class: 'di	
Lesson 20	-----	194
	Locatives: yeeso 'baawo haa yeeso haa 'baawo hakkunde	
Lesson 21	-----	203
	Counting, 1 - 10 Number concord	
Lesson 22	-----	213
	The Completed: -i suffix The Negative of the Completed: -aa, -aa, -aaki	
Lesson 23	-----	221
	The Singular Imperative: -u suffix The plural Imperative: -ee suffix	

Lesson 24	Object personal pronouns:   yam or -am maa, ma mo min en on 'be	227
Lesson 25	Singular human possessive pronouns: am; maa, maa'da; maako Parts of the body Asking about a person's health	235
Lesson 26	Plural human possessive pronouns: amin; mee'den, men; moo'don, mon; ma'b'be	249
Lesson 27	The Past Completed: -no suffix Expressions of time:   asaweere 'do asaweere saaliinde lewru 'do lewru saaliindu hikka rowani rowtani 'dum wa'di hitaande woore kitaale 'di'di, etc. Demonstratives: this, these, that, which	257
Lesson 28	Emphatic personal pronouns:   min an kanko minin enen onon kam'be Juxtaposed verbs and verb phrases Conjoined pronouns before a verb	266
Lesson 29	The Subjunctive Polite requests and commands: ndikka, sey, useni, and le	273
Lesson 30	Qualitative verbs Masin	282

Lesson 31	----- The Infinitive The Infinitive used as a noun The Infinitive after the verbs: wayri, mee'di, waawi, 'buri Sam	289
Lesson 32	----- Family members Woni Ko in place of 'dume	300
Lesson 33	----- Personal pronoun possessives for family members Kori	307
Lesson 34	----- Numbers, 11 - 100	316
Lesson 35	----- Nigerian money Some market vocabulary and market phrases	323
Lesson 36	----- The Future and the Habitual -an, -ay, -ata suffixes Yam with the Future -e to replace maa for the Future, the Habitual and the Subjunctive The Subjunctive and the Habitual interchangeable in some contexts	333
Lesson 37	----- The Benefactive: -an- infix The correct order for direct and indirect objects The Future Benefactive and maa The Subjunctive and maa The Subjunctive Benefactive and maa The Imperative Benefactive and yam	344
Lesson 38	----- Telling time Ndey wakkati, ndey nyande Wakkati ndey, nyande ndey The Relative Future Benefactive Diga The adjective derived from mawnugo	353

Lesson 39	_____	365
	Ko in relative clauses	
	The noun class marker for "which" and "that" in relative clauses	
	Haa for "where" in relative clauses	
	The noun class marker for "where" in relative clauses	
	Mo and 'be for "who" and "whom" in relative clauses	
	Peetel	
	The adjective derived from fam'dugo	
Lesson 40	_____	377
	The Conditional: to	
	Counterfactuals: to and daa	
	The adjective derived from 'duu'dugo	
Lesson 41	_____	385
	The Distantive: -oy- infix	
	The Causative: -in- infix	
	The adjective derived from woo'dugo	
Final Reading	_____	395
Appendix A: The Fulfulde Noun Class System		396
Appendix B: Aspects of Fulfulde Concord		398
Appendix C: Initial Consonant Alternation		402
Appendix D: Inverted Subject Pronouns		407
Appendix E: Formulaic expressions		412
Select Bibliography		414
Glossary		415

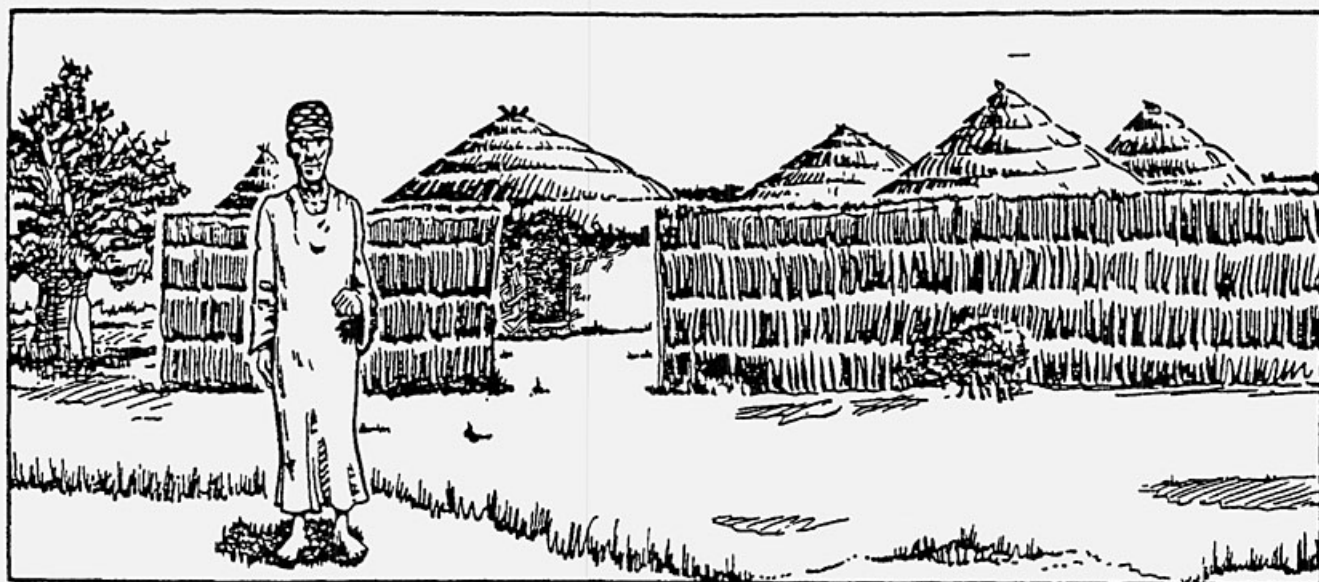
## LESSON I

### Objectives

After completing Lesson I the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 17 vocabulary items
- differentiate between glottalized 'b and 'd and their plain counterparts
- ask and answer the questions:
  - 'Dum 'dume?
  - 'Dum moy?
  - X 'dumeejo?\*
- understand and use the Fulfulde possessive.

\*X or Y stands for a person's name.



### Dialogue

Mallumjo: 'Dum moyjo?

*What type of person is this?*

Pukaraajo: 'Dum gorko.

*It is a man.*

M: 'Dum moy?

*Who is it?*

P: 'Dum Buuba.\*

*It is Buba.*

M: Buuba 'dumeejo?

*What nationality is Buba?*

P: Buuba 'dum Pullo.

*Buba is a Pullo.*

### Vocabulary

mallumjo: teacher

pukaraajo: student

'dum: it, he, she

moyjo?: what type of person?

gorko: man, husband

moy: who

'dumeejo?: what nationality? of what ethnic group?

Pullo: Pullo or Fulani

Buuba\*: Buba (man's name)

\*A Note: for proper nouns in the dialogues and drills, we are using the spelling which accurately reflects the pronunciation just as we have with other words. The standard spelling of proper nouns appears in the English text and also in the glossary.

## Orthography

There is a one-to-one correspondence between the sound and the symbol in Fulfulde. That is, a letter in the text will represent one and only one sound.

Here is an inventory of the consonant and vowel sounds in Fulfulde, represented by letter symbols and followed by examples.

### Exercise 1

Consonants		b	baalte
	glottalized	'b	'bernde
		c	ceede
		d	doggugo
	glottalized	'd	'di'di
		f	faamugo
		g	gorko
		h	hoore
		j	jangugo
		k	kiiki'de
		l	leeso
		m	mawnugo
		n	nanugo
		ny	nyallugo
		p	pukaraajo
		r	resa
		s	sorrugo
		t	tummude
		w	warugo
		y	yarugo
	glottalized	'y	'yamol
	glottal stop	'	wi'ugo

Note that c in Fulfulde is pronounced ch as in the English word "chat." Also, in some words, w may be closer to English y than English w.

### Exercise 2

Vowels	a	kano
	e	keni
	i	kine
	o	kori
	u	kuri

Most of these sounds present no particular problem to the English speaker, but a few differ slightly from what you might expect their pronunciation to be and require some explanation and practice.

Among the differing consonants are the glottal stop ', the glottalized 'b and 'd, considered by some linguists to be also implosives, and glottalized 'y. In the written text, an apostrophe indicates a glottal stop and an apostrophe before a glottalized consonant serves to differentiate it from its plain counterpart.



**Page Image  
not Available**

**Missing Page  
4**

### Exercise 5

da 'da  
di 'di  
de 'de  
do 'do  
du 'du

dabba  
woodi  
haadugo  
daani  
kadi

'dabba  
woo'di  
haa'dugo  
'daani  
ka'di

### More Vocabulary

#### Exercise 6

1.



debbo: *woman, wife*

2.



'bingel: *child*

3.



'bii or 'bi'd'do:

*offspring, son, daughter; not used alone but with a human noun or proper name (e.g. 'bii gorko, 'bii Zeynabu)*

4.



maw'do: *a big one, adult*

5.

kadi: *then, indeed, even, also, moreover*

6.



Zeynabu: *Zainabu (woman's name)*

7.



Usumaanu: *Usmanu (man's name)*

8.



Abdullaahi: *Abdullahi (man's name)*

### Copula Omission

Copula is a linguistic term for the verb "to be" or "is" which is used in English but quite often omitted in Fulfulde. For instance, where English needs the copula for such sentences as:

It is a man.  
What nationality is Buba?  
Buba is a Fulani.

Fulfulde does not:

'Dum gorko.  
'Buuba 'dumeejo?  
Buuba 'dum Pullo.

You will be using more examples of copula omission as the text proceeds and you will also learn how to use the Fulfulde verb to be when it does occur.

### Exercise 7

Using the illustrations as a guide, answer the questions:

1.



'Dum moyjo?

'Dum debbo.

2.



'Dum moyjo?

'Dum 'bingel.

3.



'Dum moyjo?

'Dum 'bii Buuba.

4.



'Dum moyjo?

'Dum maw'do.

5.



'Dum moyjo?

'Dum gorko.

6.



'Dum moyjo?

'Dum mallumjo.

7.



'Dum moyjo?

'Dum pukaraajo.

8.



'Dum moy?

'Dum Zeynabu.

9.



'Dum moy?

'Dum Usumaanu.

10.



'Dum moy?

'Dum Abdullaahi.

11.



'Dum moy?

'Dum Buuba.

Practice asking and answering the following:

Exercise 8

1.



'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum moy?  
Buuba 'dumeejo?

'Dum gorko.  
'Dum Buuba.  
Buuba 'dum Pullo.

2.



'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum moy?  
Zeynabu 'dumeejo?

'Dum debbo.  
'Dum Zeynabu.  
Zeynabu 'dum Pullo.

3.



'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum moy?  
Abdullaahi 'dumeejo?

'Dum maw'do.  
'Dum Abdullaahi.  
Abdullaahi 'dum Pullo.

4.



'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum moy?  
Usumaanu 'dumeejo?

'Dum 'bingel.  
'Dum Usumaanu.  
Usumaanu 'dum Pullo.

Possession in Fulfulde is expressed by a simple juxtaposition of the possessed and the possessor.

gorko Zeynabu - *Zainabu's husband*  
debbo Buuba - *Buba's wife*  
'bingel Zeynabu - *Zainabu's child*  
'bingel Buuba - *Buba's child*

Note that in Fulfulde, the possessed precedes the possessor.

A question such as: Buuba gorko moy? *Buba is whose husband?*

may be answered: Buuba gorko Zeynabu. *Buba is Zainabu's husband.*

### Exercise 9

Buuba gorko moy?  
Zeynabu debbo moy?  
Usumaanu 'bingel moy?  
Usumaanu 'bingel moy kadi?  
Usumaanu 'bii moy?  
Usumaanu 'bii moy kadi?  
Abdullaahi mallumjo moy?  
Usumaanu pukaraajo moy?

Buuba gorko Zeynabu.  
Zeynabu debbo Buuba.  
Usumaanu 'bingel Buuba.  
Usumaanu 'bingel Zeynabu.  
Usumaanu 'bii Buuba.  
Usumaanu 'bii Zeynabu.  
Abdullaahi mallumjo Usumaanu.  
Usumaanu pukaraajo Abdullaahi.

Note: It would be possible, though not so common to hear these questions and answers with 'dum. For example:

Buuba 'dum gorko moy?

Buuba 'dum gorko Zeynabu.

This is merely an alternate way of saying the same thing.

### Exercise 10

Abdullaahi 'dum mallumjo moy?  
Usumaanu 'dum pukaraajo moy?  
Buuba 'dum gorko moy?  
Zeynabu 'dum debbo moy?  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bingel moy?  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bingel moy kadi?  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bii moy?  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bii moy kadi?

Abdullaahi 'dum mallumjo Usumaanu.  
Usumaanu 'dum pukaraajo Abdullaahi.  
Buuba 'dum gorko Zeynabu.  
Zeynabu 'dum debbo Buuba.  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bingel Buuba.  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bingel Zeynabu.  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bii Buuba.  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bii Zeynabu.

### Exercise 11

1.



Buuba gorko moy?

Buuba gorko Zeynabu.

Zeynabu debbo moy?

Zeynabu debbo Buuba.

2.



Usumaanu 'bingel moy?

Usumaanu 'bingel Buuba.



Uumaanu 'bingel moy  
kadi?  
Uumaanu 'bii moy?

Uumaanu 'bingel Zeynabu.  
Uumaanu 'bii Zeynabu.



Uumaanu 'bii moy  
kadi?

Uumaanu 'bii Buuba.



Uumaanu pukaraajo  
moy?

Uumaanu pukaraajo  
Abdullaahi.

Abdullaahi mallumjo  
moy?

Abdullaahi mallumjo  
Uumaanu.

**Jangde timmunde: Final Reading**

1. 'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum gorko.  
'Dum moy?  
'Dum Buuba.  
Buuba 'dumeejo?  
Buuba 'dum Pullo.  
Buuba gorko moy?  
Buuba gorko Zeynabu.

2. 'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum debbo.  
'Dum moy?  
'Dum Zeynabu.  
Zeynabu 'dumeejo?  
Zeynabu 'dum Pullo.  
Zeynabu 'dum debbo moy?  
Zeynabu 'dum debbo Buuba.

3. 'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum 'bingel.  
'Dum moy?  
'Dum Uumaanu.  
Uumaanu 'dumeejo?  
Uumaanu 'dum Pullo.  
Uumaanu 'bingel moy?  
Uumaanu 'bingel Buuba.  
Uumaanu 'bingel moy kadi?  
Uumaanu 'bingel Zeynabu.

4. 'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum 'bingel.  
'Dum moy?  
'Dum Uumaanu.

5. 'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum maw'do.  
'Dum moy?  
'Dum Abdullaahi.

6. Uumaanu 'dum 'bingel.  
Abdullaahi 'dum maw'do.

7. 'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum gorko.  
'Dum moy?  
'Dum Buuba.

8. 'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum debbo.  
'Dum moy?  
'Dum Zeynabu.

9. Buuba 'dum gorko.  
Zeynabu 'dum debbo.

10. 'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum mallumjo.  
'Dum moy?  
'Dum Abdullaahi.  
Abdullaahi 'dum mallumjo moy?  
Abdullaahi 'dum mallumjo Uumaanu.  
Abdullaahi 'dumeejo?  
Abdullaahi 'dum Pullo.  
Uumaanu 'dumeejo kadi?  
Uumaanu 'dum Pullo.

11. 'Dum moyjo?  
'Dum pukaraajo.  
'Dum moy?  
'Dum Uumaanu.  
Uumaanu pukaraajo moy?  
Uumaanu pukaraajo Abdullaahi.  
Uumaanu 'dumeejo?  
Uumaanu 'dum Pullo.  
Abdullaahi 'dumeejo kadi?  
Abdullaahi 'dum Pullo.

**Ngewta: Conversation**





**Page Image  
not Available**

**Missing Page  
12**



### Dialogue

Saalihu: Use.

*Greetings.*

John: Useko.

*Greetings.*

S: 'Dum Usumaanu.

*This is Usmaru.*

J: Usumaanu 'bii moy?

*Usmaru is whose child?*

S: Usumaanu 'bii Buuba bee  
Zeynabu.

*Usmaru is the child of  
Buba and Zainabu.*

J: Toy saare Buuba?

*Where is Buba's compound?*

S: Ndaa saare Buuba.

*Here is Buba's compound.*

### Vocabulary

use: a greeting derived from the verb *usugo* to  
*express appreciation*

useko: used here as a response to a greeting; useko used  
by itself often means *thank you*

bee: *and, with*

toy: *where (is, are)*

ndaa: *here (is, are)*

saare: *compound, household, home*



Saalihu: *Salihu (man's name)*

## Greetings

Everyday greetings are an important part of Fulfulde conversations. These greetings are used when Americans would normally use a "Hi" or "How are you? Fine," type of greeting, the abruptness of which would be unacceptable in a Fulbe milieu.

Among Fulfulde speakers, an exchange lasting from a few to several minutes often precedes the actual stating of one's business or other conversation when persons are meeting for the first time on any given day. There are different greetings appropriate for morning, afternoon and evening; and incorporated into these are inquiries concerning health, welfare of the household, or relatives and friends, a job, the crops, cattle, and the general flow of life. The respondent answers the queries and asks questions of his own in turn. The preceding dialogue gives a shortened version of a greeting using the question and response use, *useko*. It must be emphasized that for pedagogical reasons, the greetings presented in this textbook will often have an uncharacteristically abrupt nature. Later, as more greeting formulae are introduced and practiced, more natural sounding greetings and responses will be used. A list of the Fulfulde greetings presented in this text appears in Appendix E.

## Pronunciation — Vowels, Short and Long

There are ten vowel sounds in Adamawa Fulfulde. That is, five short vowels each of which has a long counterpart.

It is important to differentiate between long and short vowels since some words may be identical except for vowel length, but have different meanings. Words like these, which sound the same except for any one phoneme, are called minimal pairs.

The difference in pronunciation between a long vowel and a short vowel is simply a matter of time. One takes longer than the other, but the tongue is held in the same position. Practice in listening and in speaking will help make the distinction automatic.

Here are the Fulfulde vowel sounds represented by letter symbols and followed by examples.

### Exercise I

a	salugo
aa	saalugo
e	fewugo
ee	feewugo
i	hisugo
ii	hiisugo
o	sodugo
oo	soodugo
u	durugo
uu	duurugo

And here are some groups of words in which the vowel sounds contrast in different positions.

Exercise 2 Short Vowels

salugo      solugo      selugo      sulugo      silugo

Exercise 3 Short Vowels

keni      kine      konu  
kori      kuro

Exercise 4 Long Vowels

haala      hilla  
laamu      leemu      luumo  
doole      duule

Exercise 5 Short Vowels Compared With Long Vowels

o hisi      o hiisi  
o hari      o haari  
o hori      o hoori  
o somi      o soomi  
o fewi      o feewi  
o duri      o duuri

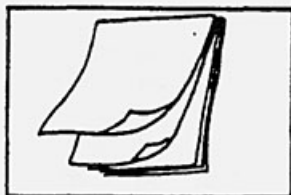
Exercise 6 New Vocabulary Words

1.



deftere : *book*

2.

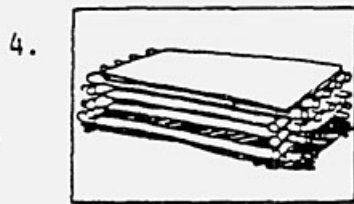


'dereewol : *paper*

3.



koroowal : *stool, chair*



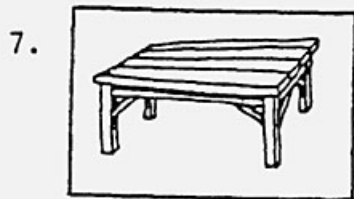
leeso: *bed*



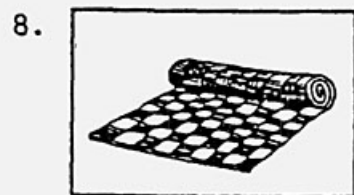
baaba: *father*



daada: *mother*



tebur: *table*



daago: *a mat of palm fiber used for sitting, relaxing, praying, sleeping and eating (but not simultaneously!)*

9.

'dume?: *what?*

### More on Possession

We have seen the word *moy* used with *'dum* in the expression *'dum moy?* (Who is it?) and as a possessive-interrogative word meaning *whose?* i.e. *Buuba gorko moy?*, *Usumaanu 'bii moy?*, etc.

The connection involved, however, is not confined to kinship. We have, for example, possession of objects:

'Dum saare moy?  
'Dum koroowal moy?

*Whose compound is this?*  
*Whose chair is this?*

The answers to these questions, once again, juxtapose possessed and possessor, in that order.

Here are some questions and answers involving the possessive:

Exercise 7



'Dum saare moy?

'Dum saare Buuba.



'Dum koroowal moy?

'Dum koroowal Zeynabu.



'Dum deftere moy?

'Dum deftere Abdullaahi.



'Dum leeso moy?

'Dum leeso Buuba.



'Dum daago moy?

'Dum daago Abdullaahi.



'Dum tebur moy?

'Dum tebur Buuba.

As in the last lesson, here are more examples of the possessive used to indicate people's relationships to one another.

Buuba baaba moy?  
Buuba baaba Usumaanu.

*Buba is whose father?*  
*Buba is Usmanu's father.*

### Exercise 8

Buuba baaba moy?  
Zeynabu daada moy?  
Buuba gorko moy?  
Zeynabu debbo moy?  
Abdullaahi mallumjo moy?  
Usumaanu pukaraajo moy?  
Usumaanu 'bii moy?

Buuba baaba Usumaanu.  
Zeynabu daada Usumaanu.  
Buuba gorko Zeynabu.  
Zeynabu debbo Buuba.  
Abdullaahi mallumjo Usumaanu.  
Usumaanu pukaraajo Abdullaahi.  
Usumaanu 'bii Buuba bee Zeynabu.

Another useful question and answer sequence is:

Moy baaba Usumaanu?  
Baaba Usumaanu Buuba.

*Who is Usmanu's father?  
Usmanu's father is Buba.*

### Exercise 9

Moy baaba Usumaanu?  
Moy daada Usumaanu?  
Moy gorko Zeynabu?  
Moy debbo Buuba?  
Moy mallumjo Usumaanu?  
Moy pukaraajo Abdullaahi?  
Moy 'bii Buuba bee Zeynabu?

Baaba Usumaanu Buuba.  
Daada Usumaanu Zeynabu.  
Gorko Zeynabu Buuba.  
Debbo Buuba Zeynabu.  
Mallumjo Usumaanu Abdullaahi.  
Pukaraajo Abdullaahi Usumaanu.  
'Bii Buuba bee Zeynabu Usumaanu.

Another way to answer the above questions is to include 'dum.

'Bii Buuba bee Zeynabu 'dum Usumaanu. (or)  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bii Buuba bee Zeynabu.

### Exercise 10

Moy baaba Usumaanu?  
Moy daada Usumaanu?  
Moy gorko Zeynabu?

Baaba Usumaanu 'dum Buuba.  
Daada Usumaanu 'dum Zeynabu.  
Gorko Zeynabu 'dum Buuba.

### Exercise 11

Moy debbo Buuba?  
Moy mallumjo Usumaanu?  
Moy pukaraajo Abdullaahi?  
Moy 'bii Buuba bee Zeynabu?

Zeynabu 'dum debbo Buuba.  
Abdullaahi 'dum mallumjo Usumaanu.  
Usumaanu 'dum pukaraajo Abdullaahi.  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bii Buuba bee Zeynabu.

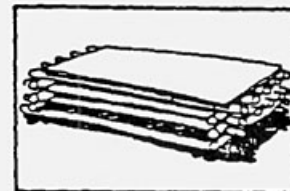
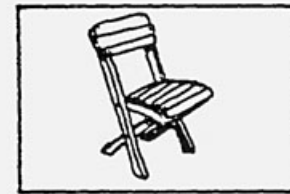
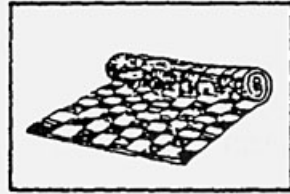
Toy \_\_\_\_? and Ndaa \_\_\_\_ form a useful question and answer: *where is \_\_\_\_?,  
where are \_\_\_\_?, and here is \_\_\_\_, here are \_\_\_\_.*

**Page Image  
not Available**

**Missing Page  
19**



Ngewta



## LESSON 3

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 3, the student will be able to:

-identify and correctly use 17 new vocabulary items

-use the greeting sequence: Sannu.  
Sannu.

-differentiate between single and double consonants

-use 'dum 'dume? to ask questions and answer them using 'dum \_\_\_\_\_

-use naa to ask questions requiring a yes/no answer:

'Dum tummude naa?  
'Dum tummude Zeynabu naa?

and answer those questions

-use woodi to ask questions:

Woodi tummude naa?

-use woodi and walaa to answer those questions:

Ooho, woodi.  
Ooho, woodi tummude.  
Ooho, woodi, ndaa tummude.

Aa'a, walaa.  
Aa'a, walaa tummude.

-use kam in answering a question negatively as in the example:

Woodi tummude naa kadi?  
Aa'a, walaa tummude kam.



### Dialogue

John: Sannu.

*Greetings.*

Saalihi: Sannu.

*Greetings.*

J: 'Dum saare moy?

*Whose compound is this?*

S: 'Dum saare Abdullaahi.

*This is Abdullahi's compound.*

J: Woodi tummude naa?

*Is there a calabash?*

S: Ooho, woodi. Ndaa tummude.

*Yes, there is. Here is the calabash.*

J: Woodi tebur naa kadi?

*Is there a table also?*

S: Aa'a, walaa tebur kam.

*No, there is no table, however.*

### Vocabulary

sannu: *hello or hi* used as a greeting and response

naa: negative interrogative word which is sometimes used at the end of a sentence to ask questions (= "not so?")

woodi: *there (is, are)*

walaa: *there (is, are) not* (negative of woodi)

ooho: *yes*

aa'a: *no*

kam: *indeed, as for...* (emphasizes preceding word)



tummude: *calabash*, a dried and hollowed out half gourd used to carry, mix and sometimes store food, water and small portable items

## A Note on the Pronunciation of Naa

Naa is generally pronounced with the long vowel: aa. However, when naa is used interrogatively and is not the last word in the sentence as in the above dialogue, there is a tendency to shorten the vowel. You actually say: Woodi tebur na kadi? Throughout this textbook we have kept the spelling naa, but you should shorten the vowel in the oral practice when it is appropriate.

## Pronunciation — Consonants: Single and Double

From the point of view of rhythm, a double consonant is not so different from a double vowel. Quite simply, double consonants in Fulfulde take longer to say than single consonants.

While it is difficult to find minimal pairs involving single and double consonants in Fulfulde, being able to differentiate them is essential to correct pronunciation.

### Exercise 1

modibbo  
Pullo  
debbo  
sannu  
Abdullaahi

tummude  
hottollo  
ha'b'bere  
dammugal  
Allah

Listen for the difference between a single consonant and a double consonant sound in the following pairs of words; and then repeat.

### Exercise 2

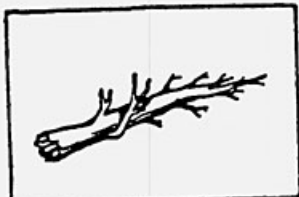
ko'do — wo'd'di  
'bila — 'billa  
luumo — tummude

kadi — waddi  
yi'di — 'bi'd'do  
woo'di — boo'd'dum

## Additional Vocabulary

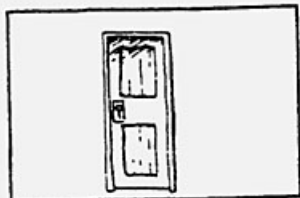
### Exercise 3

1.



leggal: tree, a piece of wood

2.



dammugal: door, doorway

3.



ha'b'bere: a bundle (of anything)

4.



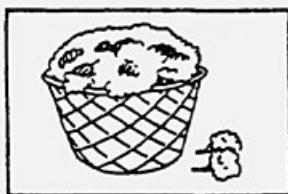
gawri: millet, guinea corn

5.



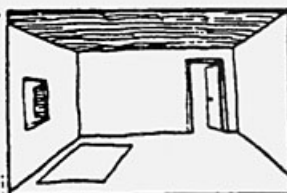
ha'b'bere gawri: a bundle of guinea corn or millet (approximately 15 kilos)

6.



hottollo: cotton

7.



suudu: small house with thatched roof; hut, room

8.



waflaare: pillow

'Dum 'dume?

A useful question, especially for a neophyte, is 'Dum 'dume? — *what is it?*  
Here are some questions and answers geared to illustrations:

Exercise 4

1.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum leggal.

2.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum leggal.

3.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum dammugal.

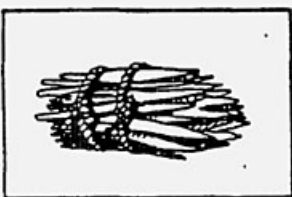
4.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum dammugal.

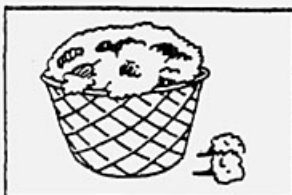
5.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum ha'b'bere gawri.

6.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum hottollo.

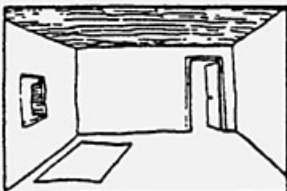
7.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum suudu.

8.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum suudu.

9.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum waflaare.

### Naa

**Naa** has two main uses: forming interrogatives and forming negatives. In this lesson we shall see **naa** used at the end of a sentence to indicate a question requiring a yes/no answer. Here are some examples:

'Dum tummude naa?

*Is it a calabash?*

'Dum tummude Zeynabu naa?

*Is it Zainabu's calabash?*

### Exercise 5

'Dum deftere naa? (Abdullaahi)

'Dum deftere Abdullaahi naa?

'Dum 'dereewol naa? (Usumaanu)

'Dum 'dereewol Usumaanu naa?

'Dum ha'b'bere naa? (Buuba)

'Dum ha'b'bere Buuba naa?

'Dum hottollo naa? (Saalihi)

'Dum hottollo Saalihi naa?

'Dum dammugal naa? (Buuba)

'Dum dammugal Buuba naa?

Here are some questions followed by a positive answer.

### Exercise 6

'Dum tummude naa?

Ooho, 'dum tummude.

'Dum deftere naa?

Ooho, 'dum deftere.

'Dum 'dereewol naa?

Ooho, 'dum 'dereewol.

'Dum ha'b'bere Buuba naa?

Ooho, 'dum ha'b'bere Buuba.

'Dum hottollo Saalihi naa?

Ooho, 'dum hottollo Saalihi.

'Dum dammugal Buuba naa?

Ooho, 'dum dammugal Buuba.

## Woodi and Walaa

The English equivalents of these words are:

woodi: *there is or there are  
is there? or are there?*

walaa: *there is not or there are not*

Walaa also means *is there not?* but that particular construction will be treated later.

Here are some questions and their positive answers. Note that more than one type of response is appropriate.

### Exercise 7

Woodi hottollo naa?  
Woodi tebur naa?  
Woodi leeso naa?  
Woodi dammugal naa?  
Woodi ha'b'bere naa?  
Woodi hottollo naa?  
Woodi waflaare naa?  
Woodi daago naa?  
Woodi ha'b'bere naa?

Woodi.  
Woodi.  
Woodi.  
Oho, woodi dammugal.  
Oho, woodi ha'b'bere.  
Oho, woodi hottollo.  
Woodi, ndaa waflaare.  
Woodi, ndaa daago.  
Woodi, ndaa ha'b'bere.

The following are questions with negative answers; again note that more than one type of response is appropriate:

### Exercise 8

Woodi deftere naa?  
Woodi 'dereewol naa?  
Woodi koroowal naa?  
Woodi debbo naa?  
Woodi gorko naa?  
Woodi 'bingel naa?

Walaa.  
Walaa.  
Aa'a, walaa.  
Aa'a, walaa.  
Aa'a, walaa gorko.  
Aa'a, walaa 'bingel.

## Additional Vocabulary

majji: *is lost, has vanished*

Another way to answer a woodi \_\_\_\_\_ naa? question in the negative is to use the word majji. For example:

Woodi deftere naa?  
Walaa, deftere majji.

*Is there a book?  
There isn't. The book is lost, has  
vanished, is gone, can't be found, etc.*



### Exercise 9

Woodi gorko naa?  
Woodi debbo naa?  
Woodi daago naa?  
Woodi koroowal naa?  
Woodi tummude naa?  
Woodi hottollo naa?

Walaa, gorko majji.  
Walaa, debbo majji.  
Walaa, daago majji.  
Walaa, koroowal majji.  
Walaa, tummude majji.  
Walaa, hottollo majji.

### **Kam**

When a question is to be answered in the negative, kam may be used as in the following example:

Woodi tebur na kadi?

Aa'a, walaa tebur kam.

Kam softens the abruptness and emphasizes the word it follows, something like "No, there isn't a table" or "On the one hand, there isn't a table, but on the other hand..."

### Exercise 11

Woodi ha'b'bere naa?  
Woodi hottollo naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi ha'b'bere.  
Aa'a, walaa hottollo kam.

Woodi leeso naa?  
Woodi waflaare naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi leeso.  
Aa'a, walaa waflaare kam.

Woodi tummude naa?  
Woodi daago naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi tummude.  
Aa'a, walaa daago kam.

Woodi 'bingel naa?  
Woodi debbo naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi 'bingel.  
Aa'a, walaa debbo kam.

### Exercise 12

1.



Woodi tummude naa? Ooho, woodi tummude.  
Woodi koroowal naa kadi? Aa'a, walaa koroowal kam.

2.



Woodi daago naa? Ooho, woodi daago.  
Woodi hottollo naa kadi? Aa'a, walaa hottollo kam.

3.



Woodi koroowal naa?  
Woodi deftere naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi koroowal.  
Aa'a, walaa deftere kam.

4.



Woodi hottollo naa?  
Woodi waflaare naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi hottollo.  
Aa'a, walaa waflaare kam.

5.



Woodi deftere naa?  
Woodi tebur naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi deftere.  
Aa'a, walaa tebur kam.

6.



Woodi debbo naa?  
Woodi 'bingel naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi debbo.  
Aa'a, walaa 'bingel kam.

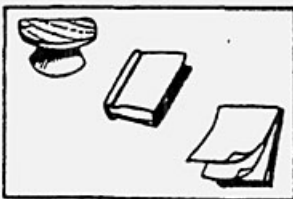
A variation on the preceding sequence is as follows:

Woodi tummude naa?  
Woodi koroowal naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi tummude.  
Aa'a, walaa kam.

Exercise 13

1.



Woodi deftere naa?  
Woodi tebur naa kadi?

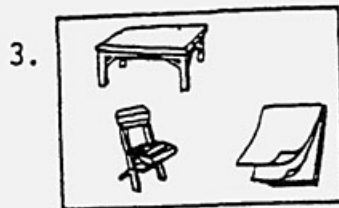
Ooho, woodi deftere.  
Aa'a, walaa kam.

2.



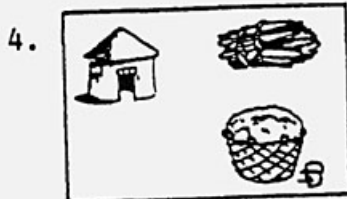
Woodi debbo naa?  
Woodi 'bingel naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi debbo.  
Aa'a, walaa kam.



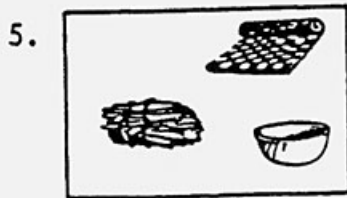
Woodi koroowal naa?  
Woodi deftere naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi koroowal.  
Aa'a, walaam kam.



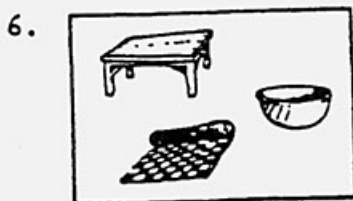
Woodi hottollo naa?  
Woodi waflaare naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi hottollo.  
Aa'a, walaam kam.



Woodi daago naa?  
Woodi hottollo naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi daago.  
Aa'a, walaam kam.



Woodi tummude naa?  
Woodi koroowal naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi tummude.  
Aa'a, walaam kam.

### Jangde timmunde

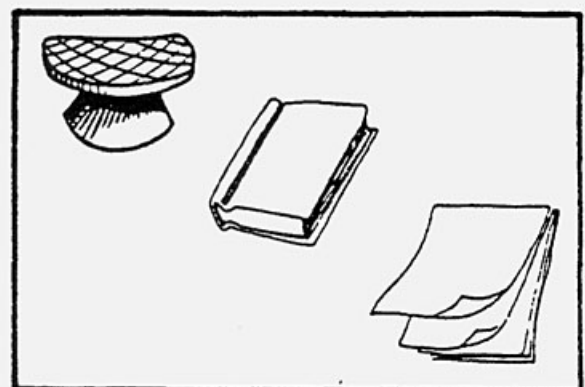
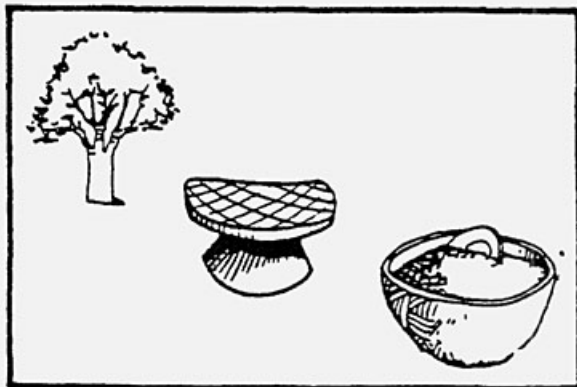
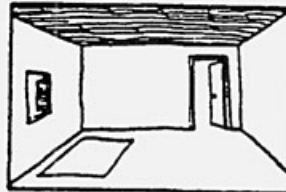
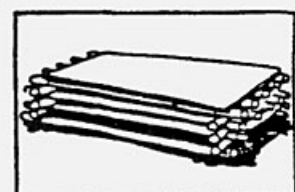
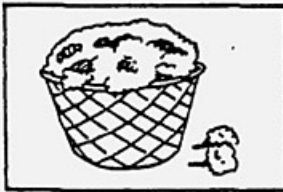
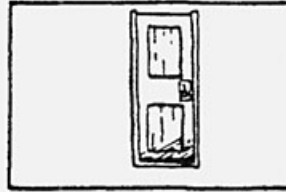
1. Use.  
Useko.  
Sannu.  
Sannu.  
'Dum saare moy?  
'Dum saare Buuba.  
Toy debbo Buuba?  
Ndaa debbo Buuba. Debbo Buuba moy?  
Debbo Buuba Zeynabu.

2. Use.  
Use.  
Sannu.  
Sannu.  
'Dum saare moy?  
'Dum saare Buuba.  
Woodi leeso naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Woodi daago naa?  
Ooho, woodi daago.  
Woodi koroowal naa kadi?  
Aa'a, walaam koroowal kam.

3. Use.  
Useko.  
'Dum moy?  
'Dum Zeynabu.  
Zeynabu 'dumeejo?  
Zeynabu 'dum Pullo.  
Gorko Zeynabu moy?  
Buuba 'dum gorko Zeynabu.  
Toy saare gorko Zeynabu?  
Ndaa saare gorko Zeynabu.  
Moy 'bingel Zeynabu bee Buuba?  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bingel Zeynabu bee Buuba.  
Buuba 'dum baaba Usumaanu; Zeynabu 'dum daada Usumaanu.

4. Sannu.  
Sannu.  
'Dum 'dume?  
'Dum tummude.  
'Dum tummude moy?  
'Dum tummude Zeynabu.  
Toy suudu Zeynabu?  
Ndaa suudu Zeynabu.  
Woodi daago naa?  
Walaa, daago majji.  
Woodi leeso naa kadi?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Woodi waflaare naa kadi?  
Aa'a, walaa kam.  
Usumaanu 'bii Zeynabu naa?  
Ooho, Usumaanu 'bii Zeynabu.  
Zeynabu 'dum debbo moy?  
Zeynabu 'dum debbo Buuba.  
Buuba 'dumeejo?  
Buuba 'dum Pullo.

Ngewta



## LESSON 4

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 4, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 5 new vocabulary items
- use the greeting sequence:      Sannu maa  
  Yawwa, useko
- explain what is meant by class language
- explain what is meant by noun class system
- give at least three examples of nde class nouns
- give at least three examples of ngal class nouns
- use nde and ngal appropriately as pronouns in answering the questions:

'Dum \_\_\_\_\_ naa?  
Woodi \_\_\_\_\_ naa?  
Woodi \_\_\_\_\_ naa kadi?

- use the emphatic on.



### Dialogue

John: Sannu maa.

*Greetings*

Saalihi: Yawwa, useko.

*Greetings*

J: 'Dum saare Gi'daa'do naa?

*Is this Gidado's compound?*

S: Ooho, ndaa nde.

*Yes, here it is.*

J: Woodi koroowal naa?

*Is there a chair?*

S: Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngal.

*Yes, there is. Here it is.*

J: Woodi tummude naa kadi?

*Is there a calabash, too?*

S: Aa'a, walaa. Nde majji.

*No, there isn't. It's lost.*

### Vocabulary

sannu maa: a greeting to one person

yawwa: an exclamation of pleasure or approval often used in response to a greeting

ngal: the class marker for ngal class nouns and also the pronoun "it" for ngal class nouns

nde: the class marker for nde class nouns and also the pronoun "it" for nde class nouns

Gi'daa'do: Gidado (man's name)

The following are nde class nouns:

Exercise 1

saare (nde)

deftere (nde)

tummude (nde)

waflaare (nde)

ha'b'bere (nde)

ha'b'bere gawri (nde) — caution: gawri by itself is not an nde class noun,  
but the compound word ha'b'bere gawri uses the  
nde class pronoun

And these are ngal class nouns

koroowal (ngal)

dammugal (ngal)

leggal (ngal)

Hereafter, when new nde class or ngal class nouns are introduced in the vocabulary sections of the text, the appropriate noun class marker will be included as above, and as new noun classes are introduced, the same procedure will be followed for them. If a new noun appears without a marker, this simply means that its class has not yet been presented. In time, the noun class will appear and previously entered nouns belonging to that class will be indicated.

**Class Languages: The Fulfulde Noun Class System**

Fulfulde, like many African languages, is a class language with a noun class system.

A noun class system involves the classification of nouns into different groups, and according to that classification, certain other words accompanying the noun in a sentence are marked to agree with the noun. This agreement is called concord and involves noun class markers like nde and ngal.

We will examine some details of Fulfulde concord in a later lesson. For now, let's learn a feature of the Fulfulde noun class system whereby the noun class marker serves as the pronoun for nouns in that class. Unlike English where you merely use "it" as the pronoun for anything non-human, Fulfulde uses an appropriate noun class marker.

These pronouns are not used alone directly following woodi and walaa, and are not used directly following 'dum.



Here are some questions and their positive answers. The answers use pronouns.

### Exercise 2

Woodi koroowal naa?	Woodi. Ndaa ngal.
Woodi ha'b'bere naa?	Woodi. Ndaa nde.
Woodi leggal naa?	Woodi. Ndaa ngal.
Woodi tummude naa?	Woodi. Ndaa nde.
Woodi dammugal naa?	Woodi. Ndaa ngal.
Woodi ha'b'bere gawri naa?	Woodi. Ndaa nde.

Here are some questions and their negative answers. The answers use pronouns.

### Exercise 3

Woodi tummude naa?	Walaa. Nde majji.
Woodi deftere naa?	Walaa. Nde majji.
Woodi koroowal naa?	Walaa. Ngal majji.
Woodi waflaare naa?	Walaa. Nde majji.
Woodi leggal naa?	Walaa. Ngal majji.
Woodi ha'b'bere naa?	Walaa. Nde majji.

In the next exercise, an object is identified and is followed by a question asking "Whose \_\_\_\_\_ is it?" This question substitutes the appropriate pronoun for the noun. Remember that this set of pronouns does not directly follow 'dum. In this instance, 'dum is simply omitted from the question. For example:

'Dum tummude.  
Nde moy?

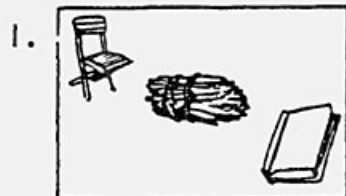
*It is a calabash.  
Whose is it?*

### Exercise 4

'Dum tummude.	Nde moy?
'Dum leggal.	Ngal moy?
'Dum saare.	Nde moy?
'Dum koroowal.	Ngal moy?
'Dum ha'b'bere gawri.	Nde moy?
'Dum deftere.	Nde moy?

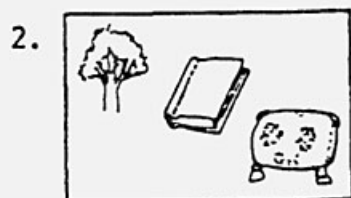
The following questions are geared to the illustrations and are answered using pronouns.

Exercise 5



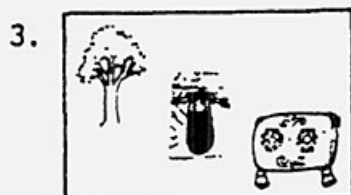
Woodi ha'b'bere naa?  
Woodi leggal naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa nde.  
Aa'a, walaa. Ngal majji.



Woodi waflaare naa?  
Woodi koroowal naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa nde.  
Aa'a, walaa. Ngal majji.



Woodi leggal naa?  
Woodi tummude naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngal.  
Aa'a, walaa. Nde majji.



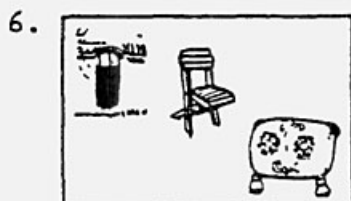
Woodi koroowal naa?  
Woodi deftere naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngal.  
Aa'a, walaa. Nde majji.



Woodi tummude naa?  
Woodi ha'b'bere naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa nde.  
Aa'a, walaa. Nde majji.



Woodi koroowal naa?  
Woodi leggal naa kadi?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngal.  
Aa'a, walaa. Ngal majji.

Variations on the negative answers are:

Walaa kam.

*There isn't though.*

Walaa kam. Ngal (or nde) majji.

*There isn't though.  
It has vanished, it is lost.*

### Exercise 6

Woodi leggal naa kadi?

Walaa kam.

Woodi waflaare naa kadi?

Walaa kam.

Woodi tummude naa kadi?

Walaa kam.

Woodi deffere naa kadi?

Walaa kam. Nde majji.

Woodi koroowal naa kadi?

Walaa kam. Ngal majji.

Woodi ha'b'bere naa kadi?

Walaa kam. Nde majji.

### On

On is an emphatic which follows the emphasized word and focuses attention on it. For example:

'Dum gorko on. *It is a man.* (Not a woman or a child or an animal...)

'Dum Buuba on. *It is Buba.* (Not Abdullahi...)

Buuba 'dum Pullo on. *Buba is a Pullo.* (Not any other ethnic group)

Abdullaahi 'dum mallumjo on. *Abdullahi is a teacher.* (Not a farmer, etc.)

Fulbe vary in their use of on, but we will try to concentrate on contexts where it is usually obligatory.

Here are two sets of sentences. One set asks a question or gives a statement without particular emphasis, the other set uses on. For example:

Buuba gorko moy?

*Whose husband is Buba?*

Buuba gorko moy on?

*Whose husband is Buba?*

Stress and intonation would indicate this difference in English.

In the following exercise, the second sentence uses on to emphasize the cued word.

### Exercise 7

Buuba gorko moy? (moy)

Buuba gorko moy on.

Zeynabu debbo moy? (moy)

Zeynabu debbo moy on.

Zeynabu 'dum debbo Buuba. (Buuba)

Zeynabu 'dum debbo Buuba on.

'Dum waflaare naa? (waflaare)

'Dum waflaare on naa?

Ooho, 'dum waflaare. (waflaare)

Ooho, 'dum waflaare on.

'Dum tummude naa? (tummude)

'Dum tummude on naa?

Ooho, 'dum tummude. (tummude)

Ooho, 'dum tummude on.

## Jangde timmunde

1. Sannu maa.  
Yawwa, useko.  
'Dum saare moy?  
'Dum saare Buuba on.

2. Toy debbo Buuba?  
Ndaa debbo Buuba.  
Debbo Buuba on moy?  
Debbo Buuba Zeynabu on.

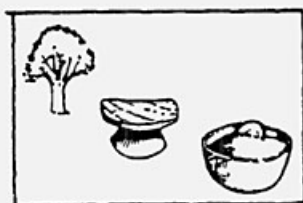
3. Use.  
Useko.  
Sannu.  
Sannu.  
'Dum saare moy?  
'Dum saare Buuba.  
Woodi koroowal naa?  
Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngal.  
Woodi dammugal naa?  
Ooho, woodi dammugal.  
Woodi waflaare naa kadi?  
Aa'a, walaa waflaare kam.

4. Use.  
Useko.  
Sannu maa.  
Yawwa, useko.  
'Dum Zeynabu.  
Zeynabu dumeejo?  
Zeynabu 'dum Pullo on.  
Gorko Zeynabu on moy?  
Buuba 'dum gorko Zeynabu on.  
Toy saare gorko Zeynabu?  
Ndaa nde.  
Moy 'bingel Zeynabu bee Buuba?  
Usumaanu 'dum 'bingel Zeynabu  
bee Buuba.  
Buuba 'dum baaba Usumaanu on.  
Zeynabu 'dum daada Usumaanu  
on.

5. Sannu.  
Sannu.  
'Dum 'dume?  
'Dum tummude.  
Nde moy?  
Nde Zeynabu.  
Toy koroowal Zeynabu?  
Ndaa ngal.  
Usumaanu 'bii Zeynabu on naa?  
Ooho, Usumaanu 'bii Zeunabu on.  
Zeynabu 'dum debbo moy?  
Zeynabu 'dum debbo Buuba.  
Buuba 'dumeejo?  
Buuba 'dum Pullo on.



## Ngewta







### Dialogue

Saalihi: Ja'b'baama.

John: Mi ja'bi.

S: Ndaa ko'do.

J: Noy innde ko'do man?

S: 'Dum Muusa. Muusa 'dum  
ko'do Buuba.

J: 'Dum Pullo Adamaawa naa?

S: Naa 'dum Pullo; Muusa 'dum  
Hawsaajo on.

J; Too, use Muusa, ja'b'baama.

*Welcome.*

*I accept.*

*Here is a stranger.*

*What is the stranger's name?*

*He is Musa. Musa is  
Buba's guest.*

*Is he an Adamawa Pullo?*

*He is not a Pullo; Musa  
is a Hausa.*

*Well, greetings Musa, welcome.*

## Vocabulary

ja'b'baama: *welcome* (used in greeting someone arriving on the scene)

mi ja'bi: *I accept (the welcome)*; appropriate response to ja'b'baama

roy?: *how? how many? how much?*

innde (nde): *name*

noy innde?: *what is the name?*

ko'do: *stranger, guest*

man: *the one referred to, the* (Note that man is only used when the person or thing has already been explicitly mentioned.)

Adamaawa: *Adamawa*; emirate founded by Modibbo Adama and his sons c. 1810; the greater part of it is now Gongola State in Nigeria

Hawsaajo: *a Hausa person*

too: *well, okay, fine, right* (a versatile, frequently used word)

Muusa: *Musa* (*man's name*)

## Additional Vocabulary

### Exercise 1

1.



nagge (nge): *cow*

2.



puccu (ngu): *horse*

3.



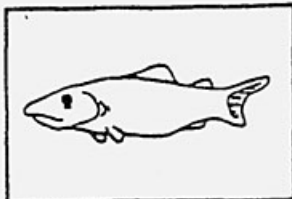
lekki: *tree (generic), medicine*

4.



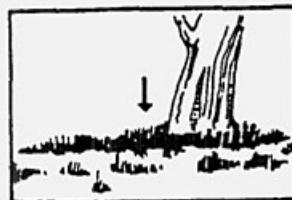
sondu (ndu): *bird*

5.



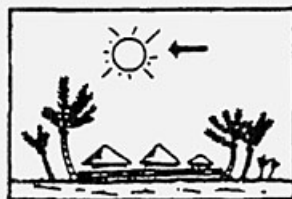
liingu (ngu): *fish*

6.



hu'do: *grass, especially grass for cutting*

7.



naange (nge): *sun*

8.



modibbo: *learned man, teacher (higher status than mallumjo)*

With this vocabulary we have introduced three new noun classes with their noun class markers: nge, ngu, and ndu.

Remember to learn the noun class marker along with the noun as you are learning the vocabulary.

A vocabulary word you already know belongs to the ndu class: suudu (ndu)

### Another Use of Naa

We have seen naa used at the end of a sentence to indicate a question requiring a yes/no answer.

Naa may also be used to form negative statements where no verb is involved.

a) To form the negative of a statement beginning with 'dum, use naa preceding the statement:

#### Positive

'Dum modibbo.  
'Dum saare modibbo.  
'Dum saare modibbo on.

#### Negative

Naa 'dum modibbo.  
Naa 'dum saare modibbo.  
Naa 'dum saare modibbo on.



## Exercise 2

'Dum nagge.	Naa 'dum nagge.
'Dum puccu.	Naa 'dum puccu.
'Dum lekki.	Naa 'dum lekki.
'Dum sondu.	Naa 'dum sondu.
'Dum liingu.	Naa 'dum liingu.
'Dum hu'do.	Naa 'dum hu'do.
'Dum modibbo.	Naa 'dum modibbo.

b) You have seen 'dum \_\_\_\_\_ naa? questions answered in the positive like this:

'Dum gorko naa? Ooho, 'dum gorko.

To answer 'dum \_\_\_\_\_ naa? questions in the negative, it stands to reason that you use naa preceding the statement. Here are some examples:

## Exercise 3

'Dum Hawsaajo naa?	Naa 'dum Hawsaajo.
'Dum modibbo on naa?	Naa 'dum modibbo on.
'Dum puccu on naa?	Naa 'dum puccu on.
'Dum nagge naa?	Naa 'dum nagge.
'Dum maw'do naa?	Naa 'dum maw'do.
'Dum ko'do naa?	Naa 'dum ko'do.

Here are some similar questions and answers using kadi and kam. Note that kadi used this way is somewhat like the English question tag "then?" In context, of course, these utterances make a lot more sense. Here is an example:

'Dum 'bingel naa kadi? *Is she a child then?*  
Naa 'dum 'bingel kam. *She is not a child.*

## Exercise 4

'Dum Pullo naa kadi?	Naa 'dum Pullo kam.
'Dum Hawsaajo naa kadi?	Naa 'dum Hawsaajo kam.
'Dum sondu naa kadi?	Naa 'dum sondu kam.
'Dum liingu naa kadi?	Naa 'dum liingu kam.
'Dum debbo naa kadi?	Naa 'dum debbo kam.
'Dum gorko naa kadi?	Naa 'dum gorko kam.

The following exercise will help sharpen the use of noy innde and man acquired through your mastery of this lesson's dialogue. Remember that man is used only for a previous reference. For example:

Ndaa gorko.	<i>Here (there) is a man.</i>
Noy innde gorko man?	<i>What is this (that) man's name?</i>
'Dum Buuba.	<i>It is Buba.</i>

Exercise 5

1.



Ndaa debbo.

Noy innde debbo man?

2.



Ndaa maw'do.

Noy innde maw'do man?

3.



Ndaa pukaraajo.

Noy innde pukaraajo man?

4.



Ndaa 'bingel.

Noy innde 'bingel man?

5.



Ndaa mallumjo.

Noy innde mallumjo man?

6.



Ndaa gorko.

Noy innde gorko man?

Here are two sets of sentences. The first gives the name of a person, the second asks the name of a person by using the pronoun *nde* to replace *innde*. For example:

Innde debbo Zeynabu.

*The woman's name is Zainabu.*

Noy nde gorko?

*What's the man's?*

## Exercise 6

Innde gorko Buuba. (debbo)	Noy nde debbo?
Innde 'bingel Usumaanu. (maw'do)	Noy nde maw'do?
Innde mallumjo Abdullaahi. (pukaraajo)	Noy nde pukaraajo?
Innde debbo Zeynabu. ('bingel)	Noy nde 'bingel?
innde pukaraajo Usumaanu (gorko)	Noy nde gorko?

### **Walaa and the Negative Supposition**

We have seen walaa used to answer a woodi \_\_\_\_\_ naa? question in the negative as in:

Woodi koroowal naa?	<i>Is there a chair?</i>
Aa'a, walaa koroowal.	<i>No, there isn't a chair.</i>

Walaa may also be used to ask questions. For example:

Walaa koroowal naa?	<i>Is there no chair? Isn't there a chair?</i>
---------------------	--

The use of walaa instead of woodi provides an alternate way to ask a question in Fulfulde. The two forms differ only in that :

Using woodi involves positive supposition, that is, the speaker anticipates a positive answer.

<i>Is there a _____?</i>	<i>Is there any _____?</i>
--------------------------	----------------------------

Using walaa involves negative supposition, that is, the speaker anticipates a negative answer.

<i>Is there no _____?</i>	<i>Isn't there any _____?</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------------

In usage the two forms are usually interchangeable.

### **Answering a Negative Supposition**

Here is one way to answer walaa \_\_\_\_\_ naa questions. Answer just as you would in English, addressing the fact.

"Yes," if there is or there are (woodi)
"No," if there isn't or there aren't (walaa)

Another way to answer will be shown in the next lesson.

Questions and positive answers:

Exercise 7

Walaa hottollo naa?  
Walaa hu'do naa?  
Walaa ha'b'bere naa?

Ooho, woodi.  
Ooho, woodi.  
Ooho, woodi.

Exercise 8

Walaa tummude naa?  
Walaa deftere naa?  
Walaa tebur naa?

Ooho, woodi tummude.  
Ooho, woodi deftere.  
Ooho, woodi tebur.

Questions and negative answers:

Exercise 9

Walaa daago naa?  
Walaa koroowal naa?  
Walaa leeso naa?

Aa'a, walaa.  
Aa'a, walaa.  
Aa'a, walaa.

Exercise 10

Walaa lekki naa?  
Walaa saare naa?  
Walaa suudu naa?

Aa'a, walaa lekki.  
Aa'a, walaa saare.  
Aa'a, walaa suudu.

Exercise 11 nge, ndu and ngu class nouns

nagge nge  
naange nge  
liingu ngu  
puucu ngu  
sondu ndu  
suudu ndu

Exercise 12 questions and positive answers using class pronouns

Walaa nagge naa?  
Walaa liingu naa?  
Walaa sondu naa?  
Walaa naange naa?  
Walaa puucu naa?  
Walaa suudu naa?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa nge.  
Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngu.  
Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ndu.  
Ooho, woodi. Ndaa nge.  
Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngu.  
Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ndu.

Exercise 13 questions and negative answers using class pronouns

Walaa nagge naa?  
Walaa liingu naa?  
Walaa sondu naa?  
Walaa naange naa?  
Walaa puccu naa?  
Walaa suudu naa?

Aa'a, walaa. Nge majji.  
Aa'a, walaa. Ngu majji.  
Aa'a, walaa. Ndu majji.  
Aa'a, walaa. Nge majji.  
Aa'a, walaa. Ngu majji.  
Aa'a, walaa. Ndu majji.

The last could be said when the *suudu* is obscured, e.g. by heavy rain. Similarly, *naange majji* or *nge majji* are possible expressions - *The sun has vanished (behind a cloud)*.

The answers to the following questions use pronouns from all the noun classes learned so far.

Exercise 14

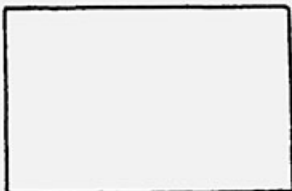
1.



Woodi nagge naa?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa nge.

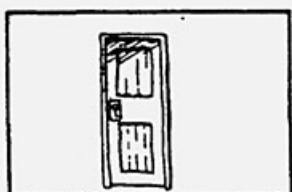
2.



Woodi sondu naa?

Aa'a, walaa. Ndu majji.

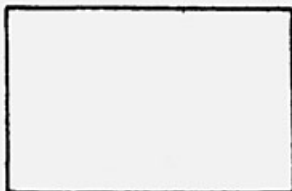
3.



Woodi dammugal naa?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngal.

4.



Woodi tummude naa?

Aa'a, walaa. Nde majji.

5.



Woodi suudu naa?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ndu.

6.



Woodi ha'b'bere  
gawri naa?

Aa'a, walaa. Nde majji.

### Exercise 15

1.



Walaa naange naa?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa nge.

2.



Walaa naange naa?

Aa'a, walaa. Nge majji.

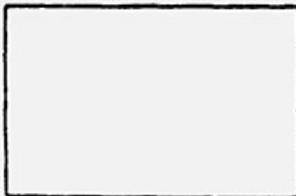
3.



Walaa saare naa?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa nde.

4.



Walaa puccu naa?

Aa'a, walaa. Ngu majji.

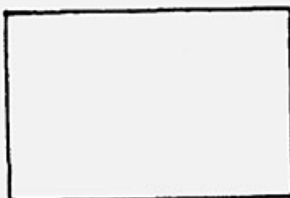
5.



Walaa sondu naa?

Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ndu.

6.



Walaa nagge naa?

Aa'a, walaa. Nge majji.

### Jangde timmunde

Ja'b'baama.  
Mi ja'bi.  
Ndaa debbo.  
Noy innde debbo man.  
'Dum Zeynabu. Zeynabu 'dum debbo Buuba.  
Too, use Zeynabu, ja'b'baama.

Sannu maa.  
Yawwa, useko.  
Ndaa 'bingel.  
Noy innde 'bingel man?  
'Dum Usumaanu. Usumaanu 'dum 'bingel Buuba bee Zeynabu.

Use.  
Useko.  
Ndaa gorko.  
Noy innde gorko man?  
'Dum Abdullaahi. Abdullaahi 'dum modibbo Usumaanu on.  
'Dum Hawsaajo naa?  
Naa 'dum Hawsaajo. Abdullaahi 'dum Pullo Adamaawa on.  
Too, use Abdullaahi, ja'b'baama.

Woodi deftere bee 'dereewol naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Woodi tebur naa kadi?  
Walaa kam. Tebur majji.  
Too.

Woodi puccu naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Toy puccu man?  
Ndaa puccu man.  
Too.

Woodi nagge naa?  
Ooho, woodi nagge.  
Toy nagge man?  
Ndaa nagge man.  
Too.

Woodi suudu naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Toy suudu man?  
Ndaa suudu man.  
Too.

Woodi liingu naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Toy ngu?  
Ndaa ngu.  
Too.

Woodi nagge naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Toy nge?  
Ndaa nge.  
Too.

Woodi deftere naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Toy nde?  
Ndaa nde.  
Too.

Woodi daago naa?  
Ooho, woodi daago.  
Toy daago man?  
Ndaa daago man.  
Too.

Woodi tummude naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Toy tummude man?  
Ndaa tummude man.  
Too.

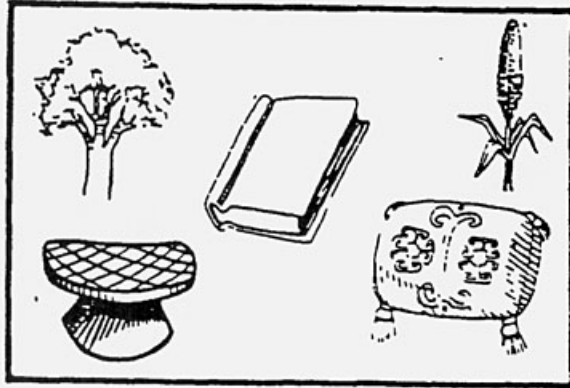
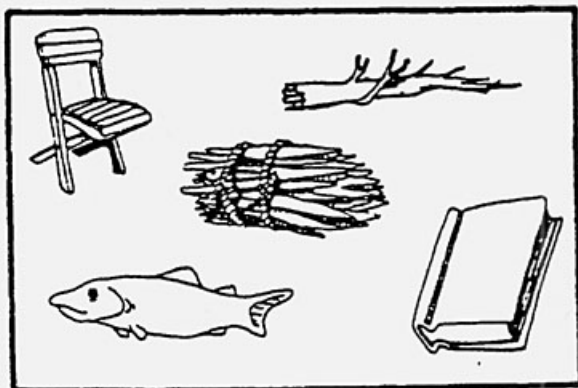
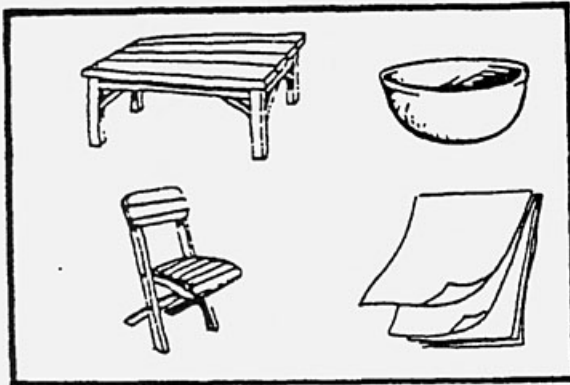
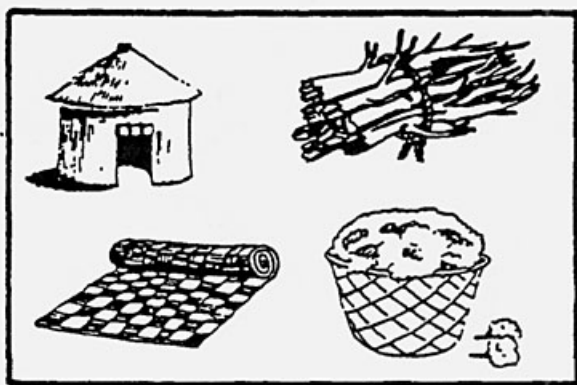
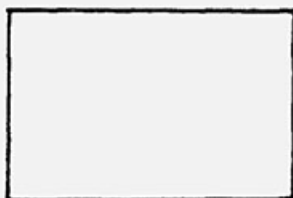
Woodi koroowal naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Toy koroowal man?  
Ndaa koroowal man.  
Too.

Woodi suudu naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Toy ndu?  
Ndaa ndu.  
Too.

Woodi leggal naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Toy ngal?  
Ndaa ngal.  
Too.



Ngewta



## LESSON 6

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 6, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 7 new vocabulary items
- use the greeting sequence:      **A waali jam?**  
  **Jam**
- answer to the supposition as an alternate way to answer a negative supposition question
- use ko class pronouns.



### Dialogue

Usumaanu: A waali jam?

*How are you this morning?*

Aa'i: Jam.

*Fine.*

U: Ndaa suudu Zeynabu.

*Here is Zainabu's hut.*

A: Too, walaa fayande naa?

*Oh. Is there no cooking pot?*

A: Aa'a woodi fayande.

*No, (incorrect) there is a cooking pot.*

A: Walaa ku'b'bir'dum naa?

*Is there no firewood?*

U: Ooho, walaa ku'b'bir'dum.

*Yes, (correct) there is no firewood.*

A: Too, boo'd'dum.

*Okay, fine.*

## Vocabulary

jam: here, *fine, well*; literally, *health*  
a waali jam?: *have you spent the night well?*  
boo'd'dum: *good, fine*  
Aa'ii: *Ai (woman's name)*



*fayande (nde): cooking pot*



*ku'b'bir'dum: firewood (literally, that which is kindled)*

### Negative suppositions: answering to the supposition

As we mentioned in the previous lesson, there is more than one way, in Fulfulde, to answer a negative supposition question.

The first, which you have already learned and practiced, answers to the fact: Yes when there is — No when there isn't.

The second way answers to the accuracy of the supposition: No, when there is — Yes, when there isn't.

That's right!

Sometimes, when a question involves a negative supposition, for example, *walaa koroowal naa?* — *is there no chair?*, Fulfulde directs the yes or no to the accuracy of the supposition unlike English which always directs the answer to the fact.

One way to understand this type of response is to imagine the speaker prefacing the answer with "No, I disagree..." or "Yes, I agree..." or with "No, incorrect..." or "Yes, correct..."

Compare the English and Fulfulde response patterns for positive answers:

*Is there no chair?*

*Walaa koroowal naa?*

*Yes, there is a chair.*

*Aa'a, woodi koroowal. No (I disagree, incorrect) there is a chair.*

The Fulfulde "no" answers the supposition and not the fact. The implication is: "No, I disagree, your supposition is incorrect, there is a chair."

When the English answer is negative the same reversal occurs.

*Is there no chair?*

Walaa koroowal naa?

*No, there is no chair.*

Ooho, walaa koroowal. *Yes, (I agree, correct) there is no chair.*

Again, the Fulfulde "yes" answers the supposition. The implication is: "Yes, I agree, your supposition is correct, there is no chair."

The safe rule to follow is to be sure that you give the full true statement along with aa'a or ooho.

Here are some negative suppositions and their positive answers. We'll translate the first one to help avoid confusion.

### Exercise 1

Walaa nagge naa?

*Is there no cow?*

Aa'a, woodi nagge.

*No (I disagree), there is a cow.*

Walaa hu'do naa?

Walaa leeso naa?

Walaa hottollo naa?

Walaa fayande naa?

Walaa puccu naa?

Walaa lekki naa?

Walaa ku'b'bir'dum naa?

Aa'a, woodi hu'do.

Aa'a, woodi leeso.

Aa'a, woodi hottollo.

Aa'a, woodi fayande.

Aa'a, woodi puccu.

Aa'a, woodi lekki.

Aa'a, woodi ku'b'bir'dum.

And here are some negative suppositions and their negative responses. Again, to avoid confusion, the first one is translated.

### Exercise 2

Walaa modibbo naa?

*Is there no teacher?*

Ooho, walaa modibbo.

*Yes (I agree), there is no teacher.*

Walaa pukaraajo naa?

Walaa tummude naa?

Walaa hu'do naa?

Walaa ko'do naa?

Walaa ha'b'bere naa?

Walaa fayande naa?

Ooho, walaa pukaraajo.

Ooho, walaa tummude.

Ooho, walaa hu'do.

Ooho, walaa ko'do.

Ooho, walaa ha'b'bere.

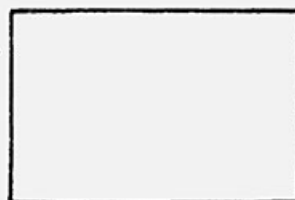
Ooho, walaa fayande.

In the following answers to negative suppositions, the "yes" or "no" is directed to the supposition. Here are two examples:



Walaa tummude naa?

Aa'a, woodi tummude.



Walaa tummude naa?

Ooho, walaa tummude.

### Exercise 3

1.



Walaa 'bingel naa?

Aa'a, woodi 'bingel.

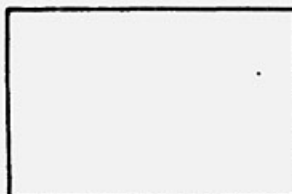
2.



Walaa lekki naa?

Aa'a, woodi lekki.

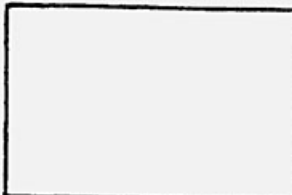
3.



Walaa lekki naa?

Ooho, walaa lekki.

4.



Walaa nagge naa?

Ooho, walaa nagge.

5.



Walaa nagge naa?

Aa'a, woodi nagge.

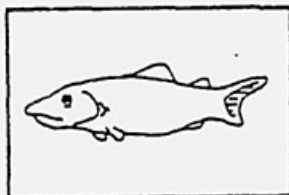
6.



Walaa sondu naa?

Aa'a, woodi sondu.

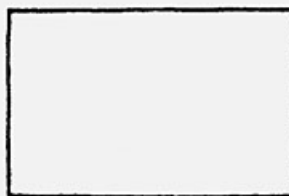
7.



Walaa liingu naa?

Aa'a, woodi liingu.

8.



Walaa liingu naa?

Ooho, walaa liingu.

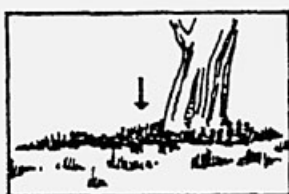
9.



Walaa ku'b'bir'dum naa?

Aa'a, woodi ku'b'bir'dum.

10.



Walaa hu'do naa?

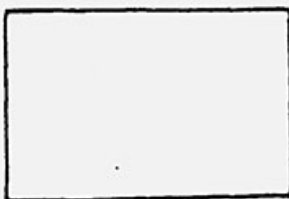
Aa'a, woodi hu'do.

Lest you forget that positive suppositions are still possible, let's review a few of them before mixing positive and negative suppositions together!



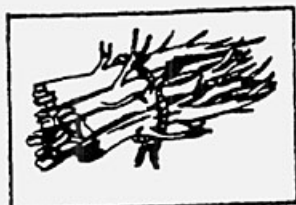
Woodi ku'b'bir'dum naa?

Ooho, woodi ku'b'bir'dum.



Woodi ku'b'bir'dum naa?

Aa'a, walaa ku'b'bir'dum.



'Dum ku'b'bir'dum naa?

Ooho, 'dum ku'b'bir'dum.



'Dum ku'b'bir'dum naa?

Aa'a, naa 'dum ku'b'bir'dum.

Exercise 4

1.



'Dum fayande naa?

Ooho, 'dum fayande.

2.



'Dum fayande naa?

Aa'a, naa 'dum fayande.

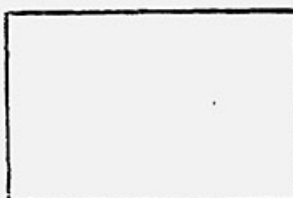
3.



Woodi tummude naa?

Ooho, woodi tummude.

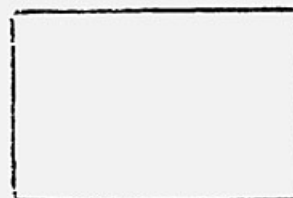
4.



Woodi tummude naa?

Aa'a, walaa tummude.

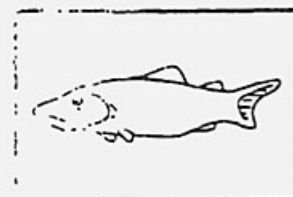
5.



Woodi ku'b'bir'dum naa?

Aa'a, walaa ku'b'bir'dum.

6.



'Dum sondu naa?

Aa'a, naa 'dum sondu.



7.



'Dum liingu naa?

Aa'a, naa 'dum liingu.

8.



Woodi puccu naa?

Ooho, woodi puccu.

9.



'Dum hu'do naa?

Ooho, 'dum hu'do.

In the following exercise some questions are positive suppositions, others are negative suppositions.

### Exercise 5

1.



Woodi koroowal naa?

Ooho, woodi koroowal.

2.



Wala koroowal naa?

Aa'a, woodi koroowal.

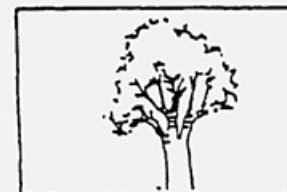
3.



'Dum lekki naa?

Ooho, 'dum lekki.

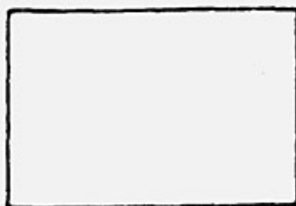
4.



'Dum koroowal naa?

Aa'a, naa 'dum koroowal.

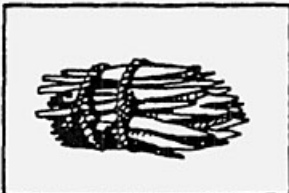
5.



Woodi koroowal naa?

Aa'a, walaa koroowal.

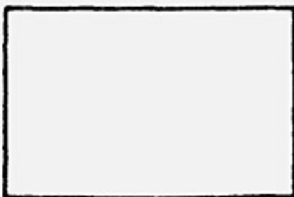
6.



Woodi ha'b'bere naa?

Ooho, woodi ha'b'bere.

7.



Walaa tebur naa?

Aa'a, walaa tebur.

8.



Walaa ku'b'bir'dum naa?

Ooho, woodi ku'b'bir'dum.

With this lesson we are introducing ko class nouns. Two ko class nouns you have already learned are hottollo (ko) and hu'do (ko).

### Exercise 6

hottollo (ko)  
hu'do (ko)  
fayande (nde)

Here are some questions and their positive answers. The answers reply to the supposition and make use of the class pronoun.

### Exercise 7

Walaa hu'do naa?  
Walaa ha'b'bere naa?  
Walaa fayande naa?  
Walaa nagge naa?  
Walaa sondu naa?  
Walaa puccu naa?  
Walaa hottollo naa?

Aa'a, woodi. Ndaa ko.  
Aa'a, woodi. Ndaa nde.  
Aa'a, woodi. Ndaa nde.  
Aa'a, woodi. Ndaa nge.  
Aa'a, woodi. Ndaa ndu.  
Aa'a, woodi. Ndaa ngu.  
Aa'a, woodi. Ndaa ko.

Here are some questions and their negative answers. The answers reply to the supposition and make use of the class pronoun.

Exercise 8

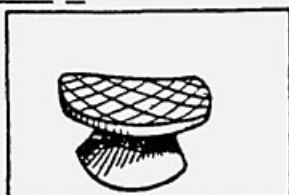
Walaa hu'do naa?  
 Walaa hottollo naa?  
 Walaa leggal naa?  
 Walaa ha'b'bere naa?  
 Walaa fayande naa?  
 Walaa liingu naa?  
 Walaa suudu naa?  
 Walaa naange naa?

Ooho, ko majji.  
 Ooho, ko majji.  
 Ocho, ngal majji.  
 Ooho, nde majji.  
 Ooho, nde majji.  
 Ooho, ngu majji.  
 Ooho, ndu majji.  
 Ooho, nge majji.

In the following exercise, the answers reply to the supposition and use pronouns.

Exercise 9

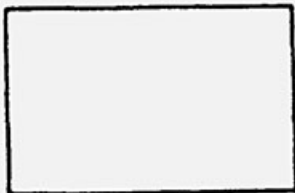
1.



Walaa koroowal naa?

Aa'a, woodi. Ndaa ngal.

2.



Walaa nagge naa?

Ooho, nge majji.

3.



Walaa deftere naa?

Aa'a, woodi. Ndaa nde.

4.



Walaa puccu naa?

Ooho. Ngu majji.

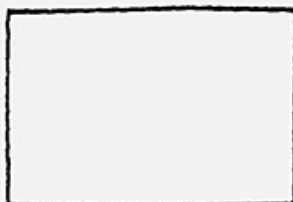
5.



Walaa sondu naa?

Aa'a, woodi. Ndaa ndu.

6.



Walaa ha'b'bere naa?

Ooho, nde majji.

**Jangde timmunde**

Ja'b'baama.  
Mi ja'bi.  
A waali jam?  
Jam.  
Ndaa saare Saalihu.  
Too, woodi tummude naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Woodi fayande naa kadi?  
Ooho, woodi fayande.  
Walaa ku'b'bir'dum naa?  
Ooho, walaa ku'b'bir'dum.  
Too.

Use.  
Useko.  
A waali jam?  
Jam.  
Ndaa suudu Zeynabu.  
Too, woodi daago naa?  
Aa'a, walaa daago.  
Woodi koroowal?  
Aa'a, woodi fayande.  
Too, boo'd'dum.

Sannu maa.  
Yawwa, useko.  
A waali jam?  
Jam.  
Ndaa saare Buuba.  
Toy nde?  
Ndaa nde.  
Woodi tebur naa?  
Ooho, ndaa tebur.  
Walaa fayande naa?  
Aa'a, woodi fayande.  
Walaa ku'b'bir'dum naa kadi?  
Ooho, walaa kam.  
Useko.

**Page Image  
not Available**

**Missing Page  
64**

## LESSON 7

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 7, the student will be able to:

-identify and correctly use 16 new vocabulary items

-use the greeting sequence: A nyalli jam?  
Jam.

-correctly pronounce the nasals:

m	n	ny	
mb	nd	nj	ng

-use 'don in the expressions 'don 'do and 'don ton

-answer toy \_\_\_\_\_ ? questions with:

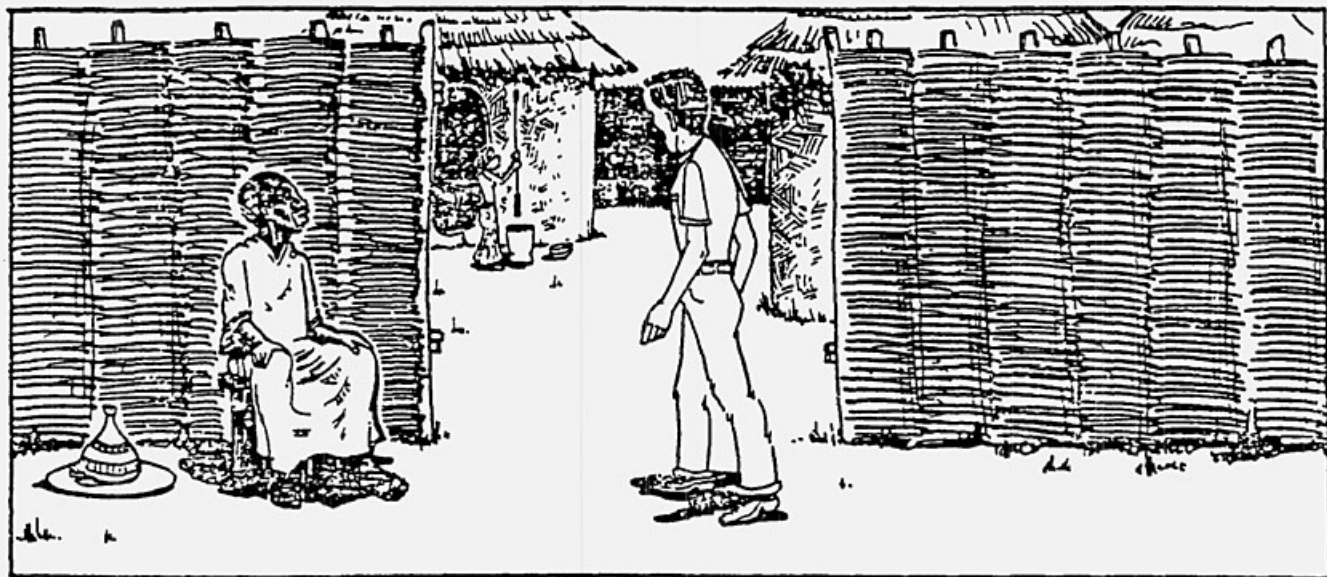
_____	'don 'do.
_____	'don ton.
_____	walaa 'do.
_____	walaa ton.

-answer 'dume 'do? and 'dume ton? questions with:

'dum	_____	'do or
'dum	_____	ton

-use the 'dam class pronoun

-use the ka class pronoun.



### Dialogue

John: A nyalli jam?

*Good afternoon. How are you?*

Saalihu: Jam.

*Fine.*

J: Toy jawmu saare?

*Where is the head of the household?*

S: Jawmu saare 'don 'do.

*The head of the household is here.*

J: Too, daada saare 'don 'do  
naa kadi?

*Fine, is the senior wife  
here, too?*

S: Aa'a, daada saare walaa 'do;  
daada saare 'don ton.

*No, the senior wife is not here.  
The senior wife is over there.*

J: Too, boo'd'dum. Use.

*Okay, fine, thanks.*

### Vocabulary

a nyalli jam?: *have you spent the morning well?*

jawmu: *owner, master, possessor*

jawmu saare: *owner of the compound, head of the household*

'don: *is at, is around*

daada saare: *mistress of the household, senior wife of the  
householder, courtesy title of the senior wife*

'do: *here*

ton: *there*

## Pronunciation — Nasal and Prenasal Consonants

Nasal consonants are formed when the flow of air is stopped and then released through the nose rather than through the mouth. In Fulfulde, the nasals are *m*, *n*, and *ny*. Note that this last is not a prenasalized *y* and is written *ny* only due to a spelling convention which attempts to avoid the creation of unusual symbols.

Listen to and repeat the pronunciation of the following words paying special attention to the nasals and prenasals. Note that in Fulfulde, unlike English, the prenasalized consonants can occur at the beginning of a word.

### Exercise 1

#### Nasals

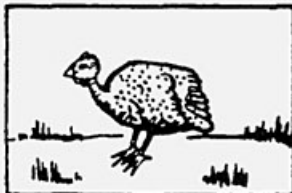
<u>m</u>	<u>n</u>	<u>ny</u>
mallūmjo	nagge	nyebbām
maw'do	naange	nyliri
man	on	nyawndiigu
min	nanugo	nyamdu
en	'daanugo	nyorgo

#### Prenasals

<u>mb</u>	<u>nd</u>	<u>nj</u>	<u>ng</u>
mbuubu	ndaa	njamū	ngapaleewol
mbeewa	ndabbawa	njamndi	ngabbu
mbe'du	ndiyam	njaareendi	kosngal
mbiriūwu	nde	njaajina	ngam
mbayeeeri	ndoondi		ngesa
	nder		'bingel
			jaawngal

### Exercise 2 New Vocabulary

1.



jaawngal (ngal) : *guinea fowl*

2.



ngabbu (ngu) : *hippopotamus*



3.



mbeewa : *goat*

4.



ngapalewol : *gown, man's garment*

5.



ndiyam ('dam) : *water*

6.



nyamdu (ndu) : *food*

7.



nyebbam ('dam) : *cooking oil*

8.



nyiiri : *a porridge*

9.



ngesa (ka) : *farm, field*

With this vocabulary, we have introduced the 'dam class and the ka class.

Here is an exercise which reviews some structures and uses the new vocabulary. Referring to the illustrations answer the following sequences of questions. For nouns where the noun class marker has been learned, the final question and answer involve the class pronoun.

Exercise 3

- |    |   |  |   |
|----|---|--|---|
| 1. |    | 'Dum 'dume?<br>Toy jaawngal?<br>Woodi jaawngal naa?<br>Toy ngal? | 'Dum jaawngal.<br>Ndaa jaawngal.<br>Ooho, woodi jaawngal.<br>Ndaa ngal. |
| 2. |    | 'Dum 'dume?<br>Toy ngabbu?<br>Woodi ngabbu naa?<br>Toy ngu?      | 'Dum ngabbu.<br>Ndaa ngabbu.<br>Ooho, woodi ngabbu.<br>Ndaa ngu.        |
| 3. |   | 'Dum 'dume?<br>Toy mbeewa?<br>Woodi mbeewa naa?                  | 'Dum mbeewa.<br>Ndaa mbeewa.<br>Ooho, woodi mbeewa.                     |
| 4. |  | 'Dum 'dume?<br>Toy ngapaleewol?<br>Woodi ngapaleewol naa?        | 'Dum ngapaleewol.<br>Ndaa ngapaleewol.<br>Ooho, woodi ngapaleewol.      |
| 5. |  | 'Dum 'dume?<br>Toy ndiyam?<br>Woodi ndiyam naa?<br>Toy 'dam?     | 'Dum ndiyam.<br>Ndaa ndiyam.<br>Ooho, woodi ndiyam.<br>Ndaa 'dam.       |
| 6. |  | 'Dum 'dume?<br>Toy nyamdu?<br>Woodi nyamdu naa?<br>Toy ndu?      | 'Dum nyamdu.<br>Ndaa nyamdu.<br>Ooho, woodi nyamdu.<br>Ndaa ndu.        |
| 7. |  | 'Dum 'dume?<br>Toy nyebbam?<br>Woodi nyebbam naa?<br>Toy 'dam?   | 'Dum nyebbam.<br>Ndaa nyebbam.<br>Ooho, woodi nyebbam.<br>Ndaa 'dam.    |

8.



'Dum 'dume?  
Toy nyiiri?  
Woodi nyiiri naa?

'Dum nyiiri.  
Ndaa nyiiri.  
Ooho, woodi nyiiri.

9.



'Dum 'dume?  
Toy ngesa?  
Woodi ngesa naa?

'Dum ngesa.  
Ndaa ngesa.  
Ocho, woodi ngesa.

'Don

We have seen that the English verb "to be" or "is" in Fulfulde is rendered in various ways, including omission: 'dum 'bingel, ndaa saare, gorko Zeynabu moy, woodi tummude naa?, etc.

Another example of copula omission is the use of 'don which generally indicates "place at." 'Don is a locative, a word which locates people, objects, actions or states of being in time or in space.

Usumaanu 'don 'do.  
Usumaanu 'don ton.

*Usmanu is here (near).*  
*Usmanu is there (far).*

Exercise 4

Usumaanu 'don 'do.  
Jawmu saare 'don 'do.  
Ndiyam 'don 'do.  
Mbewa 'don 'do.  
Ngesa 'don 'do.  
Nyiiri 'don 'do.

Usumaanu 'don ton.  
Jawmu saare 'don ton.  
Ndiyam 'don ton.  
Mbewa 'don ton.  
Ngesa 'don ton.  
Nyiiri 'don ton.

Exercise 5

Toy jawmu saare?  
Toy jawmu saare?  
Toy ndiyam?  
Toy ndiyam?  
Toy ngapaleewol?  
Toy ngapaleewol?

Jawmu saare 'don 'do.  
Jawmu saare 'don ton.  
Ndiyam 'don 'do.  
Ndiyam 'don ton.  
Ngapaleewol 'don 'do.  
Ngapaleewol 'don ton.

**Exercise 6**

1.



**Toy Zeynabu?**

**Zeynabu 'don 'do.**

2.



**Toy Zeynabu?**

**Zeynabu 'don ton.**

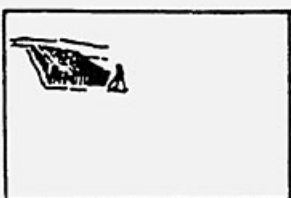
3.



**Toy ngesa?**

**Ngesa 'don 'do.**

4.



**Toy ngesa?**

**Ngesa 'don ton.**

5.



**Toy ngabbu?**

**Ngabbu 'don 'do.**

6.



**Toy ngabbu?**

**Ngabbu 'don ton.**

7.



**Toy mbeewa?**

**Mbeewa 'don 'do.**

8.



Toy mbeewa?

Mbeewa 'don ton.

Exercise 7 Nouns with their class markers.

nyebbam ('dam)  
ndiyam ('dam)  
jaawngal (ngal)  
ngabbu (ngu)  
nyamdu (ndu)

The answers to the following questions use pronouns.

Exercise 8

1.



Toy hu'do?

Ko 'don ton.

2.



Toy nyebbam?

'Dam 'don 'do.

3.



Toy ndiyam?

'Dam 'don ton.

4.



Toy jaawngal?

Ngal 'don 'do.

5.



Toy ngabbu?

Ngu 'don ton.

6.



Toy nyamdu?

Ndu 'don 'do.

7.



Toy ngesa?

Ka 'don ton.

'Don 'do and 'don ton may also be used to ask questions. For example:

Usumaanu 'don 'do naa?

*Is Usmanu here?*

Mbeewa 'don ton naa?

*Is the goat over there?*Exercise 9

Saalihu 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, Saalihu 'don 'do.

Daada saare 'don ton naa?

Ooho, daada saare 'don ton.

Mbeewa 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, mbeewa 'don 'do.

Ngabbu 'don ton naa?

Ooho, ngabbu 'don ton.

Nyiiri 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, nyiiri 'don 'do.

Nyebbam 'don ton naa?

Ooho, nyebbam 'don ton.

The answers to the following questions use pronouns.

Exercise 10

Ndiyam 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, 'dam 'don 'do.

Leggal 'don ton naa?

Ooho, ngal 'don ton.

Ngesa 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, ka 'don 'do.

Ngesa 'don ton naa?

Ooho, ka 'don ton.

Hottollo 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, ko 'don 'do.

Hu'do 'don ton naa?

Ooho, ko 'don ton.

Jaawngal 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, ngal 'don 'do.

Nagge 'don ton naa?

Ooho, nge 'don ton.

Ngabbu 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, ngu 'don 'do.

Nyamdu 'don ton naa?

Ooho, ndu 'don ton.

Fayande 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, nde 'don 'do.

Negative answers to these questions follow a slightly different pattern.

### Exercise 11

Jawmu saare 'don 'do naa?  
Daada saare 'don ton naa?  
Ndiyam 'don 'do naa?  
Nyamdu 'don ton naa?  
Jaawngal 'don 'do naa?  
Ngesa 'don ton naa?

Aa'a, jawmu saare walaa 'do.  
Aa'a, daada saare walaa ton.  
Aa'a, ndiyam walaa 'do.  
Aa'a, nyamdu walaa ton.  
Aa'a, jaawngal walaa 'do.  
Aa'a, ngesa walaa ton.

The answers to the following questions use pronouns.

### Exercise 12

Nyamdu 'don 'do naa?  
Ngabbu 'don ton naa?  
Jaawngal 'don 'do naa?  
Ndiyam 'don ton naa?  
Nyebbam 'don 'do naa?  
Ngesa 'don ton naa?  
Hottollo 'don 'do naa?

Aa'a, ndu walaa 'do.  
Aa'a, ngu walaa ton.  
Aa'a, ngal walaa 'do.  
Aa'a, 'dam walaa ton.  
Aa'a, 'dam walaa 'do.  
Aa'a, ka walaa ton.  
Aa'a, ko walaa 'do.

### **'Dume 'do and 'dume ton**

Here is another way to use 'dume:

'Dume 'do?  
'Dume ton?

*What is here, what is it here?  
What is over there, what is it over there?*

### Exercise 13

'Dume 'do? (hottollo)  
'Dume 'do? (ngapaleewol)  
'Dume 'do? (nyamdu)  
'Dume 'do? (nyebbam)

'Dum hottollo. (or) 'Dum hottollo on 'do.  
'Dum ngapaleewol. (or) 'Dum ngapaleewol on 'do.  
'Dum nyamdu. (or) 'Dum nyamdu on 'do.  
'Dum nyebbam. (or) 'Dum nyebbam on 'do.

### Exercise 14

'Dume ton? (ndiyam)  
'Dume ton? (suudu)  
'Dume ton? (ngesa)

'Dum ndiyam. (or) 'Dum ndiyam on ton.  
'Dum suudu. (or) 'Dum suudu on ton.  
'Dum ngesa. (or) 'Dum ngesa on ton.

## Jangde timmunde

Sannu.  
Sannu.  
Use.  
Useko.  
A waali jam?  
Jam.  
Toy Abdullaahi?  
Abdullaahi 'don ton.  
Too, Usumaanu 'don ton naa kadi?  
Aa'a, Usumaanu 'don 'do. Ndaa Usumaanu.  
Too, boo'd'dum. Use.

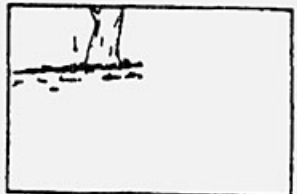
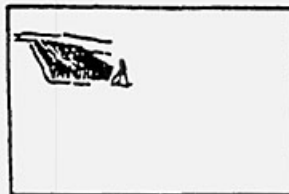
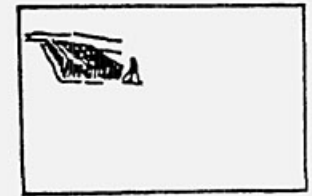
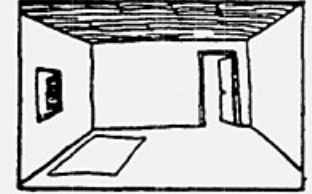
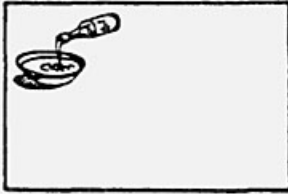
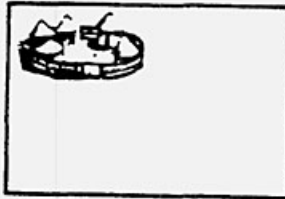
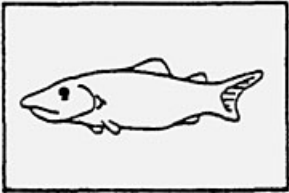
Use.  
Useko.  
Ja'b'baama.  
Mi ja'bi.  
A nyalli jam?  
Jam.  
'Dume ton?  
'Dum ngabbu ton.  
Too, 'dume 'do?  
'Dum jaawngal 'do.  
Mbeewa 'don 'do naa kadi?  
Ooho, mbeewa 'don 'do.  
Nagge 'don 'do naa kadi?  
Aa'a, nagge walaa 'do kam, nagge 'don ton.  
Too, boo'd'dum, use.

Sannu.  
Sannu.  
Ja'b'baama.  
Mi ja'bi.  
A nyalli jam?  
Jam.  
Ndaa suudu Zeynabu.  
Too, woodi tummude 'do naa?  
Ooho, woodi.  
Woodi fayande 'do naa kadi?  
Aa'a, walaa kam.  
Walaa koroowal 'do?  
Aa'a, woodi koroowal 'do.  
Walaa ku'b'bir'dum 'do?  
Ooho, walaa ku'b'bir'dum kam.  
Too, useko.

Use.  
Useko.  
Sannu maa.  
Yawwa useko.  
Toy saare Buuba?  
Ndaa nde.  
Ndiyam 'don 'do naa?  
Ooho, 'dam 'don 'do.  
'Dume 'do?  
'Dum nyebbam 'do.  
Nyamdu 'don ton naa?  
Ooho, ndu 'don ton.  
Too, boo'd'dum, useko.



Ngewta



## LESSON 8

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 8, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 18 new vocabulary items
- use the greeting sequence: Gaafara.  
Ja'b'baama poy, use e warugo.
- detect in listening and pronounce the glottal 'y
- use 'don haa \_\_\_\_\_  
'don haa nder \_\_\_\_\_
- ask and answer toy \_\_\_\_\_? questions with:  
\_\_\_\_\_ 'don haa \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_ 'don haa nder \_\_\_\_\_.
- use the impersonal possessive pronouns after prepositions and locatives
- give three examples of nga class nouns
- give three examples of ngo class nouns.



### Dialogue

Gi'daa'do: Gaafara.

*May I come in?*

Saalihi: Ja'b'baama poy, use e warugo. A wari jam?

*Welcome. Greetings on your arrival. Have you arrived well?*

G: Useko. Buuba 'don 'do hande naa?

*Thank you. Is Buba here today?*

S: Mhmm. Buuba 'don haa nder suudu.

*Yes, Buba is inside the house.*

G: Too, Zeynabu 'don 'do naa kadi?

*Well, is Zainabu here too?*

S: Aa'a. Zeynabu 'don haa 'Yoola hande.

*No, Zainabu is at Yola today.*

G: Too, boo'd'dum, sey yeeso.

*Okay, fine, so long, see you soon.*

### Vocabulary

gaafara: *excuse me; may I come in?; make way please!; I beg your pardon*

warugo: *to come*

use e warugo: *greetings upon your arrival*

a wari jam?: *have you arrived well?*

poy: *many, a lot*

hande: *today*

mhmm: *= oho*

haa: *at*

nder: *within, in*

haa nder: *within, in*

'Yoola: *Yola, the capital of Gongola State*

sey yeeso: *so long, see you soon*

## Pronunciation — Glottal 'y

Pronunciation of the glottal 'y, somewhat like the pronunciation of glottal 'd and 'b, involves momentarily stopping the air at the glottis then releasing the air while pronouncing y. Thinking of the way y is pronounced in the hesitation form "...yeah, but..." may be of help to the English speaker.

The following words illustrate glottal 'y.

### Exercise 1

'yamol  
'ya'b'ba

'yombal  
'Yoola  
'yolde

'yuufa

'yeeba

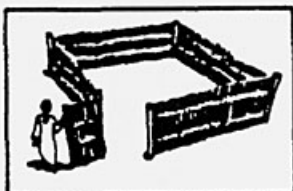
Here are some pairs of words contrasting plain y and glottal 'y.

### Exercise 2

yam'da  
yeeba  
yonnde  
yora

'yama  
'yeeba  
'yolde  
'yoora

### Exercise 3 Additional Vocabulary



waalde (nde): *corral*



Pariya: *Paria (town where Buba Bello and family live)*



laamii'do: *emir, king*



saare laamii'do (nde): *home of the emir, palace*



kanti (nga) or kantiwa (nga): *small shop, store*



koloba (ndu) or kolobaaru (ndu): *bottle*



wawru (ndu): *well*



maayo (ngo): *river*



luumo (ngo): *market, marketplace*

With this lesson we are introducing the nga class and the ngo class.

other nga class nouns: tebur (nga) or teburwa (nga)

mbeewa (nga)

other ngo class nouns: daago (ngo)

leeso (ngo)

In the last lesson we saw 'don used to indicate place at — Buuba 'don 'do, Zeynabu 'don ton, etc. In this lesson we will encounter a few more constructions using 'don.

1. 'Don haa generally means *is at*. For example:

Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don haa waalde.  
Zeynabu 'don haa 'Yoola.

*Gidado's cow is at the corral.  
Zainabu is at Yola.*

2. 'Don haa nder means *is in* or *is inside*. For example:

Zeynabu 'don haa nder suudu.  
Ngabbu 'don haa nder maayo.

*Zainabu is in the hut.  
The hippopotamus is in the river.*

Here are some questions using \_\_\_\_\_ 'don 'do naa? with answers using \_\_\_\_\_ 'don haa \_\_\_\_\_.

Note: the questions in this lesson are for the most part interchangeable, i.e. more than one type of question may be appropriate for any given answer. We are rotating the questions among the various drills to provide variety.

#### Exercise 4

Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don 'do naa? (waalde)	Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don haa waalde.
Mbeewa Gi'daa'do 'don 'do naa? (ngesa)	Mbeewa Gi'daa'do 'don haa ngesa.
Saare Buuba 'don 'do naa? (Pariya)	Saare Buuba 'don haa Pariya.
Saare laamii'do 'don 'do naa? ('Yoola)	Saare laamii'do 'don haa 'Yoola.
Zeynabu 'don 'do naa? (luumo)	Zeynabu 'don haa luumo.
Usumaanu 'don 'do naa? (kanti)	Usumaanu 'don haa kanti.

And here are some questions using Toy \_\_\_\_\_ ? with answers using \_\_\_\_\_ 'don haa nder \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Exercise 5

Toy Zeynabu? (suudu)	Zeynabu 'don haa nder suudu.
Toy Usumaanu? (kanti)	Usumaanu 'don haa nder kanti.
Toy nyamdu? (tummude)	Nyamdu 'don haa nder tummude.
Toy ndiyam? (wawru)	Ndiyam 'don haa nder wawru.
Toy nyebbam? (koloba)	Nyebbam 'don haa nder koloba.
Toy ngabbu? (maayo)	Ngabbu 'don haa nder maayo.

Questions and answers of this nature may of course be made more precise by the addition of words indicating time or place. For example:

Nyamdu 'don 'do hande naa?	<i>Is the food here today?</i>
Nyamdu 'don 'do hande, haa nder tummude.	<i>The food is here today, in the calabash.</i>

Here are some questions and answers using these constructions.

#### Exercise 6

Usumaanu 'don 'do hande naa? (haa nder kanti)	Usumaanu 'don 'do hande, haa nder kanti.
Zeynabu 'don 'do hande naa? (haa nder suudu)	Zeynabu 'don 'do hande, haa nder suudu.
Saare Buuba 'don 'do naa? (haa Pariya)	Saare Buuba 'don haa Pariya.
Saare laamii'do 'don ton naa? (haa 'Yoola)	Saare laamii'do 'don haa 'Yoola.
Mbeewa Gi'daa'do 'don ton hande naa? (haa ngesa)	Mbeewa Gi'daa'do 'don ton hande, haa ngesa.
Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don ton hande naa? (haa waalde)	Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don ton hande, haa waalde.

## Substitution drills

### Exercise 7

ton  
mbeewa Gi'daa'do  
mbeewa Buuba  
haa ngesa  
nagge Buuba  
haa waalde  
Uumaanu  
haa Pariya  
saare Buuba  
saare laamii'do  
haa 'Yoola  
Zeynabu  
Buuba  
haa kanti  
Uumaanu  
'do  
nagge Gi'daa'do

### Exercise 8

ton  
haa nder suudu  
Buuba  
haa nder kanti  
nyamdu  
nyebbam  
haa nder koloba  
ndiyam  
haa nder tummude  
nyamdu  
ndiyam  
haa nder wawru  
haa nder maayo  
ngabbu  
haa nder ndiyam

Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don 'do.  
Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don ton.  
Mbeewa Gi'daa'do 'don ton.  
Mbeewa Buuba 'don ton.  
Mbeewa Buuba 'don haa ngesa.  
Nagge Buuba 'don haa ngesa.  
Nagge Buuba 'don haa waalde.  
Uumaanu 'don haa waalde.  
Uumaanu 'don haa Pariya.  
Saare Buuba 'don haa Pariya.  
Saare laamii'do 'don haa Pariya.  
Saare laamii'do 'don haa 'Yoola.  
Zeynabu 'don haa 'Yoola.  
Buuba 'don haa 'Yoola.  
Buuba 'don haa kanti.  
Uumaanu 'don haa kanti.  
Uumaanu 'don 'do.  
Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don 'do.

Zeynabu 'don 'do.  
Zeynabu 'don ton.  
Zeynabu 'don haa nder suudu.  
Buuba 'don haa nder suudu.  
Buuba 'don haa nder kanti.  
Nyamdu 'don haa nder kanti.  
Nyebbam 'don haa nder kanti.  
Nyebbam 'don haa nder koloba.  
Ndiyam 'don haa nder koloba.  
Ndiyam 'don haa nder tummude.  
Nyamdu 'don haa nder tummude.  
Ndiyam 'don haa nder tummude.  
Ndiyam 'don haa nder wawru.  
Ndiyam 'don haa nder maayo.  
Ngabbu 'don haa nder maayo.  
Ngabbu 'don haa nder ndiyam.

Although 'do and ton are not generally used immediately before haa, plus a specified location, they may be placed at the end of a sentence containing haa. For example:

Zeynabu 'don haa maayo ton.

*Zainabu is over there at the river.  
Zainabu is at the river over there.*

### Exercise 9

luumo  
'do  
saare laamii'do  
Buuba  
kanti  
ton  
Usumaanu  
waalde  
wawru  
Zeynabu  
maayo

Zeynabu 'don haa maayo ton.  
Zeynabu 'don haa luumo ton.  
Zeynabu 'don haa luumo 'do.  
Zeynabu 'don haa saare laamii'do 'do.  
Buuba 'don haa saare laamii'do 'do.  
Buuba 'don haa kanti 'do.  
Buuba 'don haa kanti ton.  
Usumaanu 'don haa kanti ton.  
Usumaanu 'don haa waalde ton.  
Usumaanu 'don haa wawru ton.  
Zeynabu 'don haa wawru ton.  
Zeynabu 'don haa maayo ton.

### Exercise 10

ton  
haa maayo  
haa nder maayo  
Buuba  
'do  
ton  
haa wawru  
haa nder wawru  
Usumaanu  
'do  
liingu  
ton  
haa nder maayo  
haa nder ndiyam  
deftere Buuba

Zeynabu 'don 'do.  
Zeynabu 'don ton.  
Zeynabu 'don haa maayo.  
Zeynabu 'don haa nder maayo.  
Buuba 'don haa nder maayo.  
Buuba 'don 'do.  
Buuba 'don ton.  
Buuba 'don haa wawru.  
Buuba 'don haa nder wawru.  
Usumaanu 'don haa nder wawru.  
Usumaanu 'don 'do.  
Liingu 'don 'do.  
Liingu 'don ton.  
Liingu 'don haa nder maayo.  
Liingu 'don haa nder ndiyam.  
Deftere Buuba 'don haa nder ndiyam.



### Exercise 11

ndiyam  
liingu  
Zeynabu  
Buuba  
Usumaanu  
ngabbu  
haa nder maayo  
ndiyam  
liingu  
Zeynabu  
Usumaanu  
Buuba

Ngabbu 'don haa maayo.  
Ndiyam 'don haa maayo.  
Liingu 'don haa maayo.  
Zeynabu 'don haa maayo.  
Buuba 'don haa maayo.  
Usumaanu 'don haa maayo.  
Ngabbu 'don haa maayo.  
Ngabbu 'don haa nder maayo.  
Ndiyam 'don haa nder maayo.  
Liingu 'don haa nder maayo.  
Zeynabu 'don haa nder maayo.  
Usumaanu 'don haa nder maayo.  
Buuba 'don haa nder maayo.

### Exercise 12

waalde (nde)  
waalde Buuba (nde)  
saare laamii'do (nde)  
nagge Buuba (nge)  
wawru (ndu)  
koloba (ndu)

tebur (nga)  
mbeewa (nga)  
kanti (nga)  
maayo (ngo)  
leeso (ngo)  
daago (ngo)

The subject in the following sentences is replaced with the appropriate pronoun. Some sentences are statements others are questions.

### Exercise 13

Daago 'don 'do.  
Maayo 'don ton.  
Mbeewa Buuba 'don 'do.  
Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don 'do.  
Waalde Buuba 'don ton.  
Saare laamii'do 'don 'do naa?  
Liingu 'don ton naa?  
Nyamdu 'don haa nder kanti.  
Ngabbu 'don haa nder maayo.  
Kanti 'don ton naa?  
Koloba 'don haa nder suudu naa?  
Leeso 'don haa nder suudu naa?  
Tebur 'don haa nder suudu naa?

Ngo 'don 'do.  
Ngo 'don ton.  
Nga 'don 'do.  
Nge 'don 'do.  
Nde 'don ton.  
Nde 'don 'do naa?  
Ngu 'don ton naa?  
Ndu 'don haa nder kanti.  
Ngu 'don haa nder maayo.  
Nga 'don ton naa?  
Ndu 'don haa nder suudu naa?  
Ngo 'don haa nder suudu naa?  
Nga 'don haa nder suudu naa?

Answer the following questions using the appropriate pronouns.

Exercise 14

Toy tebur?	Ndaa nga.
Toy daago?	Ndaa ngo.
Toy koloba?	Ndaa ndu.
Toy mbeewa?	Ndaa nga.
Toy deftere?	Ndaa nde.
Toy wawru?	Ndaa ndu.
Toy waalde?	Ndaa nde.
Toy kanti?	Ndaa nga.
Toy leeso?	Ndaa ngo.
Toy saare laamii'do?	Ndaa nde.

Answer in the positive using pronouns in the answer.

Exercise 15

Woodi koloba naa?	Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ndu.
Woodi ngabbu naa?	Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngu.
Woodi puccu naa?	Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngu.
Woodi liingu naa?	Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngu.
Woodi sondu naa?	Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ndu.
Woodi daago naa?	Ooho, woodi. Ndaa ngo.
Woodi tebur naa?	Ooho, woodi. Ndaa nga.

Exercise 16 Additional Vocabulary

bee: *with*

**Non-human Possessive Pronouns**

Aside from indicating possession, the Fulfulde possessive pronouns are used after the locatives we are using in this lesson (*haa*, *nder*, and *haa nder*) and also after prepositions such as *bee*, which we have already learned meaning *and*, but which also means *with*.

These possessive pronouns consist of the prefix *maa-* and the noun class marker, which in some cases undergoes a minor phonetic change in the process. Here are the possessive pronouns for the noun classes already learned.

### Exercise 17

#### Noun Class

nde  
ngal  
nge  
ngu  
ndu  
ko  
'dam  
ka  
nga  
ngo

#### Possessive Pronoun

maare  
maangal  
maange  
maangu  
maaru  
maako  
maajam  
maaka  
maanga  
maango

Here are some examples of the way these possessive pronouns are used:

haa suudu  
haa maaru

*at the house*  
*at it*

haa nder maayo  
haa nder maango

*in the river*  
*in it*

bee tummude  
bee maare

*with the calabash*  
*with it*

#### Possessive pronouns

### Exercise 18

bee tummude  
bee dammugal  
bee nagge  
bee puccu  
bee sondu  
bee hottollo  
bee nyebbam  
bee ngesa  
bee mbeewa  
bee daago

bee maare  
bee maangal  
bee maange  
bee maangu  
bee maaru  
bee maako  
bee maajam  
bee maaka  
bee maanga  
bee maango

## Substitution and transformation drill

### Exercise 19

dammugal	bee maare
nagge	bee maangal
puccu	bee maange
sondu	bee maangu
hottollo	bee maaru
nyebbam	bee maako
ngesa	bee maajam
mbeewa	bee maaka
daago	bee maanga
tummude	bee maango
	bee maare

### Exercise 20

Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don haa waalde.  
Mbeewa Buuba 'don haa ngesa.  
Buuba 'don haa kanti.  
Zeynabu 'don haa nder suudu.  
Ndiyam 'don haa nder wawru.  
Usumaanu 'don haa maayo.  
Liingu 'don haa nder ndiyam.

Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don haa maare.  
Mbeewa Buuba 'don haa maaka.  
Buuba 'don haa maanga.  
Zeynabu 'don haa nder maaru.  
Ndiyam 'don haa nder maaru.  
Usumaanu 'don haa maango.  
Liingu 'don haa nder maajam.

## Substitution drills

### Exercise 21

luumo	Zeynabu 'don haa maare.
kanti	Zeynabu 'don haa maango.
wawru	Zeynabu 'don haa maanga.
ndiyam	Zeynabu 'don haa maaru.
saare	Zeynabu 'don haa maajam.
	Zeynabu 'don haa maare.

### Exercise 22

maayo	Ndiyam 'don haa nder maare.
wawru	Ndiyam 'don haa nder maango.
koloba	Ndiyam 'don haa nder maaru.
fayande	Ndiyam 'don haa nder maaru.
	Ndiyam 'don haa nder maare.

## Jangde timmunde

Gaafara.

Ja'b'baama, use e warugo. A wari jam?

Useko.

A waali jam?

Jam.

Zeynabu 'don 'do hande naa?

Aa'a, Zeynabu 'don haa luumo.

Too, Buuba 'don 'do naa?

Buuba 'don 'do hande, haa nder suudu. Buuba 'don 'do hande, haa nder maaru.

Too, boo'd'dum sey yeeso.

Gaafara.

Ja'b'baama, use e warugo. A wari jam?

Useko.

A nyalli jam?

Jam.

Ndaa ko'do.

Noy innde ko'do man?

'Dum Muusa. Muusa 'dum ko'do Buuba.

Too, use Muusa.

Useko.

Buuba 'don 'do hande naa?

Aa'a, Buuba 'don haa saare laamii'do ton.

Toy saare laamii'do?

Nde 'don haa 'Yoola.

Too.

Zeynabu 'don 'do hande naa?

Zeynabu 'don haa nder suudu 'do.

Toy suudu Zeynabu?

Ndaa ndu.

Too. Woodi nyebbam hande naa?

Ooho, woodi. 'Dam 'don haa nder koloba 'do. 'Dam 'don haa nder maanga.

Woodi nyamdu?

Woodi nyamdu. Ndu 'don haa nder tummude. Tummude 'don haa nder suudu.

Woodi ndiyam naa kadi?

Aa'a, walaa kam. Ndiyam 'don haa nder wawru ton.

'Dum ngabbu naa?

Ooho, ndaa ngu. Ngu 'don haa nder maayo ton. Ngu 'don haa nder maango.

Toy mbeewa Buuba?

Nga 'don 'do haa saare.

Toy nagge Buuba?

Nge 'don haa waalde. Nge 'don haa maare.

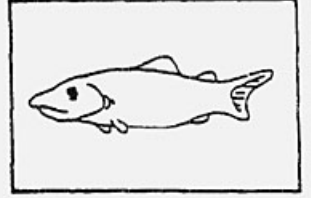
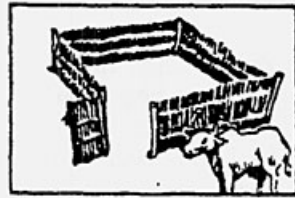
Toy saare Buuba?

Nde 'don haa Pariya.

Toy Usumaanu?  
 Usumaanu 'don haa kanti. Usumaanu 'don haa nder kanti.

Too, use, sey yeeso.

Ngewta



## LESSON 9

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 9, the student will be able to:

-identify and correctly use 21 new vocabulary items

-use the greeting sequence:       Salaamu aleykum  
  Aleyka salaamu

-give three examples of ngol class nouns

-use the Continuous to describe an ongoing action

-ask and answer:               \_\_\_\_\_ 'don wa'da 'dume?  
  \_\_\_\_\_ 'don defa 'dume?, etc.

-use pronouns as direct objects in sentences using the Continuous.



### Dialogue

John: Salaamu aleykum.

*Peace be with you.*

Sutura: Aleyka salaamu.

*Peace be with you, too.*

J: Toy Zeynabu?

*Where's Zainabu?*

S: Ndaa Zeynabu ton. Zeynabu  
'don defa nyamdu.

*There's Zainabu over there. Zainabu  
is preparing food.*

J: Too. Toy Buuba?

*I see. Where's Buba?*

S: Buuba 'don haa nder suudu.  
Buuba 'don janga deftere.

*Buba is in the house. Buba  
is reading a book.*

J: Toy Usumaanu kadi?

*And where's Usmanu?*

S: Usumaanu 'don haa yonnde  
ton. Usumaanu 'don fija.

*Usmanu is at the entrance to the  
compound over there. Usmanu is  
playing.*

J: Too, boo'd'dum. Use, Sutura.

*Okay, fine. Thanks, Sutura.*



## Vocabulary

salaamu aleykum: *peace be with you*  
aleyka salaamu: *peace be with you, too*  
defugo: *to cook, to prepare food*  
('don defa: *is cooking, is preparing food*)  
jangugo: *to read* ('don janga: *is reading*)  
fijugo: *to play* ('don fija: *is playing*)  
yonnde (nde): *entrance to the compound*  
Sutura: *Sutura (woman's name)*

## Verbs

Verbs are extremely important in Fulfulde. While you have used forms such as 'don, woodi and walaa which are verblike in meaning, they are fixed forms and do not inflect or behave like Fulfulde verbs.

We will present verbs in the vocabulary sections in the Infinitive form. Some English Infinitive forms are: "to cook," "to read," "to play." In Adamawa Fulfulde, the infinitive consists of the root, which contains the basic meaning, but is never used alone, plus the ending -ugo. So, we have: defugo, jangugo, fijugo and so forth as Fulfulde Infinitives.

Different forms of a verb also consist of a root (def\_\_, jang\_\_, fij\_\_, etc.) plus an ending. These endings which may have more than one part to them are called affixes. Times and qualities of action are expressed by affixes to the verb root. When an affix occurs at the end of a word it is also called a suffix. You will learn several Fulfulde verb forms as the text progresses.

## Additional Vocabulary

### Exercise I

1.



soodugo: *to buy*

2.



nyaamugo: *to eat*

3.



windugo: *to write*

4.



ma'b'bugo: to close, to cover

5.



ma'b'bitugo: to open, to uncover

6.



wa'dugo: to do, to make, to cause

7.



mottugo: to spin

8.



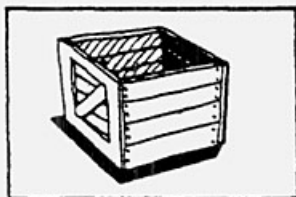
Alkur'aana (nde): the Koran

9.



pataakewol (ngol): letter

10.



akootiru (ndu): box

11.



fijirde (nde): game

12.



nayeejo: *old man*

13.



ndottiijo: *respectable man over 35*

14.



Yaakubu: *Yakubu (man's name)*

With this lesson we are introducing the ngol class. Other ngol class nouns you have already learned are:

'dereewol (ngol)  
ngapaleewol (ngol)

### 'Don Before a Verb With the -a Ending — The Continuous

In the last two lessons you have met 'don meaning *is at*

Buuba 'don 'do.  
Zeynabu 'don ton.  
Mbewa 'don haa ngesa.  
Ndiyam 'don haa nder maayo. etc.

Now we introduce 'don used before the verb with the -a verb suffix.

If we add -a to a verb root and put 'don before the verb, we have the form with which Fulfulde describes an action actually going on at the time referred to by the speaker. This is called the Continuous.

Here are some simple sentences using the Continuous.

Exercise 2

Zeynabu 'don defa.  
Saalihu 'don nyaama.  
Buuba 'don janga.  
Abdullaahi 'don winda.  
Usumaanu 'don fija.  
Sutura 'don motta.  
Yaakubu 'don ma'b'ba.  
Aa'i 'don ma'b'bita

The Continuous of wa'dugo plus 'dume forms a useful question.

Gorko 'don wa'da 'dume? *The man is doing what?*

Using the pictures to guide you, answer the following questions:

Exercise 3



Debbo 'don wa'da 'dume? Debbo 'don defa.



Gorko 'don wa'da 'dume? Gorko 'don nyaama.



Nayeejo 'don wa'da 'dume? Nayeejo 'don janga.



Ndottiijo 'don wa'da 'dume? Ndottiijo 'don winda.

5.



'Bingel 'don wa'da  
'dume?

'Bingel 'don fija.

6.



Debbo 'don wa'da  
'dume?

Debbo 'don motta.

When the verb has a direct object, that object immediately follows the verb, as in the following sentences:

Exercise 4

Zeynabu 'don defa nyamdu.  
Saalihi 'don nyaama nyiiri.  
Buuba 'don janga deftere.  
Abdullaahi 'don winda pataakewol.  
Usumaanu 'don fija fijirde.  
Sutura 'don motta hottollo.  
Yaakubu 'don ma'b'ba dammugal.  
Aa'i 'don ma'b'bita akootiru.  
Zeynabu 'don sooda ngapaleewol.

Again, using the pictures, answer these questions:

Exercise 5

1.



Zeynabu 'don defa  
'dume?

Zeynabu 'don defa  
nyamdu.

2.



Saalihi 'don nyaama  
'dume?

Saalihi 'don nyaama  
nyiiri.

3.



Buuba 'don janga  
'dume?

Buuba 'don janga  
deftere.

4.



Abdullaahi 'don  
janga 'dume?

Abdullaahi 'don janga  
Alkur'aana.

5.



Abdullaahi 'don  
winda 'dume?

Abdullaahi 'don winda  
pataakewol.

6.



Yaakubu 'don  
ma'b'ba 'dume?

Yaakubu 'don ma'b'ba  
dammugal.

7.



Aa'i 'don ma'b'bita  
'dume?

Aa'i 'don ma'b'bita  
akootiru

8.



Zeynabu 'don sooda  
'dume?

Zeynabu 'don sooda  
ngapaleewol.

Now let's use pronouns in some of these sentences. First, here's a refresher for the most recent additions.

### Exercise 6

pataakewol ngol  
ngapaleewol ngol  
'dereewol ngol  
akootiru ndu  
koloba ndu  
fijirde nde  
Alkur'aana nde  
kanti nga  
mbeewa nga

Substitute the appropriate pronoun for the direct object.

### Exercise 7

Sutura 'don ma'b'ba koloba.  
Abdullaahi 'don winda pataakewol.  
Zeynabu 'don sooda ngapaleewol.  
Usumaanu 'don sooda 'dereewol.  
Aa'i 'don ma'b'ba dammugal.  
Yaakubu 'don ma'b'bita dammugal.  
Buuba 'don nyaama nyamdu.  
Abdullaahi 'don sooda nagge.  
Abdullaahi 'don janga Alkur'aana.  
Buuba 'don sooda mbeewa.

Sutura 'don ma'b'ba ndu.  
Abdullahi 'don winda ngol.  
Zeynabu 'don sooda ngol.  
Usumaanu 'don sooda ngol.  
Aa'i 'don ma'b'ba ngal.  
Yaakubu 'don ma'b'bita ngal.  
Buuba 'don nyaama ndu.  
Abdullaahi 'don sooda nge.  
Abdullaahi 'don janga nde.  
Buuba 'don sooda nga.

Answer the question using the appropriate pronoun for the cued direct object.

### Exercise 8

Buuba 'don sooda 'dume? (mbeewa)  
Abdullaahi 'don winda 'dume? (pataakewol)  
Zeynabu 'don sooda 'dume? (ngapaleewol)  
Usumaanu 'don sooda 'dume? ('dereewol)  
Aa'i 'don ma'b'ba 'dume? (akootiru)  
Yaakubu 'don ma'b'bita 'dume? (dammugal)  
Buuba 'don nyaama 'dume? (nyamdu)  
Abdullaahi 'don sooda 'dume? (nagge)  
Abdullaahi 'don janga 'dume? (Alkur'aana)  
Sutura 'don ma'b'bita 'dume? (koloba)

Buuba 'don sooda nga.  
Abdullaahi 'don winda ngol.  
Zeynabu 'don sooda ngol.  
Usumaanu 'don sooda ngol.  
Aa'i 'don ma'b'ba ndu.  
Yaakubu 'don ma'b'bita ngal.  
Buuba 'don nyaama ndu.  
Abdullaahi 'don sooda nge.  
Abdullaahi 'don janga nde.  
Sutura 'don ma'b'bita ndu.

Substitution drills

Exercise 9

Sutura  
nyiiri  
debbo  
nyamdu  
'don nyaama  
Saalihi  
nyiiri  
'don janga deftere  
Buuba  
Alkur'aana  
Usumaanu  
Abdullaahi  
pataakewol  
'don winda  
deftere  
gorko  
ndottiijo  
'don nyaama nyiiri  
Zeynabu  
'don defa  
nyamdu

Zeynabu 'don defa nyamdu.  
Sutura 'don defa nyamdu.  
Sutura 'don defa nyiiri.  
Debbo 'don defa nyiiri.  
Debbo 'don defa nyamdu.  
Debbo 'don nyaama nyamdu.  
Saalihi 'don nyaama nyamdu.  
Saalihi 'don nyaama nyiiri.  
Saalihi 'don janga deftere.  
Buuba 'don janga deftere.  
Buuba 'don janga Alkur'aana.  
Usumaanu 'don janga Alkur'aana.  
Abdullaahi 'don janga Alkur'aana.  
Abdullaahi 'don janga pataakewol.  
Abdullaahi 'don winda pataakewol.  
Abdullaahi 'don winda deftere.  
Gorko 'don winda deftere.  
Ndottiijo 'don winda deftere.  
Ndottiijo 'don nyaama nyiiri.  
Zeynabu 'don nyaama nyiiri.  
Zeynabu 'don defa nyiiri.  
Zeynabu 'don defa nyamdu.

Exercise 10

Buuba  
Yaakubu  
'don ma'b'ba dammugal  
Usumaanu  
fayande  
Sutura  
'don ma'b'bita  
akootiru  
Zeynabu  
'don motta hottollo  
Sutura  
Aa'i

Usumaanu 'don fija fijirde.  
Buuba 'don fija fijirde.  
Yaakubu 'don fija fijirde.  
Yaakubu 'don ma'b'ba dammugal.  
Usumaanu 'don ma'b'ba dammugal.  
Usumaanu 'don ma'b'ba fayande.  
Sutura 'don ma'b'ba fayande.  
Sutura 'don ma'b'bita fayande.  
Sutura 'don ma'b'bita akootiru.  
Zeynabu 'don ma'b'bita akootiru.  
Zeynabu 'don motta hottollo.  
Sutura 'don motta hottollo.  
Aa'i 'don motta hottollo.



## Jangde timmunde

Sannu.

Sannu.

Salaamu aleykum.

Aleyka salaamu.

A waali jam?

Jam.

Toy Buuba bee Zeynabu bee Usumaanu hande?

Buuba bee Zeynabu 'don 'do hande haa saare. Buuba 'don janga deftere haa nder suudu. Zeynabu 'don defa nyiiri. Usumaanu 'don haa yonnde. Usumaanu 'don fija. Too, boo'd'dum.

Use.

Useko.

Salaamu aleykum.

Aleyka salaamu.

A nyalli jam?

Jam.

Toy Sutura?

Ndaa Sutura 'do.

Sutura 'don wa'da 'dume?

Sutura 'don motta hande.

Too. Sutura 'don motta 'dume hande?

Sutura 'don motta hottollo.

Too. Boo'd'dum. Use.

Salaamu aleykum.

Aleyka salaamu.

Ja'b'baama poy.

Mi ja'bi.

Toy Buuba hande?

Buuba 'don 'do hande haa nder suudu.

Buuba 'don wa'da 'dume?

Buuba 'don janga.

Buuba 'don janga 'dume?

Buuba 'don janga Alkur'aana.

Too. Buuba 'don janga nde.

Toy Zeynabu hande?

Zeynabu 'don ton hande haa saare.

Zeynabu 'don wa'da 'dume?

Zeynabu 'don defa hande.

Zeynabu 'don defa 'dume hande?

Zeynabu 'don defa nyamdu hande.

Too. Zeynabu 'don defa ndu.

Toy Usumaanu hande kadi?

Usumaanu 'don 'do hande.

Usumaanu 'don wa'da 'dume?

Usumaanu 'don fija fijirde.

Too. Usumaanu 'don fija.

Saalihi 'don nyaama 'dume?  
Saalihi 'don nyaama nyiiri.

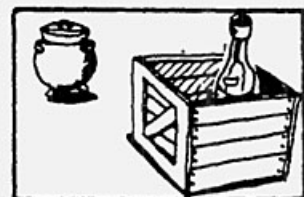
Abdullaahi 'don wa'da 'dume hande?  
Abdullaahi 'don winda pataakewol hande.  
Abdullaahi 'don winda ngol.

Yaakubu 'don wa'da 'dume?  
Yaakubu 'don ma'b'ba akootiru.  
Yaakubu 'don ma'b'ba ndu.

Aa'i 'don wa'da 'dume?  
Aa'i 'don ma'b'bita dammugal.  
Aa'i 'don ma'b'bita ngal.

Ndaa fayande Zeynabu. Nyamdu 'don haa nder maare.  
Ndaa wawru kadi. Ndiyam walaa haa nder maaru kam.  
Ndiyam 'don haa maayo ton.  
Too. Bo'd'dum. Useko.

### Ngewta



## LESSON 10

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 10, the student will be able to:

-identify and correctly use 23 new vocabulary items

-use the greeting sequence:    A hirti jam?  
  Jam.

-give three examples of ndi class nouns

-use the Continuous in the sense of "does regularly"

-use the Continuous in the sense of "an action taking place at the time of speaking:"

\_\_\_\_\_ jooni  
\_\_\_\_\_ jonta



### Dialogue

John: A hirti jam?

*Good evening.*

Zeynabu: Jam.

*Good evening.*

J: Buuba 'don janga hande kiiki'de naa?

*Is Buba reading this evening?*

Z: Aa'a, Buuba 'don siwta jooni.

*No, Buba is resting right now.*

J: Asee. Woodi comri naa?

*Really, is there tiredness then?*

Z: Ooho, woodi comri hande. Buuba 'don yaha luumo nyande Alat.

*Yes, there is today. Sundays Buba goes to the market.*

J: Too. Boo'd'dum, use, Zeynabu.

*I see. Well then thanks, Zainabu.*

### Vocabulary

a hirti jam: *are you spending the evening well?*

kiikiide, kiikii'deere (nde): *evening*

siwtugo: *to rest*

jooni, jonta: *now*

asee: *really (an adverb expressing mild surprise)*

comri (ndi): *tiredness*

yahugo: *to go*

nyande (nde): *day*

Alat: *Sunday*

With this lesson we are introducing the ndi noun class. Other ndi class nouns are: gawri (ndi) and nyiiri (ndi).

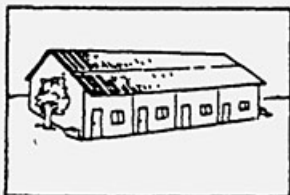
Here are the days of the week in order from Sunday:

Exercise 1

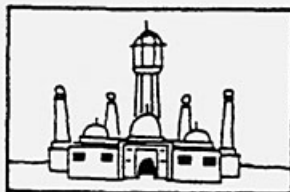
Alat  
Altine  
Salaasa  
Alarba  
Alhamiisa  
Jum'baare  
Asawe

Additional vocabulary

Exercise 2



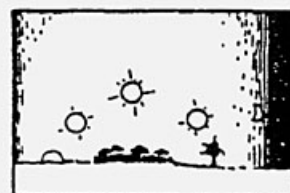
jangirde (nde): school



juulirde (nde): mosque



ladde (nde): uncultivated and usually unpopulated area, "the bush"



fajiri (ndi): morning  
baalte (nde): from 8 to 10 in the morning  
caka naange (nge): noon ("mid-sun")  
jemma, jemmaare (nde): night  
ndey?: when

In the last lesson, we saw some examples of the Continuous used to describe an ongoing action. The Continuous can also be used to mean "does regularly." Here are some examples:

Buuba 'don yaha luumo.  
Zeynabu 'don motta.

*Buba goes regularly to the market.  
Zainabu regularly spins.*

Practice these sentences understanding the Continuous in the sense of "does regularly."

### Exercise 3

Zeynabu 'don defa.  
Buuba 'don siwta.  
Usumaanu 'don yaha jangirde.  
Sutura 'don yaha luumo.  
Abdullaahi 'don yaha juulirde.  
Saalihi 'don yaha ladde.

One way to more precisely convey the sense of "does regularly" is to add a day of the week to the regularly performed action. To do this, use the word *nyande* plus the name of the day. Here are some questions and their positive answers:

Buuba 'don yaha luumo  
nyande Alat naa?

Ooho, Buuba 'don yaha  
luumo nyande Alat.

*Does Buba go to the  
market Sundays?*

*Yes, Buba goes to the  
market Sundays.*

### Exercise 4

Zeynabu 'don defa nyande Altine naa?  
Buuba 'don siwta nyande Salaasa naa?  
Usumaanu 'don yaha jangirde nyande  
Alarba naa?  
Sutura 'don yaha luumo nyande  
Alhamiisa naa?  
Abdullaahi 'don janga Alkur'aana  
nyande Jum'baare naa?  
Saalihi 'don yaha ladde nyande  
Asawe naa?  
Abdullaahi 'don janga nyande Alat naa?

Ooho, Zeynabu 'don defa nyande Altine.  
Ooho, Buuba 'don siwta nyande Salaasa.  
Ooho, Usumaanu 'don yaha jangirde  
nyande Alarba.  
Ooho, Sutura 'don yaha luumo  
nyande Alhamiisa.  
Ooho, Abdullaahi 'don janga  
Alkur'aana nyande Jum'baare.  
Ooho, Saalihi 'don yaha ladde  
nyande Asawe.  
Ooho, Abdullaahi 'don janga nyande  
Alat.

Another way to be precise is to specify noon, evening or night. Here are more questions and answers:

### Exercise 5

Zeynabu 'don defa fajiri naa?  
Zeynabu 'don yaha luumo baalte naa?  
Zeynabu 'don siwta caka naange naa?  
Usumaanu 'don fija kiiki'de naa?  
Abdullaahi 'don janga jemma naa?

Ooho, Zeynabu 'don defa fajiri.  
Ooho, Zeynabu 'don yaha luumo baalte.  
Ooho, Zeynabu 'don siwta caka naange.  
Ooho, Usumaanu 'don fija kiiki'de.  
Ooho, Abdullaahi 'don janga jemma.

And still another way is to specify the day of the week as well as the time.

Zeynabu 'don defa nyande  
Altine fajiri naa?

*Does Zainabu cook early  
Monday mornings?*

### Exercise 6

Zeynabu 'don defa nyande Altine  
fajiri naa?  
Usumaanu 'don yaha jangirde nyande  
Salaasa baalte naa?  
Aa'i 'don siwta nyande Alarba caka  
naange naa?  
Buuba 'don janga nyande  
Alhamiisa naa?  
Abdullaahi 'don yaha juulirde nyande  
Jum'baare kiiki'de naa?

Ooho, Zeynabu 'don defa nyande  
Altine fajiri.  
Ooho, Usumaanu 'don yaha jangirde  
nyande Salaasa baalte.  
Ooho, Aa'i 'don siwta nyande Alarba  
caka naange.  
Ooho, Buuba 'don janga nyande  
Alhamiisa.  
Ooho, Abdullaahi 'don yaha juulirde  
nyande Jum'baare kiiki'de.

The word *nyande* may be omitted:

Zeynabu 'don defa Asawe.  
Sutura 'don yaha luumo Altine.

*Zainabu is cooking on Saturday.  
Sutura is going to the market  
on Monday.*

Here are some questions and their positive answers:

### Exercise 7

Buuba 'don siwta Asawe naa?  
Usumaanu 'don yaha jangirde Salaasa  
naa?  
Saalihi 'don yaha juulirde  
Jum'baare naa?  
Abdullaahi 'don yaha kanti Alarba  
naa?

Ooho, Buuba 'don siwta Asawe.  
Ooho, Usumaanu 'don yaha jangirde  
Salaasa.  
Ooho, Saalihi 'don yaha juulirde  
Jum'baare.  
Ooho, Abdullaahi 'don yaha kanti  
Alarba.

If you want to make it quite clear that the action is going on at the moment of speaking you can add *jooni* or *jonta*. The words are interchangeable. Again, the listener's understanding of whether or not the action is a regularly performed one depends largely on the context. Here are some questions and their positive answers.

### Exercise 8

Zeynabu 'don defa jooni naa?  
Buuba 'don siwta jooni naa?  
Usumaanu 'don yaha jangirde  
jooni naa?  
Sutura 'don yaha luumo jonta naa?  
Abdullaahi 'don yaha juulirde  
jonta naa?  
Saalihi 'don yaha ladde jonta naa?

Ooho, Zeynabu 'don defa jooni.  
Ooho, Buuba 'don siwta jooni.  
Ooho, Usumaanu 'don yaha  
jangirde jooni.  
Ooho, Sutura 'don yaha luumo jonta.  
Ooho, Abdullaahi 'don yaha  
juulirde jonta.  
Ooho, Saalihi 'don yaha ladde jonta.

## Substitution drills

### Exercise 9

nyande Alat  
Buuba  
'don yaha luumo  
nyande Altine  
Zeynabu  
'don defa  
nyande Salaasa  
Sutura  
'don siwta nyande Alarba  
Abdullaahi  
nyande Alhamiisa  
Saalihi  
nyande Jum'baare  
'don yaha juulirde  
Usumaanu  
jangirde  
ladde  
nyande Asawe  
Saalihi  
jonta  
jooi

Saalihi 'don yaha ladde jooi.  
Saalihi 'don yaha ladde nyande Alat.  
Buuba 'don yaha ladde nyande Alat.  
Buuba 'don yaha luumo nyande Alat.  
Buuba 'don yaha luumo nyande Altine.  
Zeynabu 'don yaha luumo nyande Altine.  
Zeynabu 'don defa nyande Altine.  
Zeynabu 'don defa nyande Salaasa.  
Sutura 'don defa nyande Salaasa.  
Sutura 'don siwta nyande Alarba.  
Abdullaahi 'don siwta nyande Alarba.  
Abdullaahi 'don siwta nyande Alhamiisa.  
Saalihi 'don siwta nyande Alhamiisa.  
Saalihi 'don siwta nyande Jum'baare.  
Saalihi 'don yaha juulirde nyande Jum'baare.  
Usumaanu 'don yaha juulirde nyande Jum'baare.  
Usumaanu 'don yaha jangirde nyande Jum'baare.  
Usumaanu 'don yaha ladde nyande Jum'baare.  
Usumaanu 'don yaha ladde nyande Asawe.  
Saalihi 'don yaha ladde nyande Asawe.  
Saalihi 'don yaha ladde jonta.  
Saalihi 'don yaha ladde jooi.

### Exercise 10

jonta  
Usumaanu  
'don winda  
Saalihi  
jemma  
'don yaha  
Buuba  
fajiri  
Zeynabu  
'don defa  
baalte  
Sutura  
caka naange  
'don siwta  
Abdullaahi  
kiiki'de  
Aa'i  
'don motta  
baalte  
Zeynabu  
'don janga  
jonta  
Abdullaahi  
jooi

Abdullaahi 'don janga jooi.  
Abdullaahi 'don janga jonta.  
Usumaanu 'don janga jonta.  
Usumaanu 'don winda jonta.  
Saalihi 'don winda jonta.  
Saalihi 'don winda jemma.  
Saalihi 'don yaha jemma.  
Buuba 'don yaha jemma.  
Buuba 'don yaha fajiri.  
Zeynabu 'don yaha fajiri.  
Zeynabu 'don defa fajiri.  
Zeynabu 'don defa baalte.  
Sutura 'don defa baalte.  
Sutura 'don defa caka naange.  
Sutura 'don siwta caka naange.  
Abdullaahi 'don siwta caka naange.  
Abdullaahi 'don siwta kiiki'de.  
Aa'i 'don siwta kiiki'de.  
Aa'i 'don motta kiiki'de.  
Aa'i 'don motta baalte.  
Zeynabu 'don motta baalte.  
Zeynabu 'don janga baalte.  
Zeynabu 'don janga jonta.  
Abdullaahi 'don janga jonta.  
Abdullaahi 'don janga jooi.



## Exercise 11

Sutura	Zeynabu 'don defa Alarba.
Alhamiisa	Sutura 'don defa Alarba.
'don siwta	Sutura 'don defa Alhamiisa.
Aa'i	Sutura 'don siwta Alhamiisa.
Asawe	Aa'i 'don siwta Asawe.
'don janga	Aa'i 'don janga Asawe.
Buuba	Buuba 'don janga Asawe.
Jum'baare.	Buuba 'don janga Jum'baare.
Usumaanu	Usumaanu 'don janga Jum'baare.
'don yaha luumo	Usumaanu 'don yaha luumo Jum'baare.
Alat	Usumaanu 'don yaha luumo Alat.
Saalihi	Saalihi 'don yaha luumo Alat.
Altine	Saalihi 'don yaha luumo Altine.
Zeynabu	Zeynabu 'don yaha luumo Altine.
Salaasa	Zeynabu 'don yaha luumo Salaasa.
'don defa	Zeynabu 'don defa Salaasa.
Alarba	Zeynabu 'don defa Alarba.

Here is a refresher for the most recently introduced noun classes:

## Exercise 12

comri (ndi)  
gawri (ndi)  
nyiiri (ndi)  
luumo (ngo)  
leeso (ngo)  
daago (ngo)  
maayo (ngo)

In the following exercise, the ndi and ngo class nouns are replaced by the appropriate pronoun.

## Exercise 13

Aa'i 'don sooda daago jonta.	Aa'i 'don sooda ngo jonta.
Abdullaahi 'don sooda gawri jooni.	Abdullaahi 'don sooda ndi jooni.
Zeynabu 'don sooda leeso jonta.	Zeynabu 'don sooda ngo jonta.
Buuba 'don nyaama nyiiri caka naange.	Buuba 'don nyaama ndi caka naange.
Yaakubu 'don yaha luumo nyande Asawe.	Yaakubu 'don yaha ngo nyande Asawe.

## Jangde timmunde

Use.  
Useko.  
Ja'b'baama.  
Mi ja'bi.  
Salaamu aleykum.  
Aleyka salaamu.  
A hirti jam?  
Jam.  
Ndaa ko'do Buuba.  
Noy innde ko'do man?  
'Dum Muusa.  
Muusa 'dum Pullo Adamaawa naa?  
Naa 'dum Pullo. Muusa 'dum Hawsaajo.  
Too, boo'd'dum. Use Muusa.  
Useko.

Toy saare Buuba?  
Saare Buuba 'don haa Pariya.  
Too. Toy saare laamii'do kadi?  
Saare laamii'do 'don haa 'Yoola.  
Too. Useko.

Toy suudu Zeynabu?  
Ndaa suudu Zeynabu 'do.  
Woodi tummude naa?  
Ooho, woodi. Ndaa tummude.  
Woodi hottollo naa?  
Ooho, woodi. Zeynabu 'don motta hottollo jooni.

Too. Woodi ha'b'bere gawri naa kadi?  
Aa'a, walaa kam.

'Dume 'do?  
'Dum mbeewa Saalihi on.  
Too. 'Dume ton?  
'Dum nagge Buuba on.

Toy jawmu saare?  
Jawmu saare 'don yaha saare laamii'do jonta.

Toy daada saare?  
Daada saare 'don 'do. Daada saare 'don defa nyiiri.  
Daada saare 'don defa kiiki'de.

'Bingel Buuba 'don yaha jangirde fajiri on.

Ndottiijo 'don yaha juulirde nyande Jum'baare kiiki'de.

Debbo 'don motta kiiki'de on.

Gorko 'don yaha kanti jemma.

Buuba 'don yaha luumo nyande Alarba fajiri on.

Debbo Saalihi 'don sooda gawri Alat on.

Debbo Buuba 'don defa nyiiri Altine on.

'Bingel Zeynabu 'don fija fijirde Salaasa on.

Nayeejo 'don nyaama nyiiri Alarba on.

Mallumjo 'don winda pataakewol Alhamiisa on.

Gorko 'don yaha juulirde Jum'baare on.

Debbo 'don una Asawe on.

Gi'daa'do on 'don yaha waalde nyande Alat.

Nyande Alat Gi'daa'do 'don haa maare.

Pukaraajo on 'don yaha jangirde nyande Altine.

Jawmu saare on 'don huuwa nyande Salaasa.

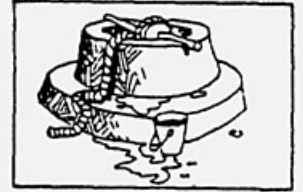
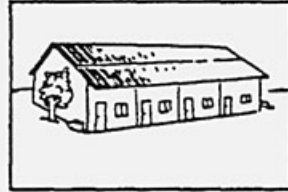
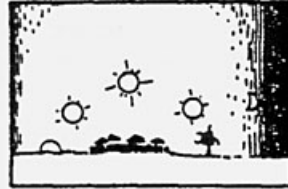
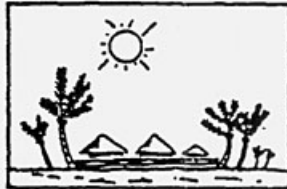
'Bii Saalihi on 'don yaha jangirde nyande Alarba.

Daada saare on 'don siwta nyande Alhamiisa.

Ndottiijo on 'don janga Alkur'aana nyande Jum'baare.

Nayeejo on 'don yaha saare laamii'do nyande Asawe.

## Ngewta



## LESSON 11

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 11, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 7 new vocabulary items
- give five examples of o class nouns
- recognize that o is the noun class marker for singular human nouns and use it as the pronoun
- use the negative of the Continuous: —ataa form
- use the Relative Future —ata form of the verb to ask questions which begin with an interrogative word.



### Dialogue

John: Salaamu aleykum

Bello: Aleyka salaamu. Use, John.

J: Use, Bello. Buuba 'don  
huuwa hande naa?

*Greetings Bello. Is Buba  
working today?*

B: Aa'a, o huuwataa hande.  
O 'don siwta.

*No, he's not working today.  
He's resting.*

J: Zeynabu 'don defa nyamdu naa?

*Is Zainabu cooking?*

B: Aa'a, o defataa sey fajiri.  
O 'don una jooni.

*No, she doesn't cook except in  
the morning. She's pounding now.*

J: Too, Usumaanu boo 'don 'do naa?

*I see. How about Usmanu, (is he)  
here?*

B: Aa'a, o walaa 'do hande kam.

*No, he's not here today either.*

J: 'Dume o wa'data?

*What's he doing?*

B: Usumaanu 'don yaha jangirde.

*Usmanu goes to school.*

J: Too, useko. Siwtu jam.

*Well, thank you. Goodbye.*

## Vocabulary

o: *he, she*

boo\*: (never first word) *as for, indeed, etc.*

sey: *except* (after a negative clause)

unugo: *to pound* (in mortar)

huuwugo: *to work*

siwtu jam: *rest well* (goodbye said by one departing)

\*Boo has a number of uses. Here its function is to give extra emphasis to the word preceding it, and to add a little stylistic variety since Usmanu is the third in a string of subjects of similar sentences: John has asked about Buba, and Zainabu and is now asking about Usmanu. "Well, what about Usmanu then...?"

## O Class Nouns

Nouns referring to people are called human nouns.

Singular human nouns belong to the o class and the appropriate third person pronoun for these nouns is o which means *he* or *she*.

You will find that you are already in command of an impressive list of o class nouns:

mallumjo  
modibbo  
pukaraajo  
gorko  
debbo  
'bingel \*  
'bii X \*  
daada  
baaba  
maw'do  
ko'do  
jawmu (always followed by another noun)  
jawmu saare  
daada saare  
laamii'do  
nayeejo  
ndottiijo

\* 'Bingel and 'bii X are not strictly o class nouns, but since the nouns refer to human beings, o is often used in referring to them.

Singular proper names which refer to people also belong to the o class — for instance, Buuba, Zeynabu, Usumaanu, Sutura, Saalihi, Abdullaahi, etc., also Pullo, Hawsaajo, etc.

### Exercise 1

Hawsaajo 'don nyaama nyiiri.	O 'don nyaama nyiiri.
Gorko 'don nyaama luumo.	O 'don nyaama luumo.
Daada Usmaan' 'don defa nyamdu.	O 'don defa nyamdu.
Jawmu saare 'don sooda nagge.	O 'don sooda nagge.
Sutura 'don una gawri.	O 'don una gawri.
Abdullaahi 'don siwta caka naange.	O 'don siwta caka naange.
'Bii Saalihi 'don huuwa haa ngesa.	O 'don huuwa haa ngesa.

### The Negative of the Continuous: -ataa

To negate the Continuous, drop 'don and change the -a to -ataa. Note particularly that there is stress on the -at- and that, as with the nonverbal negative naa, already learned, the long aa is important and musn't be shortened.

### Exercise 2

O 'don nyaama.	O nyaamataa.
O 'don ma'b'ba.	O ma'b'bataa.
O 'don siwta.	O siwtataa.
O 'don yaha.	O yahataa.
O 'don huuwa.	O huuwataa.
O 'don una.	O unataa.

Here are some questions and their negative answers. The answers use the pronoun o to replace the noun.

### Exercise 3

Mallumjo 'don janga naa?	Aa'a, o jangataa.
Pukaraajo 'don winda naa?	Aa'a, o windataa.
Debbo 'don una naa?	Aa'a, o unataa.
Debbo 'don defa naa?	Aa'a, o defataa.
Debbo 'don motta naa?	Aa'a, o mottataa.
'Bingel 'don fija naa?	Aa'a, o fijataa.

### Exercise 4

1.



Gorko 'don janga naa?      Ooho, o 'don janga.

2.



Gorko 'don janga naa?

Aa'a, o jangataa.

3.



'Bingel 'don una naa?

Ooho, o 'don una.

4.



'Bingel 'don una naa?

Aa'a, o unataa.

5.



'Bingel 'don winda naa?

Ooho, o 'don winda.

6.



'Bingel 'don winda naa?

Aa'a, o windataa.

7.



Debbo 'don motta naa?

Ooho, o 'don motta.

8.



Debbo 'don motta naa?

Aa'a, o mottataa.



## Substitution drill

### Exercise 5

Saalihi	Gi'daa'do 'don siwta nyande Jum'baare.
siwtataa	Saalihi 'don siwta nyande Jum'baare.
huuwataa	Saalihi siwtataa nyande Jum'baare.
Uumaanu	Saalihi huuwataa nyande Jum'baare.
yahataa jangirde	Uumaanu huuwataa nyande Jum'baare.
nyande Alat	Uumaanu yahataa jangirde nyande Jum'baare.
nyande Jum'baare	Uumaanu yahataa jangirde nyande Alat.
luumo	Uumaanu yahataa jangirde nyande Jum'baare.
Muusa	Uumaanu yahataa luumo nyande Jum'baare.
Gi'daa'do	Muusa yahataa luumo nyande Jum'baare.
'don nyaama luumo*	Gi'daa'do yahataa luumo nyande Jum'baare.
nyaamataa luumo	Gi'daa'do 'don nyaama luumo nyande Jum'baare.
nyande Alhamiisa	Gi'daa'do nyaamataa luumo nyande Jum'baare.
Zeynabu	Gi'daa'do nyaamataa luumo nyande Alhamiisa.
nyande Jum'baare	Zeynabu nyaamataa luumo nyande Alhamiisa.
siwtataa	Zeynabu nyaamataa luumo nyande Jum'baare.
Gi'daa'do	Zeynabu siwtataa nyande Jum'baare.
'don siwta	Gi'daa'do siwtataa nyande Jum'baare.
	Gi'daa'do 'don siwta nyande Jum'baare.

### \*Exercise 6 Another Vocabulary Item: nyaamugo luumo

Nyaamugo (which we have already learned as *eat*) when used with luumo means *the market is held, taking place, going on*. When the expression is used with proper names it means that the individual or individuals involved are taking part in a market, either buying, selling, trading or a combination thereof. So we have for example:

Luumo 'don nyaama nyande Asawe	<i>The market is held Saturdays.</i>
Luumo nyaamataa Altine.	<i>The market isn't held Mondays.</i>
Buuba 'don nyaama luumo jonta.	<i>Buba is taking part in the market now.</i>

Here are some positive and negative sentences.

### Exercise 7

Luumo 'don nyaama nyande Alat.	Luumo nyaamataa nyande Alat.
Luumo 'don nyaama nyande Asawe.	Luumo nyaamataa nyande Asawe.
Luumo 'don nyaama caka naange.	Luumo nyaamataa caka naange.
Luumo 'don nyaama kiiki'de.	Luumo nyaamataa kiiki'de.

### Exercise 8

Luumo 'don nyaama Altine.	Luumo nyaamataa Altine.
Luumo 'don nyaama Alhamiisa.	Luumo nyaamataa Alhamiisa.
Luumo 'don nyaama jooni.	Luumo nyaamataa jooni.
Luumo 'don nyaama jonta.	Luumo nyaamataa jonta.

### Exercise 9

Buuba 'don nyaama luumo fajiri.  
Zeynabu 'don nyaama luumo kiiki'de.  
Saalihi 'don nyaama luumo Salaasa.  
Abdullaahi 'don nyaama luumo  
Alhamiisa.

Buuba nyaamataa luumo fajiri.  
Zeynabu nyaamataa luumo kiiki'de.  
Saalihi nyaamataa luumo Salaasa.  
Abdullaahi nyaamataa luumo Alhamiisa.

### **Sey**

Sey, after a negative clause, means *except*. For example:

O siwtataa sey caka naange.

*He isn't resting except at noon.  
He doesn't rest except at noon.*

Luumo nyaamataa sey nyande Alarba.

*The market isn't held except  
Wednesdays.*

Buuba nyaamataa luumo sey kiiki'de.

*Buba doesn't take part in the market  
(i.e. buy or sell) except in the  
evenings.*

### Substitution drills

### Exercise 10

jemma  
fajiri  
kiiki'de  
nyande Alat  
nyande Jum'baare  
Buuba  
fajiri  
nyaamataa  
yahataa  
kiiki'de  
o  
siwtataa  
caka naange

O siwtataa sey caka naange.  
O siwtataa sey jemma.  
O siwtataa sey fajiri.  
O siwtataa sey kiiki'de.  
O siwtataa sey nyande Alat.  
O siwtataa sey nyande Jum'baare.  
Buuba siwtataa sey nyande Jum'baare.  
Buuba siwtataa sey fajiri.  
Buuba nyaamataa sey fajiri.  
Buuba yahataa sey fajiri.  
Buuba yahataa sey kiiki'de.  
O yahataa sey kiiki'de.  
O siwtataa sey kiiki'de.  
O siwtataa sey caka naange.

### Exercise 11

nyande Salaasa  
nyande Altine  
nyande Alhamiisa  
nyande Alarba  
nyande Asawe  
baalte  
caka naange  
nyande Jum'baare

Luumo nyaamataa sey nyande Jum'baare.  
Luumo nyaamataa sey nyande Salaasa.  
Luumo nyaamataa sey nyande Altine.  
Luumo nyaamataa sey nyande Alhamiisa.  
Luumo nyaamataa sey nyande Alarba.  
Luumo nyaamataa sey nyande Asawe.  
Luumo nyaamataa sey baalte.  
Luumo nyaamataa sey caka naange.  
Luumo nyaamataa sey nyande Jum'baare.

Questions which begin with an interrogative word: **-ata** form of the verb.

Now that you have just mastered the **-ataa** negative verb form, it is a good time to present the Relative Future **-ata** form of the verb which is used, among other things, to ask a certain type of question.

The **-ata** form of the verb is used in questions which begin with an interrogative word such as: *moy*, *noy*, *toy*, *'dume*, and *ndey*. For example:

Toy Buuba yahata?	<i>Where is Buba going?</i>
'Dume Usumaanu wa'data?	<i>What is Usmanu doing?</i>
Ndey Zeynabu defata?	<i>When is Zainabu cooking?</i> <i>When does Zainabu cook?</i> <i>When is she going to cook?</i>

Here are some phrases to practice the contrast between **-ataa** and **-ata**. Remember that the first **a** of **-ataa** is stressed and the **aa** is long.

### Exercise 12

Buuba yahataa.	Toy Buuba yahata?
Zeynabu defataa.	'Dume Zeynabu defata?
Abdullaahi jangataa.	'Dume Abdullaahi jangata?
'Bingel unataa.	Ndey 'bingel unata?
'Bingel fijataa.	Ndey 'bingel fijata?
Luumo nyaamataa.	Ndey luumo nyaamata?
O siwtataa.	Ndey o siwtata?

### Exercise 13

Toy Buuba yahata? (luumo)	Buuba 'don yaha luumo.
'Dume Buuba jangata? (Alkur'aana)	Buuba 'don janga Alkur'aana.
'Dume Zeynabu soodata? (tummude)	Zeynabu 'don sooda tummude.
'Dume Usumaanu nyaamata? (nyiiri)	Usumaanu 'don nyaama nyiiri.
Ndey Zeynabu defata? (fajiri)	Zeynabu 'don defa fajiri.
Ndey Buuba huuwata? (jooni)	Buuba 'don huuwa jooni.
Ndey 'bingel unata? (baalte)	'Bingel 'don una baalte.

Examples of the use of the **-ata** form with *noy* and *moy* will occur in later lessons.

## Jangde timmunde

Buuba 'don siwta kiiki'de.  
Zeynabu siwtataa, o 'don defa nyiiri.  
Usumaanu boo 'don fija haa nder saare. O 'don fija haa nder maare.  
Buuba bee Zeynabu bee Usumaanu 'don haa saare jooni.  
Zeynabu 'don siwta caka naange.  
Buuba siwtataa.  
O 'don haa ngesa.  
O 'don huuwa ton.  
Usumaanu boo huuwataa haa ngesa.  
O 'don haa jangirde.

Buuba huuwataa nyande Jum'baare, o 'don yaha juulirde.  
Zeynabu yahataa, o 'don haa saare.  
Usumaanu boo yahataa jangirde nyande Jum'baare.

Ndey Zeynabu siwtata?  
O 'don siwta nyande Salaasa.

Ndey Usumaanu yahata jangirde?  
O 'don yaha jangirde fajiri.

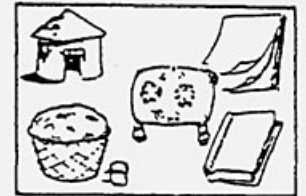
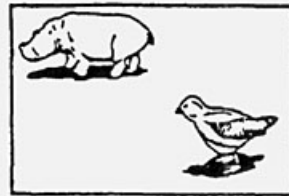
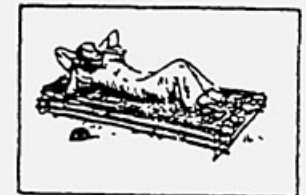
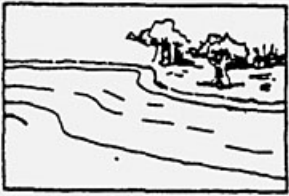
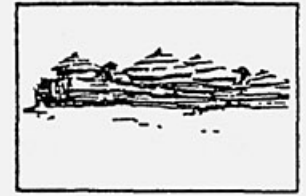
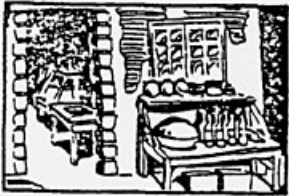
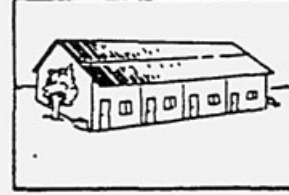
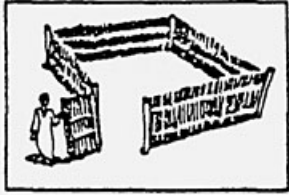
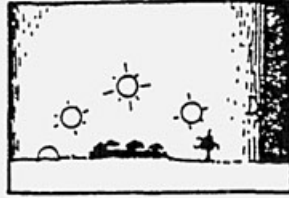
Ndey Buuba huuwata?  
Buuba 'don huuwa baalte.

Toy Abdullaahi yahata?  
Abdullaahi 'don yaha jangirde.

'Dume o wa'data?  
O 'don janga deftere.

'Dume Saalihi jangata?  
O 'don janga Alkur'aana.

Ngewta



## LESSON 12

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 12, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 21 new vocabulary items
- recognize 'be as the noun class marker for o class plural nouns and use it as the pronoun *they* for humans only
- use the Fulfulde subject pronouns:

mi  
a  
o  
min  
en  
on  
'be

- distinguish between the inclusive and exclusive we pronouns and use them appropriately
- use the remaining pronouns appropriately
- use fuh.



### Dialogue

Buuba: Salaamu aleykum.

*Greetings.*

John: Aleyka salaamu.

*Greetings.*

B: Ja'b'baama, John. A fini jam?

*Welcome, John. Good morning.*

J: Jam koo'dume. A 'don huuwa hande naa?

*All's well. Are you working today?*

B: Aa'a, mi huuwataa hande. Mi 'don siwta. Yim'be wuro fuh 'be 'don siwta hande.

*No, I'm not working today. I'm on holiday. All the people of the town are on holiday today.*

J: Amma min walaa siwtaare haa jangirde! Toy Zeynabu? O 'don haa saare koo?

*But we don't have a holiday at school! Where's Zainabu? Is she at home?*

B: Ooho, o 'don. Ndaa Zeynabu, o 'don una. En 'don wolwa, o 'don nana.

*Yes, she is. There's Zainabu, she is pounding. We're talking, she hears (us).*

J: On 'don yaha ngesa hande naa?

*Are you (pl.) going to the field today?*

B: Aa'a, tawon. Sey jango.

*No, not yet. Until tomorrow.*

## Vocabulary

- mi: I  
a: you (*singular*)  
o: he, she  
min: we, i.e. he and I, she and I, they and I  
en: we, i.e. you (*singular*) and I, you (*plural*) and I  
on: you (*plural*)  
'be: they (*referring to humans*)  
a fini jam?: have you awakened in health?  
koo'dume: anything, everything  
jam koo'dume: everything's fine (*a greeting response*)  
yim'be ('be): people or him'be ('be)  
siwtaare (nde): rest, holiday, vacation  
wuro (ngo): town  
fuh: all, both  
wolwugo: to speak, talk, converse  
amma: but  
koo: a question marker, similar in function to naa  
(Like naa, its pronunciation is often shortened to ko.)  
mi nani: I understand (*an often repeated formula*)  
jango: tomorrow  
tawon: still, (not) yet

## 'Be Class Nouns

Plural human nouns belong to the 'be class, and the appropriate third person pronoun for these nouns is 'be which means they (humans only).

Once you learn noun plurals, you will have at hand an important collection of 'be class nouns. For the moment you know the 'be class noun yim'be and you know that 'be may be used to replace the names of more than one person or a list of nouns representing more than one person. For example:

Buuba bee Saalihi 'don nyaama.  
'Be 'don nyaama.

Gorko bee debbo 'don nyaama luumo.  
'Be 'don nyaama luumo.

## Subject Pronouns

You have met four subject pronouns already in the course of these lessons:

mi - in mi nani, mi ja'bi

a - in numerous greetings: a fini jam?, a hirti jam, etc.

o - o class pronoun

'be - 'be class pronoun



The remaining subject pronouns are:

min

en

on

### Exercise 1

mi

a

o

min

en

on

'be

### **Min and En**

Fulfulde, like many West African languages, makes a distinction which English does not between inclusive and exclusive uses of *we*. If the person to whom you are speaking is excluded from the proposition in question, then use the exclusive pronoun *min*.

*Min* is appropriate in the following cases:

*We, but not you, are going to town.* = *Min 'don yaha haa wuro.*

*He and I are going to town.*

*She and I are going to town.*

*They and I are going to town.*

If, however, the person to whom you are speaking is included in the proposition, then use the inclusive pronoun *en*.

*En* is appropriate in these cases:

*We, including you, are going to town.* = *En 'don yaha haa wuro.*

*You (sing. or pl.) and I are going to town.*

*You (sing. or pl.) and I, and he/she/they are going to town.*

**Min, en, on**

In the following drill Buba is talking to Salihu. He will on occasion refer to Zainabu, Usmanu and townspeople in his conversation as well as to Salihu and to himself. These distinctions will be indicated by a circle in the picture/diagram accompanying the sentence. Here are three examples:



**Min 'don siwta hande.**



**En 'don siwta hande.**



**On 'don siwta hande.**

**Exercise 2**

1.



**Min 'don siwta hande.**

2.



**En 'don siwta hande.**



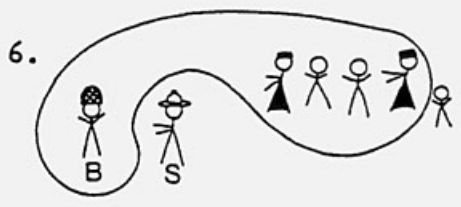
On 'don siwta hande.



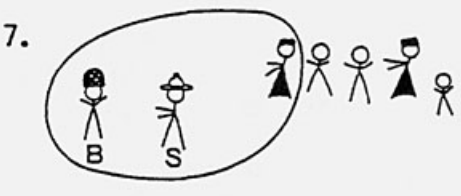
Min 'don siwta hande.



On 'don siwta hande.



Min 'don siwta hande.



En 'don siwta hande.



On 'don siwta hande.



En 'don siwta hande.

## 'Don

'Don may be used to answer a question concerning the whereabouts of a person. Here are some questions with their positive answers. Where nouns are used in the question, the appropriate pronoun is used in the answer:

### Exercise 3

Bello 'don haa saare naa?	Ooho, o 'don.
Bello bee Uumaanu 'don haa saare naa?	Ooho, 'be 'don.
Zeynabu 'don haa saare naa?	Ooho, o 'don.
Mi 'don haa saare naa?	Ooho, a 'don.
A 'don haa saare naa?	Ooho, mi 'don.
On 'don haa saare naa?	Ooho, min 'don.
En 'don haa 'Yoola naa?	Ooho, en 'don.
Min 'don haa saare naa?	Ooho, on 'don.

The negative response to questions such as these is \_\_\_\_\_ walaa 'don. Here are some similar questions and their negative answers:

### Exercise 4

Zeynabu 'don haa nder suudu naa?	Aa'a, o walaa 'don.
Buuba 'don haa waalde naa?	Aa'a, o walaa 'don.
Uumaanu bee Buuba 'don haa jangirde naa?	Aa'a, 'be walaa 'don.
On 'don haa juulirde naa?	Aa'a, min walaa 'don.
'Be 'don haa juulirde naa?	Aa'a, 'be walaa 'don.
En 'don haa luumo naa?	Aa'a, en walaa 'don.
Min 'don haa ladde naa?	Aa'a, on walaa 'don.
Mi 'don haa wuro naa?	Aa'a, a walaa 'don.
A 'don haa saare naa?	Aa'a, mi walaa 'don.

Additional Vocabulary:

### Exercise 5

Nasaraare (nde): *English*

## Substitution and Transformation drill

### Exercise 6

en	Mi 'don wolwa Fulfulde.
a	En 'don wolwa Fulfulde.
'don nana	A 'don wolwa Fulfulde.
min	A 'don nana Fulfulde.
o	Min 'don nana Fulfulde.
'don wolwa	O 'don nana Fulfulde.
Nasaraare	O 'don wolwa Fulfulde.
on	O 'don wolwa Nasaraare.
'be	On 'don wolwa Nasaraare.
mi	'Be 'don wolwa Nasaraare.
'don nana	Mi 'don wolwa Nasaraare.
en	Mi 'don nana Nasaraare.
min	En 'don nana Nasaraare.
Fulfulde	Min 'don nana Nasaraare.
'don wolwa	Min 'don nana Fulfulde.
a	Min 'don wolwa Fulfulde.
on	A 'don wolwa Fulfulde.
o	On 'don wolwa Fulfulde.
'be	O 'don wolwa Fulfulde.
mi	'Be 'don wolwa Fulfulde.
	Mi 'don wolwa Fulfulde.

### Exercise 7

yahugo: *to go*

The nouns in the following exercise are replaced by the appropriate pronouns.

### Exercise 8

O 'don yaha jangirde jango.	O 'don yaha nde jango.
Min 'don yaha jangirde jango.	Min 'don yaha nde jango.
En 'don yaha juulirde jooni.	En 'don yaha nde jooni.
On 'don wolwa Nasaraare jooni.	On 'don wolwa nde jooni.
'Be walaa siwtaare jango.	'Be walaa nde jango.
Mi woodi siwtaare jango.	Mi woodi nde jango.
A 'don wolwa Fulfulde jooni.	A 'don wolwa nde jooni.

The pronouns in the first two sentences are transformed into a single pronoun in the third sentence.

### Exercise 9

Mi 'don yaha ngesa. O 'don yaha ngesa.  
Mi 'don yaha waalde. A 'don yaha waalde.  
A 'don yaha jangirde. A 'don yaha  
  jangirde.  
Mi 'don yaha juulirde. 'Be 'don yaha  
  juulirde.  
Mi 'don yaha ladde. On 'don  
  yaha ladde.  
A 'don yaha saare laamii'do. On 'don  
  yaha saare laamii'do.

Min 'don yaha ngesa.  
En 'don yaha waalde.  
On 'don yaha jangirde.  
  
Min 'don yaha juulirde.  
  
En 'don yaha ladde.  
  
On 'don yaha saare laamii'do.

### **Fuh**

When subject pronouns are used with fuh, the pronoun is often repeated after fuh.

'Be fuh 'be 'don una fajiri.

*They all pound (grain) in  
the morning.*

'Be fuh 'be unataa fajiri.

*None of them pounds (grain)  
in the morning.*

### Substitution drill

### Exercise 10

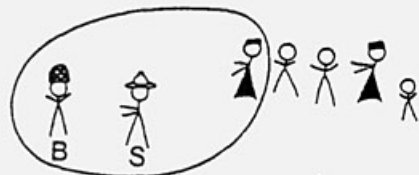
min  
on  
en  
baalte  
defataa  
'be  
en  
caka naange  
on  
nyaamataa  
min  
kiiki'de  
en  
on  
unataa  
fajiri  
'be

'Be fuh 'be unataa fajiri.  
Min fuh min unataa fajiri.  
On fuh on unataa fajiri.  
En fuh en unataa fajiri.  
En fuh en unataa baalte.  
En fuh en defataa baalte.  
'Be fuh 'be defataa baalte.  
En fuh en defataa baalte.  
En fuh en defataa caka naange.  
On fuh on defataa caka naange.  
On fuh on nyaamataa caka naange.  
Min fuh min nyaamataa caka naange.  
En fuh en nyaamataa kiiki'de.  
En fuh en nyaamataa kiiki'de.  
On fuh on nyaamataa kiiki'de.  
On fuh on unataa kiiki'de.  
On fuh on unataa fajiri.  
'Be fuh 'be unataa fajiri.

## Jangde timmunde

Salaamu aleykum.  
 Aleyka salaamu.  
 A. waali jam naa?  
 Sey jam.  
 A 'don nana Fulfulde naa?  
 Ooho, mi 'don nana nde.  
 Too, boo'd'dum. A 'don wolwa Fulfulde naa kadi?  
 Ooho, Min fuh min 'don wolwa nde haa saare 'do jooni.  
 Too, boo'd'dum.  
 A 'don siwta hande naa?  
 Ooho, min woodi siwtaare hande. Amma on walaa siwtaare haa jangirde ko?  
 Ooho, min walaa siwtaare haa jangirde tawon. Min siwtataa haa jangirde  
 sey nyande Asawe bee nyande Alat.  
 Too. Bello boo, o 'don haa saare naa?  
 Ooho, o 'don. Bello 'don haa nder suudu, o 'don janga deftere bee 'dereewol.  
 Too. Toy Zeynabu? O 'don 'do naa?  
 Aa'a, Zeynabu walaa 'do. O 'don-yaha 'Yoola haa luumo jooni. O unataa,  
 o defataa sey jango.  
 Too, mi nani. Useko.  
 Sey jango.

## Ngewta



## LESSON 13

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 13, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 18 new vocabulary items
- explain what is meant by the Stative and name at least 5 verbs which are regularly used with the Stative verb form
- use the Stative in forming questions and answers.





### Dialogue

Zeynabu: A hirti jam?

*Good evening.*

Aa'i: Jam.

*Good evening.*

Z: Ndaa footo saare.

*Here's a picture of the home.*

A: Kay! Footo man woo'di. Ndaa  
Usumaanu o 'don waali o 'don  
'daani.

*Wow! The picture is good.  
There's Usmanu, he's lying  
down, sleeping.*

Z: Nonnon boo. Ndaa Buuba kadi  
o 'don joo'di o 'don janga  
deftere.

*Just so. And there's Buba  
sitting and reading a book.*

A: Asee a 'don dari a 'don una?

*And is that you standing and pounding?*

Z: Haa fahin ndaa jawmu ku'b'bir'dum,  
o 'don haa yonnde, o 'don roondi  
ku'b'bir'dum.

*Again there's the wood man — he's  
at the entrance, carrying firewood  
(on his head).*

A: Asee on fuh 'don 'do haa nder  
footo!

*So you're really all there in the  
picture!*

Z: Ooho, min fuh min 'don 'do.

*Yes, we're all there.*

A: Too, useko Zeynabu. Mi hooti  
jooi.

*That's great, thanks Zainabu. I'm  
leaving for home now.*

Z: Waalu jam!

*Sleep well!*

## Vocabulary

kay!: *an exclamation of surprise*  
foto: *photograph, picture*  
woo'di: *be nice, good, attractive, fine (cf. boo'd'dum)*  
waalugo: *to lie down, spend the night*  
'daanugo: *to sleep*  
non: *so, thus, like that*  
nonnon: *just so, exactly so, all right*  
joo'dugo: *to sit, dwell, reside*  
darugo: *to stand, come to a halt, stop*  
roondugo: *carry (a load on head)*  
haa fahin: *again, and moreover*  
mi hooti: *"I am going home" a parting formula*  
waalu jam!: *"sleep well" a parting formula*

## Additional Vocabulary

### Exercise 1

kare: *loads, things (useful or substantial)*  
kosam ('dam): *milk, either fresh or sour*  
mbulku (ngu): *water pot*  
taaga (nga): *window*

### 'Don before a verb with an -i ending. The Stative.

The Stative is used to describe a state rather than an ongoing process. It is especially used for positions adopted by the body such as standing, sitting, lying down and in such cases a verb root that is used with the Stative will not normally be used with the Continuous. For example:

O 'don dari.	<i>He is standing.</i>
O 'don joo'di.	<i>He is sitting.</i>
O 'don waali.	<i>He is lying down.</i>
O 'don 'daani.	<i>He is sleeping.</i>

The Stative also applies to objects, as in the following examples:

Mbulku 'don ma'b'bi.	<i>The water pot is covered.</i>
Taaga 'don ma'b'biti.	<i>The window is open.</i>

However, ma'b'b\_\_\_ and ma'b'bit\_\_\_ are, of course, used with the Continuous when a person is performing the operation:

Sutura 'don ma'b'ba mbulku.  
Usumaanu 'don ma'b'bita taaga.

Here are some sentences using the Stative with verbs that are not used with the Continuous:

### Exercise 2

O 'don waali.	'Be 'don waali.
O 'don 'daani.	'Be 'don 'daani.
O 'don joo'di.	'Be 'don joo'di.
O 'don dari.	'Be 'don dari.
O 'don roondi kare.	'Be 'don roondi kare.

Here are some questions and their positive answers:

### Exercise 3

Buuba 'don waali naa?	Ooho, Buuba 'don waali.
Buuba bee Usumaanu 'don waali naa?	Ooho, Buuba bee Usumaanu 'don waali.
Zeynabu 'don 'daani naa?	Ooho, Zeynabu 'don 'daani.
Zeynabu bee Aa'i 'don 'daani naa?	Ooho, Zeynabu bee Aa'i 'don 'daani.
O 'don joo'di naa?	Ooho, o 'don joo'di.
'Be 'don joo'di naa?	Ooho, 'be 'don joo'di.
Mi 'don dari naa?	Ooho, a 'don dari.
On 'don dari naa?	Ooho, min 'don dari.
O 'don roondi kare naa?	Ooho, o 'don roondi kare.
'Be 'don roondi kare naa?	Ooho, 'be 'don roondi kare.

Substitution and transformation drills

### Exercise 4

-min	Mi 'don waali.
o	Min 'don waali.
'daani	O 'don waali.
yim'be	O 'don 'daani.
a	Yim'be 'don 'daani.
'don dari	A 'don 'daani.
en	A 'don dari.
a	En 'don dari.
'don joo'di	A 'don dari.
on	A 'don joo'di
jawmu hottollo	On 'don joo'di.
'don roondi kare	Jawmu hottollo 'don joo'di.
en	Jawmu hottollo 'don roondi kare.
jawmu saare	En 'don roondi kare.
mbulku	Jawmu saare 'don roondi kare.
'don waali	Jawmu saare 'don roondi mbulku.
mi	Jawmu saare 'don waali.
	Mi 'don waali.

### Exercise 5

'don dari  
on  
a  
'don roondi mbulku  
on  
jawmu mbulku  
'don roondi tummude kosam  
  
'be  
jawmu kosam  
  
a  
kare Mallum Abdullaahi  
en  
kare laamii'do  
kare nayeejo  
a  
'don waali  
mi

Mi 'don waali.  
Mi 'don dari.  
On 'don dari.  
A 'don dari.  
A 'don roondi mbulku.  
On 'don roondi mbulku.  
Jawmu mbulku 'don roondi mbulku.  
Jawmu mbulku 'don roondi tummude  
kosam.  
'Be 'don roondi tummude kosam.  
Jawmu kosam 'don roondi tummude  
kosam.  
A 'don roondi tummude kosam.  
A 'don roondi kare Mallum Abdullaahi.  
En 'don roondi kare Mallum Abdullaahi.  
En 'don roondi kare laamii'do.  
En 'don roondi kare nayeejo.  
A 'don roondi kare nayeejo.  
A 'don waali.  
Mi 'don waali.

### Exercise 6 Additional Vocabulary

Alim: *Alim (man's name)*

Ma'b'bugo and ma'b'bitugo are two verbs that are commonly used in both the Stative and the Continuous forms. In the following exercise, the first sentence describes an action and the second sentence, its result.

### Exercise 7

Sutura 'don ma'b'ba mbulku.  
Usumaanu 'don ma'b'bita taaga.  
Zeynabu 'don ma'b'ba fayande.  
Aa'i 'don ma'b'bita tummude.  
Alim 'don ma'b'ba akootiru.  
Buuba 'don ma'b'bita mbulku  
bee fayande.

Mbulku 'don ma'b'bi.  
Taaga 'don ma'b'biti.  
Fayande 'don ma'b'bi.  
Tummude 'don ma'b'biti.  
Akootiru 'don ma'b'bi.  
Mbulku bee fayande 'don ma'b'biti.

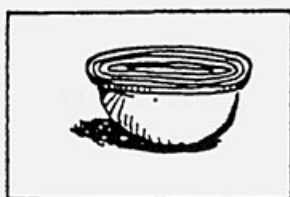
All the nouns in the following exercise are replaced by the appropriate pronouns:

Exercise 8

Sutura 'don ma'b'ba mbulku.  
Taaga 'don ma'b'biti.  
Zeynabu 'don ma'b'ba fayande.  
Tummude 'don ma'b'biti.  
Alim 'don ma'b'ba akootiru.

O 'don ma'b'ba ngu.  
Nga 'don ma'b'biti.  
O 'don ma'b'ba nde.  
Nde 'don ma'b'biti.  
O 'don ma'b'ba ndu.

Using the pictures as a guide, answer the following questions, correcting for accuracy where appropriate, for example:



Tummude 'don ma'b'bi  
naa?

Ooho, tummude 'don  
ma'b'bi.



Tummude 'don ma'b'bi  
naa?

Aa'a, tummude 'don  
ma'b'biti.

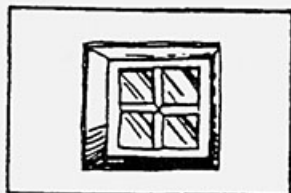


Tummude bee fayande  
'don ma'b'bi naa?

Tummude 'don ma'b'bi  
amma fayande 'don  
ma'b'biti.

Exercise 9

1.



Taaga 'don ma'b'bi naa?

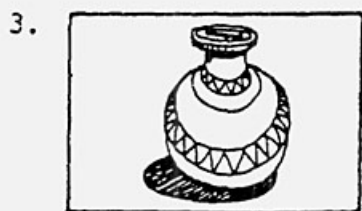
Ooho, taaga 'don ma'b'bi.

2.

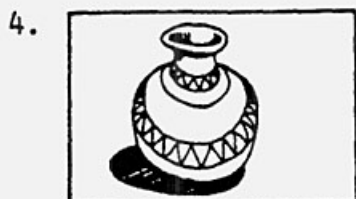


Taaga 'don ma'b'bi naa?

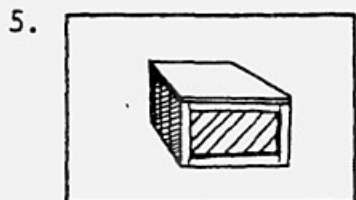
Aa'a, taaga 'don ma'b'biti.



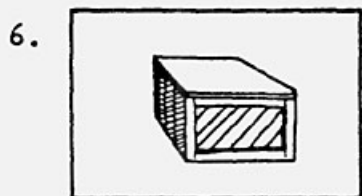
Mbulku 'don ma'b'biti naa? Aa'a, mbulku 'don ma'b'bi.



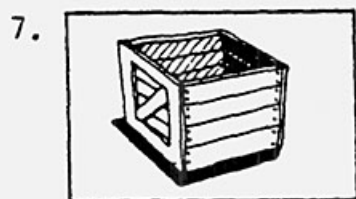
Mbulku 'don ma'b'biti naa? Ooho, mbulku 'don ma'b'biti.



Akootiru 'don ma'b'bi naa? Ooho, akootiru 'don ma'b'bi.



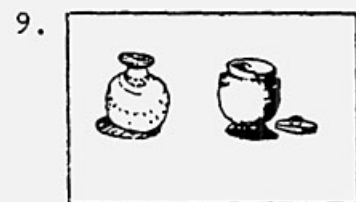
Akootiru 'don ma'b'biti naa? Aa'a, akootiru 'don ma'b'bi.



Akootiru 'don ma'b'bi naa? Aa'a, akootiru 'don ma'b'biti.



Mbulku bee fayande 'don ma'b'bi naa? Mbulku 'don ma'b'bi amma fayande 'don ma'b'biti.



Mbulku bee fayande 'don ma'b'biti naa? Mbulku 'don ma'b'bi amma fayande 'don ma'b'biti.

10.



Mbulku bee fayande 'don  
ma'b'biti naa?

Mbulku 'don ma'b'biti amma  
fayande 'don ma'b'bi.

11.



Taaga bee dammugal 'don  
ma'b'bi naa?

Aa'a, taaga bee dammugal  
'don ma'b'biti.

12.



Taaga bee dammugal 'don  
ma'b'bi naa?

Ooho, taaga bee dammugal  
'don ma'b'bi.

### Jangde timmunde

Salaamu aleykum.

Aleyka salaamu.

A wari jam?

Jam tawon.

A hirti jam?

Jam koo'dume.

Yim'be saare Buuba 'don wa'da 'dume kiiki'de? 'Be 'don 'do haa saare naa?

Nonnon boo. 'Be fuh 'be 'don.

Toy Bello?

Ndaa Bello haa yonnde. O 'don joo'di ton, o 'don wolwa bee ko'do Buuba. Haa fahin, ndaa Zeynabu bee Aa'i. 'Be 'don joo'di ton. 'Be 'don motta hottollo kiiki'de.

Sutura 'don dari ton kadi, 'be 'don wolwa 'be fuh.

Asee? Toy Buuba?

Ndaa Buuba bee jawmu kosam. Jawmu kosam 'don roondi tummude kosam jooni.

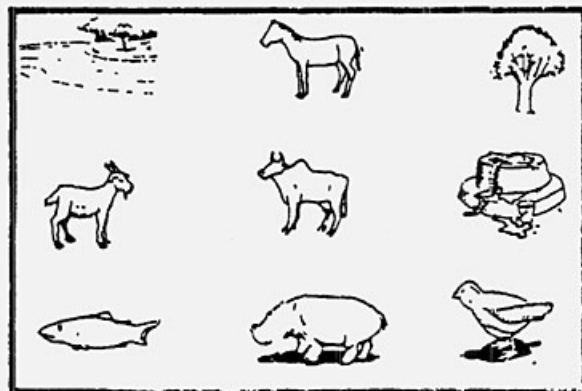
'Be 'don dari, 'be 'don wolwa. Haa fahin Usamaanu bee Alim 'don haa nder suudu.

'Be 'don waali, 'be 'don 'daani haa nder maaru.

Too, useko, mi nani jooni. Mi hooti.

Waaalu jam!

Ngewta





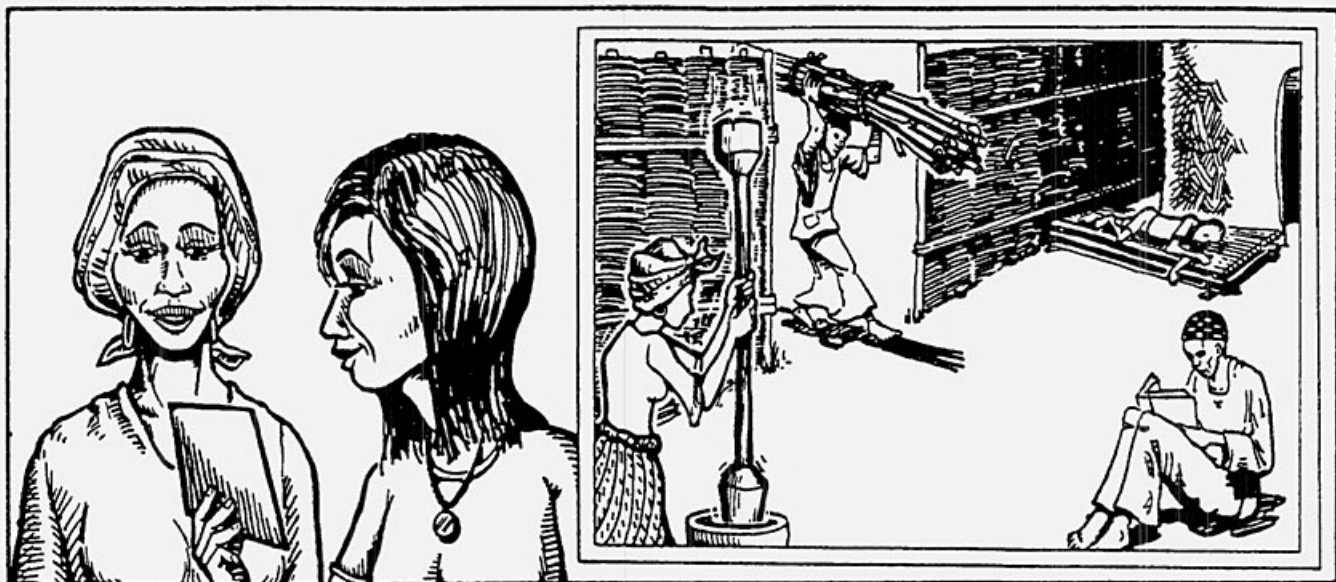
## LESSON 14

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 14, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 7 new vocabulary items
- use the expressions mi yetti and sey nyande go appropriately
- use the negative of the Stative: -aaki, -aay
- use the suffix -no to place an action or state into the past:

'donno  
-aakino  
-aayno



### Dialogue

Aa'i: Ndaa footo saare Buuba.

*Here's a picture of Buba's home.*

Mary: 'Dum Buuba on 'daani naa?

*Is that Buba sleeping?*

A: Aa'a, Buuba 'daanaaki. Ndaa Buuba 'do. O 'don joo'di, o 'don janga deftere.

*No, Buba's not sleeping. There's Buba over here; he's sitting, reading a book.*

M: Moy 'don roondi k'ub'bir'dum? Usumaanu naa?

*Who is carrying the firewood? Is it Usmanu?*

A: Naa Usumaanu. Usumaanu roondaay koo'dume. Ndaa Usumaanu, o 'don 'daani.

*It's not Usmanu. Usmanu isn't carrying anything. There's Usmanu, he's sleeping.*

M: Too, mi nani. Ndaa Zeynabu kadi o 'don una.

*Oh, I see. And there's Zainabu, she's pounding.*

A: Non boo. Naane o 'donno motta, amma jooni ndaa o 'don una.

*That's right. Previously she was spinning, but now see, she is pounding.*

M: Too, mi nani. Mi yetti. Sey nyande go.

*Fine, I understand. I thank you. Until another day.*

A: Sey nyande go.

*Goodbye.*

## Vocabulary

- 'daanaaki: negative of 'don 'daani  
roondaay: negative of 'don roondi  
naane: former time, previously, formerly  
-no: suffixed to 'don and to verbs, puts the action or state described into the past  
yettugo: to thank  
mi yetti: I thank (you)  
sey nyande go: until another day, goodbye

The negative of the Stative is comparatively rare since the Fulbe are more likely to use the positive form of a verb with the opposite meaning. For example, instead of saying "he is not sitting" one is more likely to say "he is standing" or "he is lying" or "he is walking," etc. However, when negative Statives do occur in Fulfulde they take one of two forms. The 'don preceding the verb is dropped and the -i suffix is replaced by either -aaki or more rarely -aay.

Since there is no way to predict which ending a given verb will take in the negative Stative, learn each case as you meet it.

Here are the positive and negative of some Statives we have already met. They are all verbs ending in -aaki, except for roondugo which ends in -aay.

### Exercise 1

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| O 'don waali.    | O waalaaki.    |
| 'Be 'don 'daani. | 'Be 'daanaaki. |
| O 'don joo'di.   | O joo'daaki.   |
| 'Be 'don dari.   | 'Be daraaki.   |
| O 'don roondi.   | O roondaay.    |

Here are some questions and their negative answers. The appropriate subject pronoun is used in the answer.

### Exercise 2

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| Alim 'don waali naa?                    | Aa'a, o waalaaki.          |
| Alim bee Usumaanu 'don waali naa?       | Aa'a, 'be waalaaki.        |
| A 'don 'daani naa?                      | Aa'a, mi 'daanaaki.        |
| On 'don 'daani naa?                     | Aa'a, min 'daanaaki.       |
| O 'don joo'di naa?                      | Aa'a, o joo'daaki.         |
| 'Be 'don joo'di naa?                    | Aa'a, 'be joo'daaki.       |
| A 'don dari naa?                        | Aa'a, mi daraaki.          |
| On 'don dari naa?                       | Aa'a, min daraaki.         |
| Saalihi 'don roondi akootiru naa?       | Aa'a, o roondaay akootiru. |
| Saalihi bee Muusa 'don roondi kare naa? | Aa'a, 'be roondaay kare.   |

## Additional Vocabulary

### Exercise 3

jogugo: *to hold*, commonly used with the Stative

joo'dugo: *to sit*, used in the sense of *to reside* ;  
e.g. O 'don joo'di haa Pariya.

haa: here used in the sense of *until*

Bello: *Bello (family name, man's name)*

### -no

The -no suffix is used in a variety of ways to place actions back in time. When -no is used with the Continuous and the Stative, the result is what we shall call the Past Continuous and Past Stative.

For the affirmative, add -no to the 'don of the Continuous or the Stative. For example:

#### Continuous

Alim 'don yaha 'Yoola.  
*Alim is going to Yola.*

#### Stative

Bello 'don 'daani.  
*Bello is sleeping.*

#### Past Continuous

Alim 'donno yaha 'Yoola.  
*Alim was going to Yola.*

#### Past Stative

Bello 'donno 'daani.  
*Bello was sleeping.*

### Exercise 4

Mi 'don yaha Kano.  
Bello 'don yaha Kano.  
A 'don sooda ngapaleewol.  
'Be 'don sooda ngapaleewol.  
Alim 'don jogi sawru.  
'Be 'don jogi ku'b'bir'dum.  
En 'don joo'di haa 'Yoola.  
On 'don joo'di haa 'Yoola.

Mi 'donno yaha Kano.  
Bello 'donno yaha Kano.  
A 'donno sooda ngapaleewol.  
'Be 'donno sooda ngapaleewol.  
Alim 'donno jogi sawru.  
'Be 'donno jogi ku'b'bir'dum.  
En 'donno joo'di haa 'Yoola.  
On 'donno joo'di haa 'Yoola.

For the negative of the Past Continuous and the Past Stative add -no to the end of the negative verb.

Negative Continuous

Bello yahataa 'Yoola.  
*Bello isn't going to Yola.*

Negative Stative

Alim 'daanaaki.  
*Alim isn't sleeping.*

Zeynabu roondaay tummude.  
*Zainabu isn't carrying a  
calabash on her head.*

Negative Past Continuous

Bello yahataano 'Yoola.  
*Bello wasn't going to Yola.*

Negative Past Stative

Alim 'daanaakino.  
*Alim wasn't sleeping.*

Zeynabu roondaayno tummude.  
*Zainabu wasn't carrying a  
calabash on her head.*

Here are some negative Continuous and negative Stative sentences with their past counterparts:

Exercise 5

O waalaaki.  
Mi 'daanaaki.  
'Be joo'daaki.  
A daraaki.  
'Be jogaaki sawru.  
On roondaay tummude.  
En yahataa Kano.  
Mi nyaamataa nyamdu.  
O fijataa.

O waalaakino.  
Mi 'daanaakino.  
'Be joo'daakino.  
A daraakino.  
'Be jogaakino sawru.  
On roondaayno tummude.  
En yahataano Kano.  
Mi nyaamataano nyamdu.  
O fijataano.

Here is a series in which sentences in the Continuous or the Stative are used with *jooni*, and sentences with their past counterparts use *naane*.

### Substitution and transformation drill

#### Exercise 6

naane  
'be  
ku'b'bir'dum  
jooni  
roondi  
roondaay  
naane  
kare  
Usumaanu  
jooni  
'don roondi  
'don jogi  
jogaaki  
sawru  
'be  
naane  
o  
jooni  
'don jogi

Jooni o 'don jogi sawru.  
Naane o 'donno jogi sawru.  
Naane 'be 'donno jogi sawru.  
Naane 'be 'donno jogi ku'b'bir'dum.  
Jooni 'be 'don jogi ku'b'bir'dum.  
Jooni 'be 'don roondi ku'b'bir'dum.  
Jooni 'be roondaay ku'b'bir'dum.  
Naane 'be roondaayno ku'b'bir'dum.  
Naane 'be roondaayno kare.  
Naane Usumaanu roondaayno kare.  
Jooni Usumaanu roondaay kare.  
Jooni Usumaanu 'don roondi kare.  
Jooni Usumaanu 'don jogi kare.  
Jooni Usumaanu jogaaki kare.  
Jooni Usumaanu jogaaki sawru.  
Jooni 'be jogaaki sawru.  
Naane 'be jogaakino sawru.  
Naane o jogaakino sawru.  
Jooni o jogaaki sawru.  
Jooni o 'don jogi sawru.

### Jangde timmunde

Gaafara.

A wari jam?

Jam.

A nyalli jam?

Jam.

Toy Buuba? O 'don 'daani jooni naa?

Aa'a, Buuba 'daanaaki, o waalaaki, o siwtataa hande. Naane o 'donno siwta caka naange fuh amma jooni o 'don huuwa haa kiiki'de.

Too. Toy Usumaanu bee Alim?

Ndaa Usumaanu bee Alim ton. 'Be 'don wara 'do.

Moy 'don jogi sawru? Alim naa?

Naa 'dum Alim, Usumaanu 'don jogi sawru, Alim 'don roondi ku'b'bir'dum. Naane Usumaanu 'donno roondi kare fuh, jooni boo Alim 'don roondi kare. Naane Alim roondaayno kare amma jooni o 'don roondi.

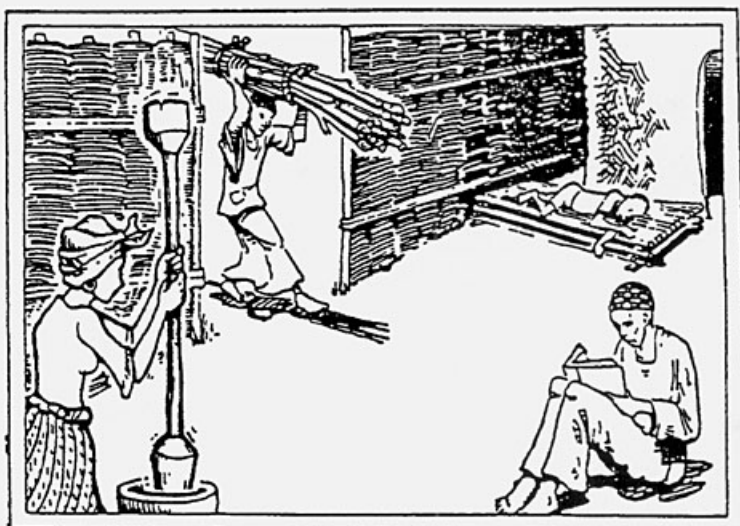
Too, boo'd'dum, mi nani, mi yetti.

Sey nyande go.

Sey nyande go.

A waali jam?  
 Jam tawon.  
 Ndaa yim'be Pariya. 'Be 'don nyaama luumo.  
 Too. Ndaa yim'be saare Abdullaahi. 'Be 'don sooda hottollo bee ha'b'bere 'do.  
 Toy yim'be saa, e Buuba?  
 Ndaa Buuba bee Bello. 'Be 'don wara 'do.  
 Toy Uumaanu?  
 Uumaanu 'don ton kadi, o 'don yara ndiyam jooni.  
 Asee? Zeynabu bee Sutura boo fuh 'don yara naa?  
 Aa'a, 'be yarataa tawon. Zeynabu bee Sutura 'don nyaama luumo.  
 Too, mi nani, useko.

**Ngewta**



## LESSON 15

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 15, the student will be able to:

-identify and correctly use 19 new vocabulary items

-use the constructions:

\_\_\_\_\_ dow \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ les \_\_\_\_\_  
haa dow  
haa les  
haa jungo  
haa toy

in asking and answering questions

-use ki class pronouns

-use ngei class pronouns.





### Dialogue

Aa'i: 'Dume on dow 'bokki?

*What is on the baobab?*

Mary: 'Dum jigaawal. Jigaawal  
on dow 'bokki.

*It's a vulture. A vulture is  
on the baobab.*

A: 'Dume on les 'bokki?

*What is under the baobab?*

M: 'Dum mbaala. Mbaala  
on les 'bokki man.

*It's a sheep. A sheep is  
under the baobab.*

A: Haa toy mbaala darata?

*Where is the sheep standing?*

M: Mbaala 'don dari les 'bokki.

*The sheep is standing under the baobab.*

A: Walaa huunde feere les 'bokki naa?

*Is there nothing else under the baobab?*

M: Woodi. Ndaa baalel 'don waali.

*There is. There's a lamb lying down.*

A: Boo'd'dum. Asee a 'don nana  
Fulfulde.

*Good. It appears really that  
you understand Fulfulde.*

### Vocabulary

dow: *on, above*

les: *under, below*

woni: *is, are, am*

'bokki (ki): *baobab tree*

jigaawal (ngal): *vulture*

mbaala (nga): *sheep, ewe*

huunde (nde): *thing*

feere: *another, different*

baalel (ngel): *lamb*

With this lesson we are introducing two more noun classes:

Ki class: 'bokki (ki)  
lekki (ki)

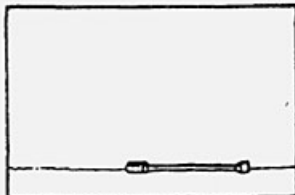
Ngel class: baalel (ngel)  
'bingel (ngel)

### Additional Vocabulary

#### Exercise 1



unordu (ndu): *mortar*



undugal (ngal): *pestle*



soorowol (ngol): *flat, mud roofed house*



gertogal (ngal): *chicken*

koowaagol (ngol): *cornstalk fence*

**Dow** indicates up, above, or on.

**Les** indicates down, below, or under

When a specific verb is not involved in questions and answers describing location, and the focus is on the identity of the subject rather than on the location itself, Fulfulde uses *on* after some question words and after the subject. Here are some examples:

'Dume on dow 'bokki?  
Moyjo on dow daago?  
'Dum 'dume on haa saare Buuba?

Jigaawal on dow 'bokki.  
Zeynabu on dow daago.  
'Dum tummude on haa saare Buuba.

### Exercise 2

'Dume on dow soorowol? (jigaawal)  
'Dume on dow unordu? (jawngal)  
'Dume on dow koowaagol? (gertogal)  
'Dume on dow tebur? (tebur)  
'Dume on les 'bokki? (baalel)  
'Dume on les koroowal? (akootiru)  
'Dume on les akootiru? (undugal)  
'Dume on les deftere? ('dereewol)

Jigaawal on dow soorowol.  
Jawngal on dow unordu.  
Gertogal on dow koowaagol.  
Deftere on dow tebur.  
Baalel on les 'bokki.  
Akootiru on les koroowal.  
Undugal on les akootiru.  
'Dereewol on les deftere.

### Exercise 3

Moyjo on dow koroowal? (Buuba)  
Moyjo on les 'bokki? (Saalihi)  
Moyjo on dow daago? (Zeynabu)  
Moyjo on les mootaa? (gorko)  
Moyjo on dow leeso? (nayeejo)  
Moyjo on les tebur? ('bingel)

Buuba on dow koroowal.  
Saalihi on les 'bokki.  
Zeynabu on dow daago.  
Gorko on les mootaa.  
Nayeejo on dow leeso.  
'Bingel on les tebur.

### Substitution drill

### Exercise 4

lekki  
suudu  
sondu  
gertogal  
jaawngal  
tebur  
les  
'bingel  
akootiru  
mbeewa  
lekki  
yim'be  
Usumaanu bee Alim  
Buuba  
Adamu  
'bokki  
tebur  
dow  
daago  
Zeynabu

Jigaawal on dow 'bokki.  
Jigaawal on dow lekki.  
Jigaawal on dow suudu.  
Sondul on dow suudu.  
Gertogal on dow suudu.  
Jaawngal on dow suudu.  
Jaawngal on dow tebur.  
Jaawngal on les tebur.  
'Bingel on les tebur.  
Akootiru on les tebur.  
Mbeewa on les tebur.  
Mbeewa on les lekki.  
Yim'be on les lekki.  
Usumaanu bee Alim on les lekki.  
Buuba on les lekki.  
Adamu on les lekki.  
Adamu on les 'bokki.  
Adamu on les tebur.  
Adamu on dow tebur.  
Adamu on dow daago.  
Zeynabu on dow daago.

When the location of the subject is the focus of the question and answer, omit on and use 'don dow and 'don les. Here are some questions and answers geared to illustrations.

Exercise 5

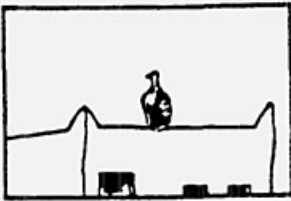
1.



Toy Usumaanu?

Usumaanu 'don dow koroowal.

2.



Toy jigaawal?

Jigaawal 'don dow soorowol.

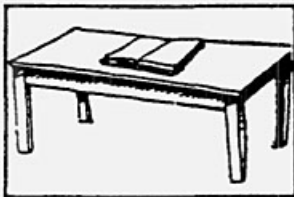
3.



Toy jaawngal?

Jaawngal 'don dow unordu.

4.



Toy deftere?

Deftere 'don dow tebur.

5.



Toy sondu?

Sondu 'don dow koowaagol.

6.



Toy Buuba?

Buuba 'don les 'bokki.

7.



Toy undugal?

Undugal 'don les lekki.

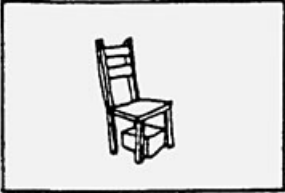
8.



Toy baalel?

Baalel 'don les 'bokki.

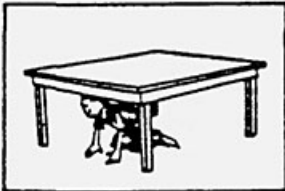
9.



Toy akootiru?

Akootiru 'don les  
koroowal.

10.



Toy 'bingel?

'Bingel 'don les tebur.

A variation on this type of question and answer is to use *haa toy* and a specific verb. Here are some questions and answers.

Exercise 6

1.



Haa toy Usumaanu  
joo'data?

Usumaanu 'don joo'di  
dow koroowal.

2.



Haa toy jigaawal  
joo'data?

Jigaawal 'don joo'di  
dow soorowol.

3.



Haa toy baalel  
darata?

Baalel 'don dari les  
'bokki.

4.



Haa toy baalel  
waalata?

Baalel 'don waali les  
'bokki.

5.



Haa toy 'bingel  
'daanata?

'Bingel 'don 'daani  
dow daago.

### Exercise 7

dow  
koroowal  
Usumaanu  
daago  
Adamu  
tebur  
les  
'don waali  
baalel  
'bokki  
'don dari  
mbeewa  
Usumaanu  
jigaawal  
'don joo'di

Jigaawal 'don joo'di les 'bokki.  
Jigaawal 'don joo'di dow 'bokki.  
Jigaawal 'don joo'di dow koroowal.  
Usumaanu 'don joo'di dow koroowal.  
Usumaanu 'don joo'di dow daago.  
Adamu 'don joo'di dow daago.  
Adamu 'don joo'di dow tebur.  
Adamu 'don joo'di les tebur.  
Adamu 'don waali les tebur.  
Baalel 'don waali les tebur.  
Baalel 'don waali les 'bokki.  
Baalel 'don dari les 'bokki.  
Mbeewa 'don dari les 'bokki.  
Usumaanu 'don dari les 'bokki.  
Jigaawal 'don dari les 'bokki.  
Jigaawal 'don joo'di les 'bokki.

Here are some questions whose answers use pronouns in place of the nouns they are locating.

### Exercise 8

1.



Toy akootiru?

Ndu 'don les koroowal.

2.



Toy jigaawal?

Ngal 'don dow soorowol.

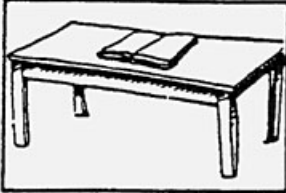
3.



Toy undugal?

Ngal 'don les lekki.

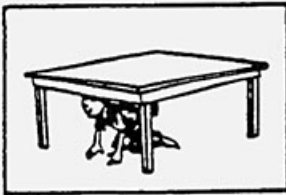
4.



Toy deftere?

Nde 'don dow tebur.

5.



Toy 'bingel?

Ngel 'don les tebur.

6.



Haa toy Usumaanu  
joo'data?

O 'don joo'di dow  
koroowal.

7.



Haa toy Buuba  
siwtata?

O 'don siwta les 'bokki.

8.



Haa toy sondu  
joo'data?

Ndu 'don joo'di dow  
koowaagol.

9.



Haa toy baalel  
waalata?

Ngel 'don waali les 'bokki.

10.



Haa toy jaawngal  
joo'data?

Ngal 'don joo'di dow  
unordu.

**Haa dow** indicates in the air, in the sky.

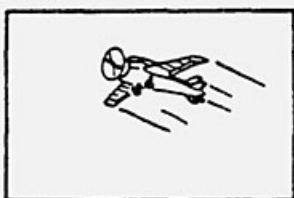
**Haa les** indicates on the ground.

Additional Vocabulary

Exercise 9



lewru (ndu): moon



piiroowal (ngal): airplane



moota (nga): car

Here are some questions whose answers use 'don haa dow or 'don haa les.

Exercise 10

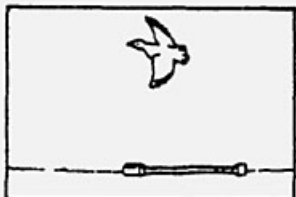
1.



Toy jigaawal?  
Toy unordu?

Jigaawal 'don haa dow.  
Unordu 'don haa les.

2.



Toy sondu?  
Toy undugal?

Sondu 'don haa dow.  
Undugal 'don haa les.

3.



Toy jaawngal?  
Toy baalel?

Jaawngal 'don haa dow.  
Baalel 'don haa les.



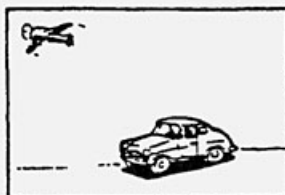
4.



Toy lewru?  
Toy mbaala?

Lewru 'don haa dow.  
Mbaala 'don haa les.

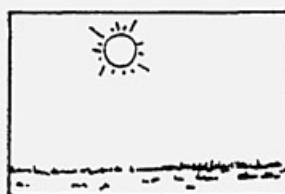
5.



Toy piiroowal?  
Toy mootaa?

Piiroowal 'don haa dow.  
Moota 'don haa les.

6.



Toy naange?  
Toy hu'do?

Naange 'don haa dow.  
Hu'do 'don haa les.

## Vocabulary

### Exercise 11

too: a variant of ton which indicates even greater distance  
from the speaker

### Exercise 12

1.



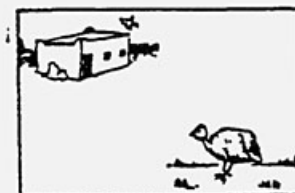
Ndaa jigaawal  
haa dow too.

Jigaawal feere boo 'don  
haa les.

*There's a vulture up  
there in the sky.*

*Another vulture is on  
the ground.*

2.



Ndaa jaawngal  
haa dow too.

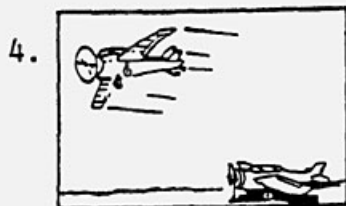
Jaawngal feere boo  
'don haa les.

3.



Ndaa sondu haa  
dow too.

Sondu feere boo  
'don haa les.



Ndaa piroowal  
haa dow too.

Piroowal feere boo  
'don haa les.

Exercise 13

huunde feere: *something else*

Exercise 14

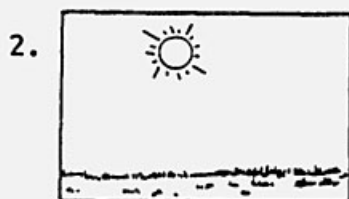


Ndaa baalel. Woodi  
huunde feere?

Ooho, woodi jaawngal.

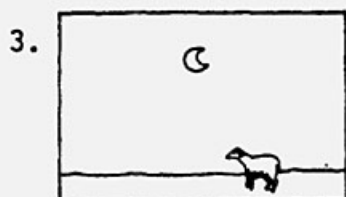
*There is a lamb. Is  
there anything else?*

*Yes, there is a guinea fowl*



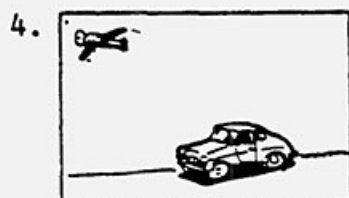
Ndaa hu'do. Woodi  
huunde feere?

Ooho, woodi naange.



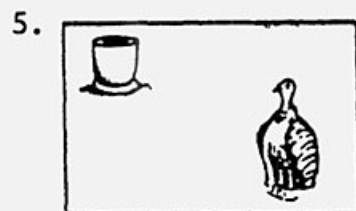
Ndaa mbaala. Woodi  
huunde feere?

Ooho, woodi lewru.



Ndaa mootaa. Woodi  
huunde feere?

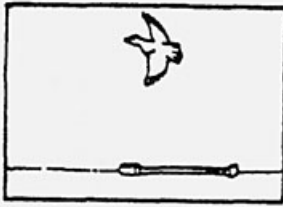
Ooho, woodi piroowal.



Ndaa unordu. Woodi  
huunde feere?

Ooho, woodi jigaawal.

6.

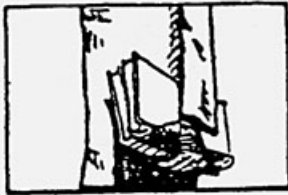


Ndaa sondu. Woodi  
huunde feere?

Ooho, woodi undugal.

### Additional Vocabulary

#### Exercise 15



jungo: *hand*

haa jungo: *in the hand*

Here are some questions and answers.

#### Exercise 16

1.



'Dum 'dume on haa jungo  
Zeynabu?

'Dum undugal on haa jungo  
Zeynabu.

2.



'Dum 'dume on haa jungo  
Abdullaahi?

'Dum Alkur'aana on haa  
jungo Abdullaahi.

3.



'Dum 'dume on haa jungo  
Usumaanu?

'Dum moota on haa jungo  
Usumaanu.

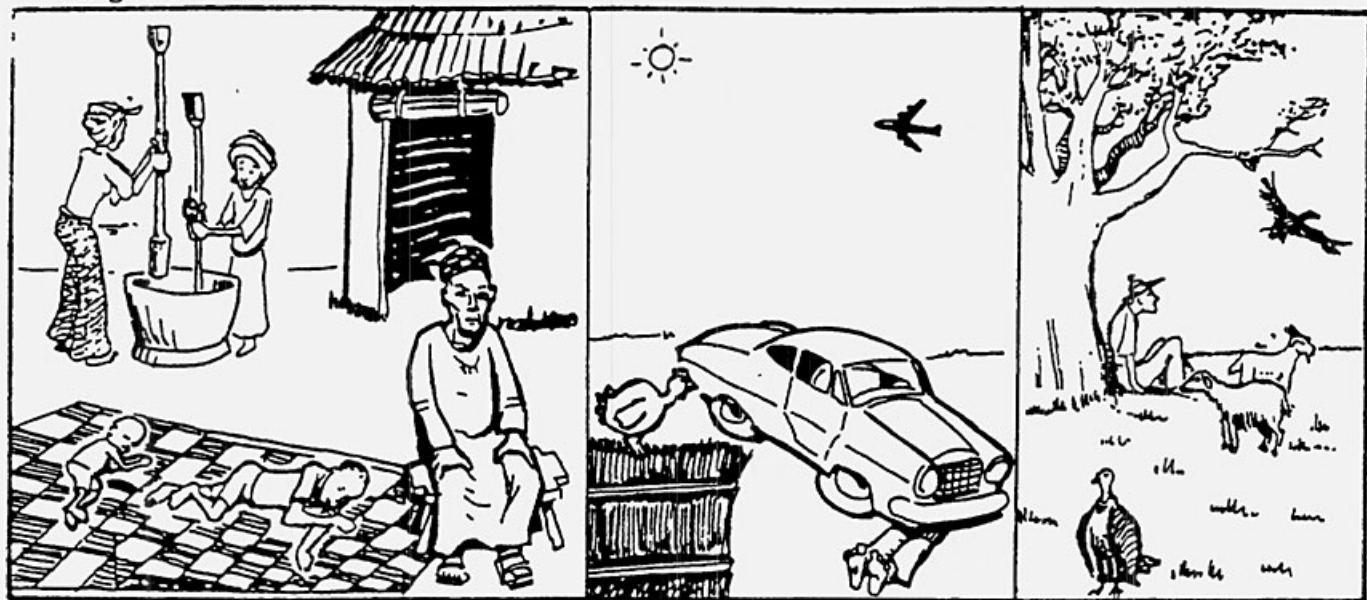
4.



'Dum 'dume on haa jungo  
Sutura?

'Dum tummude on haa  
jungo Sutura.

Jangde timmunde



Moyjo on les 'bokki?  
Saalihi on les 'bokki.

Moyjo on dow koroowal?  
'Dum Buuba. Buuba on dow koroowal.

Moyjo on dow daago?  
Adamu bee Usumaanu on dow daago.

'Dum 'dume on haa jungo Zeynabu?  
'Dum undugal on.

'Dum 'dume on haa les.  
'Dum unordu on.

Zeynabu 'don wa'da 'dume?  
Zeynabu 'don una bee unordu bee undugal.  
Sutura bee Zeynabu fuh 'don una hande.  
Too.

Haa toy Saalihi joo'data?  
Saalihi 'don joo'di les 'bokki.

Woodi huunde feere boo les 'bokki?  
Ooho, woodi mbaala. Walaa huunde feere naa kadi?  
Woodi mbeewa.  
'Be fuh 'be 'don dari les 'bokki man.  
Too.

Haa toy Buuba joo'data?  
Buuba 'don joo'di dow koroowal.

Haa toy Usumaanu waalata ?  
Usumaanu 'don waali dow daago.

Toy Adamu?

Ndaa Adamu bee Usumaanu dow daago. 'Be 'don waali 'be fuh.

'Dum jaawngal on haa dow?

Aa'a, naa 'dum jaawngal, 'dum jigaawal on haa dow.

Jigaawal feere boo 'don haa les.

Walaa huunde feere haa dow too?

Woodi. Piirrowal 'don haa dow too.

Toy mootaa?

Ndaa mootaa.

Toy Gi'daa'do?

Ndaa Gi'daa'do 'do les mootaa jooni.

Too, mi nani. Useko.

Ngewta.



## LESSON 16

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 16, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 4 new vocabulary items
- use the non-human emphatic pronouns
- use possessive pronouns to indicate possession, and after dow, les, kombi and yaasi.



### Dialogue

Buuba: Ja'b'baama.

John: Mi ja'bi.

B: Yottu danki.

*Come on in.*

J: Useko. 'Dum saare Saalihu naa?

*Thank you. Is that Saalihu's compound?*

B: Kayre on. Ndaa dammugal maare.

*That's it. There's its entrance.*

J: Moy on wuwata haa nder maare?

*Who's that sweeping in it?*

B: 'Bingel Saalihu on. Ndaa suudu maangel.

*That's Saalihu's child. There's her house.*

J: 'Do on dammugal maaru naa?

*Is this its door here?*

B: Ooho, 'dum kangal.

*Yes, that's it.*

J: Mi nani, mi yetti.

### Vocabulary

yottu danki: *come in* (literally, *come to the shelter*)

kayre: *it* (emphatic pronoun for nde class nouns)

kangal: *it* (emphatic pronoun for ngal class nouns)

More on possessive pronouns:

As we saw in Lesson 8, the Fulfulde possessive pronouns are versatile. With this lesson we are introducing a few more uses of the Fulfulde possessive pronouns. Here are some possessive pronouns you have not yet encountered.

### Exercise 1

Noun class

ngol  
ndi  
ki  
ngel

Possessive pronoun

maangol  
maari  
maaki  
maangel

Replace the nouns by the appropriate possessive pronouns.

### Exercise 2

bee soorowol  
bee gawri  
bee lekki  
bee 'bingel  
bee deftere  
bee undugal  
bee nagge  
bee puccu  
bee akootiru  
bee hu'do  
bee ndiyam  
bee ngesa  
bee tebur  
bee leeso

bee maangol  
bee maari  
bee maaki  
bee maangel  
bee maare  
bee maangal  
bee maange  
bee maangu  
bee maaru  
bee maakó  
bee maajam  
bee maaka  
bee maanga  
bee maango

### Possession

In the dialogue for this lesson we see possessive pronouns used as you might expect: to indicate possession.

Ndaa dammugal maare.  
Ndaa suudu maangel.  
'Do on dammugal maaru naa?

*There's its (the compound's) door.*  
*There's her (the child's) house.*  
*Is this its (the house's) door here?*

The following exercises provide additional examples.



### Exercise 3

Ndaa dammugal saare.  
Ndaa suudu 'bingel.  
Ndaa dammugal soroowol.  
Ndaa suudu puccu.\*  
Ndaa dammugal suudu.  
Ndaa suudu lekki.

Ndaa dammugal maare.  
Ndaa suudu maangel.  
Ndaa dammugal maangol.  
Ndaa suudu maangu.  
Ndaa dammugal maaru.  
Ndaa suudu maaki.

\* A note on suudu. Almost anyone or anything might have a suudu, a place where he, she, or it dwells. In this lesson we have suudu puccu - *stable*, suudu lekki - *medicine house or dispensary*, and suudu mootaa - *garage*.

### Exercise 4

'Do on suudu mootaa.  
'Do on hu'do puccu.  
'Do on nyamdu 'bingel.  
'Do on ndiyam nagge.  
'Do on yonnde saare.  
'Do on koloba nyebbam.

'Do on suudu maanga.  
'Do on hu'do maangu.  
'Do on nyamdu maangel.  
'Do on ndiyam maange.  
'Do on yonnde maare.  
'Do on koloba maajam.

### Exercise 5 Additional Vocabulary

nonde (nde): *type, size, color*

Ndaa saare. Noy nonde maare?  
Ndaa nagge. Noy nonde maange?

*Here is a compound. What type is it?  
Here is a cow. What color is it?*

### Exercise 6

Ndaa ngapaleewol.  
Ndaa gawri.  
Ndaa lekki.  
Ndaa baalel.  
Ndaa deftere.  
Ndaa koroowal.  
Ndaa nagge.  
Ndaa liingu.  
Ndaa koloba.  
Ndaa hottollo.  
Ndaa nyebbam.  
Ndaa tebur.  
Ndaa daago.

Noy nonde maangol?  
Noy nonde maari?  
Noy nonde maaki?  
Noy nonde maangel?  
Noy nonde maare?  
Noy nonde maangal?  
Noy nonde maange?  
Noy nonde maangu?  
Noy nonde maaru?  
Noy nonde maako?  
Noy nonde maajam?  
Noy nonde maanga?  
Noy nonde maango?

When a pronoun occurs after the locatives *dow* and *les*, the possessive pronoun is used.

Akootiru 'don dow tebur.  
Buuba 'don les 'bokki.

Akootiru 'don dow maanga.  
Buuba 'don les maaki.

All the nouns in the following exercise are replaced by the appropriate pronoun.

### Exercise 7

Akootiru 'don dow tebur.  
Buuba 'don les 'bokki.  
Yim'be 'don haa nder soorowol.  
Yim'be 'don haa saare.  
Jigaawal 'don dow suudu.  
Mbeewa 'don les tebur.  
Gorko 'don joo'di dow koroowal.  
'Bingel 'don waali dow daago.

Ndu 'don dow maanga.  
O 'don les maaki.  
'Be 'don haa nder maangol.  
'Be 'don haa maare.  
Ngal 'don dow maaru.  
Nga 'don les maanga.  
O 'don joo'di dow maangal.  
O 'don waali dow maango.

### **Non-Human Emphatic Pronouns: *it***

The emphatic pronouns are used in constructions where no verb is involved. For example:

Kayre on.  
Ooho, 'dum kangal.  
Walaa saare sey kayre.  
Naa 'dum kange.

*That's it.* (nde class noun)  
*Yes, that's it.* (ngal class noun)  
*There is no compound except  
that one (it).*  
*It's not it.* (nge class noun)

Emphatic pronouns are also used with verbs in certain situations, but for this lesson we will concentrate on the non-verbal structures.

### Exercise 8

#### Noun class

nde  
ngal  
nge  
ngu  
ndu  
ko  
'dam  
ka  
nga  
ngo  
ngol  
ndi  
ki  
ngel

#### Emphatic pronoun

kayre  
kangal  
kange  
kangu  
kayru  
kanko  
kanjam  
kanka  
kanga  
kango  
kangol  
kayri  
kanki  
kangel

## Substitution drill

### Exercise 9

leggal  
nagge  
puccu  
koloba  
hottollo  
nyebbam  
mbeewa  
leeso  
ngapaleewol  
nyiri  
lekki  
'bingel  
deftere

Kayre on.  
Kangal on.  
Kange on.  
Kangu on.  
Kayru on.  
Kanko on.  
Kanjam on.  
Kanga on.  
Kango on.  
Kangol on.  
Kayri on.  
Kanki on.  
Kangel on.  
Kayre on.

Here are some questions and their positive answers. The answers use the emphatic pronouns.

### Exercise 10

'Dum saare Buuba naa?	Ooho, 'dum kayre.
'Dum dammugal suudu naa?	Ooho, 'dum kangal.
'Dum nagge Gi'daa'do naa?	Ooho, 'dum kange.
'Dum puccu Saalihi naa?	Ooho, 'dum kangu.
'Dum koloba Zeynabu naa?	Ooho, 'dum kayru.
'Dum hottollo Aa'i naa?	Ooho, 'dum kanko.
'Dum ndiyam nagge naa?	Ooho, 'dum kanjam.

Here are some questions and their negative answers. The answers use the emphatic pronouns.

### Exercise 11

'Dum mbeewa Abdullaahi naa?	Aa'a, naa 'dum kanga.
'Dum daago jawmu kanti naa?	Aa'a, naa 'dum kango.
'Dum soorowol jawmu saare naa?	Aa'a, naa 'dum kangol.
'Dum gawri yim'be Pariya naa?	Aa'a, naa 'dum kayri.
'Dum 'bingel Saalihi naa?	Aa'a, naa 'dum kangel.

### Exercise 12

'Dum mbeewa Abdullaahi naa?  
'Dum daago jawmu kanti naa?  
'Dum soorowol jawmu saare naa?  
'Dum gawri yim'be Pariya naa?  
'Dum 'bingel Saalihi naa?

Aa'a, naa kanga.  
Aa'a, naa kango.  
Aa'a, naa kangol.  
Aa'a, naa kayri.  
Aa'a naa kangel.

Substitution drill

### Exercise 13

daago  
soorowol  
tebur  
dammugal  
puccu  
nagge  
saare  
gawri  
'bokki  
koloba  
'bingel  
hu'do  
ndiyam

Walaa ndiyam sey kanjam.  
Walaa daago sey kango.  
Walaa soorowol sey kangol.  
Walaa tebur sey kanga.  
Walaa dammugal sey kangel.  
Walaa puccu sey kangu.  
Walaa nagge sey kange.  
Walaa saare sey kayre.  
Walaa gawri sey kayri.  
Walaa 'bokki sey kanki.  
Walaa koloba sey kayru.  
Walaa 'bingel sey kangel.  
Walaa hu'do sey kanko.  
Walaa ndiyam sey kanjam.

### Exercise 14

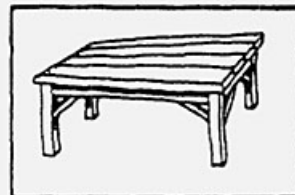
1.



'Dum nagge naa?


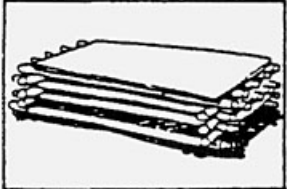
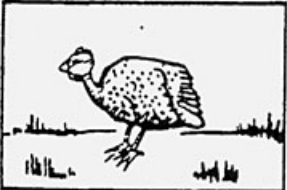


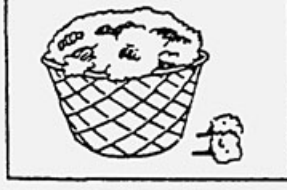
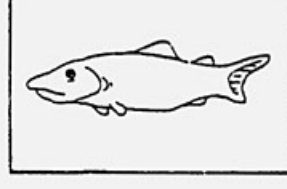

Naa 'dum kange.  
'Dum mbeewa.

2.



'Dum akootiru naa?

Naa 'dum kayru.  
'Dum tebur.

- |     |   |                    |                                     |
|-----|---|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 3.  |    | 'Dum 'daago naa?   | Naa 'dum kango.<br>'Dum koroowal.   |
| 4.  |    | 'Dum koroowal naa? | Naa 'dum kangal.<br>'Dum leeso.     |
| 5.  |    | 'Dum liingu naa?   | Naa 'dum kangu.<br>'Dum jaawngal.   |
| 6.  |   | 'Dum tummude naa?  | Naa 'dum kayre.<br>'Dum fayande.    |
| 7.  |  | 'Dum ndiyam naa?   | Naa 'dum kanjam.<br>'Dum nyebbam.   |
| 8.  |  | 'Dum gawri naa?    | Naa 'dum kayri.<br>'Dum hottollo.   |
| 9.  |  | 'Dum sondu naa?    | Naa 'dum kayru.<br>'Dum liingu.     |
| 10. |  | 'Dum hu'do naa?    | Naa 'dum kanko.<br>'Dum ku'bir'dum. |

### Exercise 15 Additional Vocabulary

kombi: *near, about*

yaasi, haa yaasi: *outside, the outside*

### Exercise 16

Akootiru 'don kombi tebur.  
Yim'be 'don kombi soorowol.  
Jigaawal 'don kombi suudu.  
Mbeewa 'don kombi suudu moota.  
Usumaanu 'don kombi suudu lekki.  
Nagge 'don kombi waalde.

The possessive pronoun is used after the locative kombi. All the nouns in the following exercise are replaced by pronouns.

### Exercise 17

Akootiru 'don kombi tebur.  
Yim'be 'don kombi soorowol.  
Jigaawal 'don kombi suudu.  
Mbeewa 'don kombi suudu moota.  
Usumaanu 'don kombi suudu lekki.  
Nagge 'don kombi waalde.

Ndu 'don kombi maanga.  
'Be 'don kombi maangol.  
Ngal 'don kombi maaru.  
Nga 'don kombi maaru.  
O 'don kombi maaru.  
Nge 'don kombi maare.

### Exercise 18 yaasi, haa yaasi

Buuba 'don yaasi kanti.  
Gertogal 'don yaasi suudu.  
'Bii Buuba 'don yaasi jangirde.  
Nagge 'don haa yaasi waalde.  
Deftere 'don haa yaasi akootiru.  
Ndiyam 'don haa yaasi wawru.

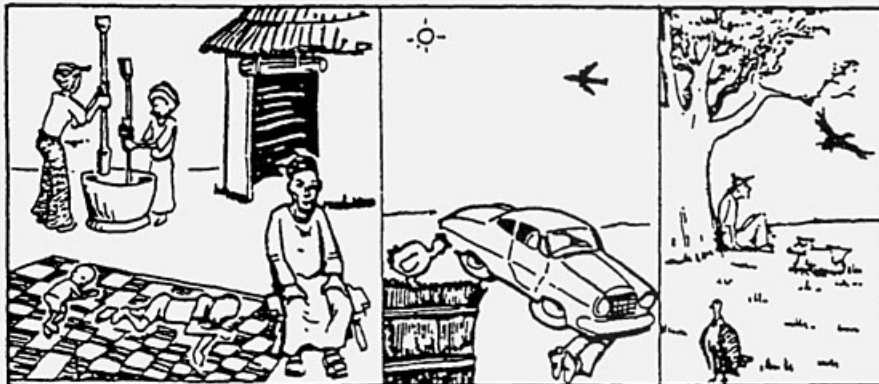
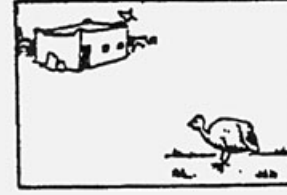
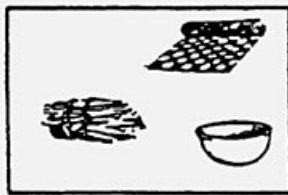
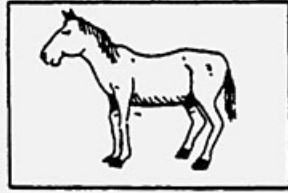
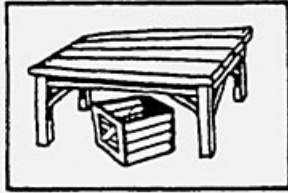
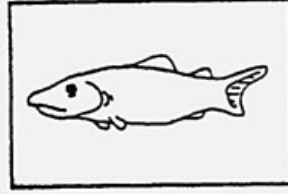
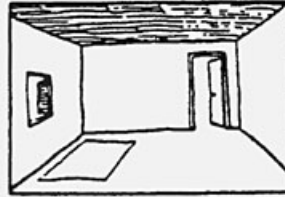
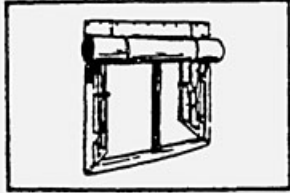
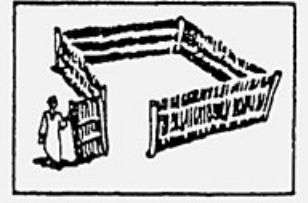
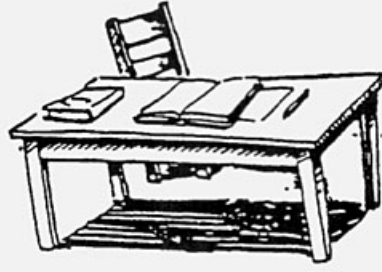
The possessive pronoun is used after the locative yaasi. All the nouns in the following exercise are replaced by pronouns.

### Exercise 19

Buuba 'don yaasi kanti.  
Gertogal 'don yaasi suudu.  
'Bii Buuba 'don yaasi jangirde.  
Nagge 'don haa yaasi waalde.  
Deftere 'don haa yaasi akootiru.  
Ndiyam 'don haa yaasi wawru.

O 'don yaasi maanga.  
Ngal 'don yaasi maaru.  
O 'don yaasi maare.  
Nge 'don haa yaasi maare.  
Nde 'don haa yaasi maaru.  
'Dam 'don haa yaasi maaru.

Ngewta



## LESSON 17

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 17, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 11 new vocabulary items
- operate the singular to plural changes for some human nouns.





## Dialogue

Buuba: Ndaa luumo 'Yoola.

*Here's the Yola market.*

John: Af! Wor'be e rew'be e  
'bikkoy e naye'en fuh  
'don 'do hande!

*Af! Men, women, children, old  
men, everyone's here today.*

B: Nonnon. Yim'be 'duu'd'be  
'don nyaama luumo 'Yoola.

*Right. Many people take part  
in the Yola market.*

J: Asee, 'be fuh naa  
'be Ful'be ko?

*They're not all Fulbe right?*

B: Ooho. Naa 'be fuh. Yim'be  
feere 'don dari, feere 'don  
sooda, feere 'don sorra.

*That's right. Not all (of them).  
Some people are standing,  
some buying, others selling.*

J: Yim'be man 'dume'en?

*What nationality are these people?*

B: Wo'b'be 'be Hawsa'en, wo'b'be  
'be Azbinko'en. Wo'b'be 'be  
Tuuranko'en e Amerika'en  
e Faransa'en.

*Some are Hausa and Tuareg people.  
Still others are English,  
American and French.*

J: Kay! Woodi coggu hande!

*My! There's some trading  
going on today!*

## Vocabulary

Af!: *an exclamation of surprise*

wor'be: plural of gorko

rew'be: plural of debbo

'bikkoy: plural of 'bingel

naye'en: plural of nayeejo

'duu'd'be: *many (humans)*

feere: *some, other*

sorrugo: *to sell*

'dume'en: plural of 'dumeejo

go'd'do, (pl.) wo'b'be: *a certain person, someone*

Hawsa'en: plural of Hawsaajo

Azbinkeejo, (pl.) Azbinko'en: *Tuareg person*

Tuurankeejo, (pl.) Tuuranko'en: *a European, often an English person*

Amerikaajo, (pl.) Amerika'en: *American person*

Faransaajo, (pl.) Faransa'en: *French person*

coggu (ngu): *bargaining, trading*

### 'Be class: human noun plurals

Let us begin with the end; that is, the ending. There are two common plural endings in Fulfulde which apply only to human nouns. They are:

-'be usually for singulars ending in -o

-en usually for singulars ending in -jo, (more rarely -o)

To repeat: these endings apply only to 'be class nouns.

In addition, for some 'be class nouns, the initial consonant of the noun changes in the plural.

Here is an outline of the general pattern for the initial consonant alternation in human nouns.

	'be plurals	'en plurals	
Singular nouns beginning with:	p change to	f in the plural	NO
	k —————	h	INITIAL
	d —————	r	CONSONANT
	c —————	s	CHANGE
	b —————	w	
	g —————	w or y	

OTHER INITIAL CONSONANTS DO NOT CHANGE

Although this page may assist you in learning the pattern for human noun plurals and initial consonant change, there are exceptions, variations, and irregularities in the system. For example:

mallumjo changes to mallum'en in the plural as you might expect, but -

pukaraajo changes to fukaraa'be where the initial consonant change fits the pattern, but the plural ending is irregular;

'bii, a variation of 'bi'd'do becomes 'bi'b'be in the plural.

All of this is not cause for despair. On the contrary, there is a simple solution. You should now and forever learn the plural of a noun when you learn the noun itself.

Here are some singular and plural nouns:

### Exercise 1

Singular	Plural
debbo	rew'be
gorko	wor'be
'bingel	'bikkoy
'bii, 'bi'd'do	'bi'b'be
maw'do	maw'be
ko'do	ho'b'be
Pullo	Ful'be
modibbo	modi'b'be
go'd'do	wo'b'be or yim'be
pukaraajo	fukaraa'be
nayeejo	naye'en
jawmu	jawmu'en
mallumjo	mallum'en
ndottiijo	ndotti'en
Hawsaajo	Hawsa'en
Amerikaaajo	Amerika'en
Tuurankeejo	Tuuranko'en
Faransaaajo	Faransa'en
Azbinkeejo	Azbinko'en

### Exercise 2 Additional Vocabulary

resugo: to put down, deposit

Here are some singular and plural sentences. These nouns take the -'be plural ending.

### Exercise 3

Modibbo 'don resa deftere.  
Debbo 'don motta.  
Gorko 'don huuwa.  
'Bi'd'do Abdullaahi 'don wolwa.  
Maw'do 'don janga.  
Ko'do 'don nyaama.  
Pullo 'don sooda nagge.  
Go'd'do 'don sorra nagge. (yim'be)  
Pukaraajo 'don winda.  
Gorko 'don resa hottollo.

Modi'b'be 'don resa deftere.  
Rew'be 'don motta.  
Wor'be 'don huuwa.  
'Bi'b'be Abdullaahi 'don wolwa.  
Maw'be 'don janga.  
Ho'b'be 'don nyaama.  
Ful'be 'don sooda nagge.  
Yim'be 'don sorra nagge.  
Fukaraa'be 'don winda.  
Wor'be 'don resa hottollo.

'Bingel and 'bii are exceptional.

'Bingel 'don 'daani.  
'Bii Saalihi 'don fija.

'Bikkoy 'don 'daani.  
'Bi'b'be Saalihi 'don fija.

### Exercise 4 Additional Vocabulary

yeccugo: *to tell*  
ngeccawol (ngol): *story*  
yarugo: *to drink*

These nouns take the -en plural ending.

### Exercise 5

Nayeejo 'don yecca ngeccawol.  
Mallumjo 'don resa akootiru.  
Ndottiijo 'don yecca ngeccawol.  
Jawmu ku'b'bir'dum 'don  
sorra ku'b'bir'dum.  
Hawsaajo 'don sooda puccu.  
Amerikaajo 'don yara ndiyam.  
Tuurankeejo 'don wara 'do.  
Faransaajo 'don resa akootiru.  
Azbinkeejo 'don yecca ngeccawol.

Naye'en 'don yecca ngeccawol.  
Mallum'en 'don resa akootiru.  
Ndotti'en 'don yecca ngeccawol.  
Jawmu'en ku'b'bir'dum 'don  
sorra ku'b'bir'dum.  
Hawsa'en 'don sooda puccu.  
Amerika'en 'don yara ndiyam.  
Tuuranko'en 'don wara 'do.  
Faransa'en 'don resa akootiru.  
Azbinko'en 'don yecca ngeccawol.

## Substitution drill

### Exercise 6

Amerika'en	'Be fuh naa 'be Ful'be ko?
Hawsa'en	'Be fuh naa 'be Amerika'en ko?
Tuuranko'en	'Be fuh naa 'be Hawsa'en ko?
Azbinko'en	'Be fuh naa 'be Tuuranko'en ko?
Faransa'en	'Be fuh naa 'be Azbinko'en ko?
rew'be	'Be fuh naa 'be Faransa'en ko?
wor'be	'Be fuh naa 'be rew'be ko?
'bikkoy	'Be fuh naa 'be wor'be ko?
Ful'be	'Be fuh naa 'be 'bikkoy ko?
	'Be fuh naa 'be Ful'be ko?

We have seen 'be used with fuh for clarification and emphasis. Here is another similar example using 'be.

Ho'b'be Buuba 'be Ful'be.

*Buba's guests are Fulbe.*

### Exercise 7 Additional Vocabulary

'beye'en: plural of 'dumeejo (similar to 'dume'en)

Here are some questions and answers for busybodies.

### Exercise 8

Ko'do Buuba 'dumeejo? (Pullo)	Ko'do Buuba 'dum Pullo.
Ho'b'be Buuba 'beye'en? (Ful'be)	Ho'b'be Buuba 'be Ful'be.
Ko'do Abdullaahi 'dumeejo? (Amerikaajo)	Ko'do Abdullaahi 'dum Amerikaajo.
Ho'b'be Abdullaahi 'beye'en? (Amerika'en)	Ho'b'be Abdullaahi 'be Amerika'en.
Ko'do Saalihi 'dumeejo? (Azbinkeejo)	Ko'do Saalihi 'dum Azbinkeejo.
Ho'b'be Saalihi 'beye'en? (Azbinko'en)	Ho'b'be Saalihi 'be Azbinko'en.

Go'd'do and wo'b'be or yim'be are used when the people referred to are not personally known by the speaker. As examples for this drill, we'll use an old friend, the negative supposition.

Wala go'd'do feere?  
*Is there no other person  
(no one else)?*

Aa'a, woodi Hawsaajo.  
*I don't agree, there is a Hausa.*

Wala wo'b'be feere?  
*Are there no other people?*

Aa'a, woodi Hawsa'en.  
*I don't agree, there are Hausas.*

Wala yim'be feere?  
*Are there no other people?*

Aa'a, woodi Hawsa'en.  
*I don't agree, there are Hausas.*

Here are some questions and answers:

### Exercise 9

Walaa go'd'do feere? (Faransaaajo)	Aa'a, woodi Faransaaajo.
Walaa yim'be feere? (Faransa'en)	Aa'a, woodi Faransa'en.
Walaa go'd'do feere? (Tuurankeejo)	Aa'a, woodi Tuurankeejo.
Walaa wo'b'be feere? (Tuuranko'en)	Aa'a, woodi Tuuranko'en.
Walaa go'd'do feere? (Hawsaaajo)	Aa'a, woodi Hawsaaajo.
Walaa yim'be feere? (Hawsa'en)	Aa'a, woodi Hawsa'en.

Here are some similar sentences using positive suppositions.

### Exercise 10

Woodi go'd'do feere? (pukaraajo)	Ooho, woodi pukaraajo.
Woodi wo'b'be feere? (fukaraa'be)	Ooho, woodi fukaraa'be.
Woodi go'd'do feere? (mallumjo)	Ooho, woodi mallumjo.
Woodi yim'be feere? (mallum'en)	Ooho, woodi mallum'en.
Woodi go'd'do feere? (ndottiijo)	Ooho, woodi ndottiijo.
Woodi wo'b'be feere? (ndotti'en)	Ooho, woodi ndotti'en.

### Exercise 11 Additional Vocabulary

laarugo: to look at

And, to end this lesson, here are some singular and plural sentences for the unselfconscious:

### Exercise 12

Debbo 'don laara gorko.	Rew'be 'don laara wor'be.
Maw'do 'don laara 'bingel.	Maw'be 'don laara 'bikkoy.
Mallumjo 'don laara pukaraajo.	Mallum'en 'don laara fukaraa'be.
Nayeejo 'don laara 'bii Saalihi.	Naye'en 'don laara 'bi'b'be Saalihi.
Ndottiijo 'don laara 'bi'd'do Saalihi.	Ndotti'en 'don laara 'bi'b'be Saalihi.
Ko'do Buuba 'don laara go'd'do.	Ho'b'be Buuba 'don laara yim'be.
Gorko 'don laara debbo.	Wor'be 'don laara rew'be.

### **Jangde timmunde**

Salaamu aleykum.  
Aleyka salaamu.  
A fini jam?  
Jam tawon.  
A waali jam?  
Jam.

Ndaa yim'be Pariya. 'Be 'don nyaama luumo hande fajiri. Sutura e Aa'i 'don laara nyamdu. Yim'be ladde boo nyaamataa luumo hande. 'Be nyaamataa luumo sey nyande Salaasa. Yim'be wuro fuh 'don wara haa luumo hande. 'Be 'don laara nyamdu fuh.

Sannu.

Sannu.

A nyalli jam?

Jam tawon.

Toy Buuba jonta? Buuba 'don 'do haa saare. Buuba bee Saalihu 'don resa hottollo bee ha'b'bere haa nder suudu.

Too, Usumaanu boo, 'dume o wa'data? O 'don yaha luumo?

Aa'a, Usumaanu bee Alim yahataa luumo tawon. 'Be 'don yaha jangirde, 'be warataa luumo sey kiiki'de. Jooni, 'be 'don janga, 'be 'don winda.

Ja'b'baama.

Mi ja'bi.

Use e warugo. A wari jam?

Jam tawon.

Sutura bee Zeynabu 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, 'be 'don 'do haa saare. 'Be fuh 'be 'don huuwa; 'be siwtataa sey caka naange.

'Be 'don una, 'be 'don defa: fajiri. Ndaa Sutura o 'don una yaasi suudu. Zeynabu boo 'don defa kombi koowaagol ton.

Too, useko, mi nani.

Ndaa suudu. Buuba e Saalihu 'don resa akootiru haa nder maaru.

Zeynabu 'don nyaama luumo jooni. Buuba yahataa haa maango sey kiiki'de.

## Ngewta



## LESSON 18

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 18, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 9 new vocabulary items
- operate noun plurals which end in -e
- recognize 'de class nouns
- use 'de appropriately as the pronoun for 'de class nouns.





### Dialogue

Saalihi: Use, Mary, ja'b'baama.  
A nyalli jam?

*Greetings, Mary, welcome. Good day to you.*

Mary: Jam tawon. Asee, woodi yim'be 'duu'd'be haa luumo hande.

*And to you. What a lot of people there are at the market today.*

S: Nonnon, ngam 'dum luumo Jum'baare.

*That's right, because this is the Friday market.*

M: Mhmm. Ndaa yim'be, 'be 'don sorra payan'de bee loo'de bee tummu'de. Yim'be feere 'don wuuwa luumo.

*Ah yes. See, there are some people selling cooking pots, pots for storing water, and calabashes. Others are sweeping the market.*

S: Nonnon. A 'don sooda go'd'dum hande naa Mary?

*Right. Are you buying something today, Mary?*

M: Ii, mi 'don sooda daage bee leese bee undu'de ngam saare.

*Yes, I'm buying mats and beds and pestles for the household.*

S: Too. Ndaa kare saare ton caka luumo. Min, mi hooti jooni. Sey yeeso kadi.

*I see. There are the household goods over there in the middle of the market. As for myself, I'm going home now. See you later then.*

M: Too, useko, sey yeeso.

*Fine, thank you, see you later.*

## Vocabulary

payan'de ('de): plural of fayande  
loonde (nde), pl. loo'de ('de): *water storage pot*  
tummu'de ('de): plural of tummude (nde)  
wuuwugo: *to sweep*  
ii: interchangeable with oohe in some localities  
daage ('de): plural of daago (ngo)  
leese ('de): plural of leeso (ngo)  
undu'de ('de): plural of undugal (ngal)  
ngam: *for, because of, because*  
caka: *middle, mid, center, in the middle of*  
min: *me, myself, an emphatic pronoun*

## 'De Class Nouns

'De class is one of the plural noun classes for non-human nouns ending in -e.

Examples are:                   loo'de ('de)  
                                      tummu'de ('de)  
                                      jaawle ('de)  
                                      ci'e ('de) and so on.

## Initial consonant alternations for non-human nouns.

Initial consonant alternations for the plurals of non-human nouns are, generally speaking, the opposite of those for the plurals of human nouns.

	<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>
Singular nouns	f	change to	p in the plural
beginning with:	h		k
	r		d
	s		c
	w		b or g
	y		g or j
	ng		g
	nj		j
	mb		b

## OTHER INITIAL CONSONANTS DO NOT CHANGE

Since consonants other than the initial consonant will sometimes also change in the plural, you should learn the plural of a noun when you learn the singular. We shall bring you up to date with this lesson and the next lesson. Thereafter, the plural of a noun will be given with the singular and you will have many opportunities to practice the changes involved.

"Uncountable" nouns like: water, guinea corn, butter, cotton and abstracts like: kingship, power, ability and love will not normally have plural forms.

## Exercise 1

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
loonde	loo'de
tummude	tummu'de
dammugal	dammu'de
fayande	payan'de
undugal	undu'de
'bokki	'boo'de
lekki, leggal	le'd'de
koroowal	koromje
maayo	maaje
jigaawal	jigaaje
gertogal	gertoo'de
jaawngal	jaawle
jungo	juu'de
luumo	luu'be
ha'b'bere	ka'b'be
deftere	defte
leeso	leese
daago	daage
ngesa	gese
wuro	gure
saare	ci'e
jangirde	jangir'de
	kare (kare is a plural 'de class noun, it has no singular)

## Exercise 2 Additional Vocabulary

maa  
ko                      or\*  
malla

maa boo  
koo boo              or, on the other hand\*

\*There are nuances of meaning for these words in other contexts, but for the sense of *or* in this lesson, the words are interchangeable.

The following questions are answered using the plural noun.

### Exercise 3

'Dum loonde naa maa boo loo'de?  
*Is it a water pot or water pots?*

'Dum loo'de.  
*They are water pots.*

'Dum tummude naa maa boo tummu'de?  
'Dum dammugal naa maa boo dammu'de?  
'Dum fayande naa maa boo payan'de?  
'Dum undugal naa maa boo undu'de?  
'Dum 'bokki naa maa boo 'boo'de?  
'Dum jungo naa maa boo juu'de?  
'Dum wuro naa maa boo gure?

'Dum tummu'de.  
'Dum dammu'de.  
'Dum payan'de.  
'Dum undu'de.  
'Dum 'boo'de.  
'Dum juu'de.  
'Dum gure.

### Exercise 4

'Dum lekki naa koo boo le'd'de?  
'Dum leggal naa koo boo le'd'de?  
'Dum koroowal naa koo boo koromje?  
'Dum maayo naa koo boo maaje?  
'Dum gertogal naa koo boo gertoo'de?  
'Dum jaawngal naa koo boo jaawle?  
'Dum jigaawal naa koo boo jigaaje?

'Dum le'd'de.  
'Dum le'd'de.  
'Dum koromje.  
'Dum maaje.  
'Dum gertoo'de.  
'Dum jaawle.  
'Dum jigaaje.

### Exercise 5

'Dum luumo naa malla luu'be?  
'Dum 'ha'b'bere naa malla ka'b'be?  
'Dum deftere naa malla defte?  
'Dum leeso naa malla leese?  
'Dum dsago naa malla daage?  
'Dum ngesa naa malla gese?  
'Dum saare naa malla ci'e?

'Dum luu'be.  
'Dum ka'b'be.  
'Dum defte.  
'Dum leese.  
'Dum daage.  
'Dum gese.  
'Dum ci'e.

Here is a drill in which things are fine, good, pretty, in good shape or comely, both in the singular and in the plural.

### Exercise 6

Lekki woo'di.  
Saare woo'di.  
Undugal woo'di.  
Fayande woo'di.  
Dammugal woo'di.  
Tummude woo'di.  
Loonde woo'di.  
Wuro woo'di.

Le'd'de woo'di.  
Ci'e woo'di.  
Undu'de woo'di.  
Payan'de woo'di.  
Dammu'de woo'di.  
Tummu'de woo'di.  
Loo'de woo'di.  
Gure woo'di.

In this drill everything is ugly, bad, rotten, out of shape, raunchy or gross, both singularly and in groups.

### Exercise 7

Wuro woo'daay.	Gure woo'daay.
Jigaawal woo'daay.	Jigaaje woo'daay.
Jaawngal woo'daay.	Jaawle woo'daay.
Gertogal woo'daay.	Gertoo'de woo'daay.
Maayo woo'daay.	Maaje woo'daay.
Koroowal woo'daay.	Koromje woo'daay.
Leggal woo'daay.	Le'd'de woo'daay.
Lekki woo'daay.	Le'd'de woo'daay.

And in this drill, things are okay in the singular and not okay in groups.

### Exercise 8

Jungo woo'di.	Juu'de woo'daay.
Saare woo'di.	Ci'e woo'daay.
Ngesa woo'di.	Gese woo'daay.
Daago woo'di.	Daage woo'daay.
Leeso woo'di.	Leese woo'daay.
Deftere woo'di.	Defte woo'daay.
Ha'b'bere woo'di.	Ka'b'be woo'daay.
Luumo woo'di.	Luu'be woo'daay.

Here are some singular and plural sentences.

### Exercise 9

Mi 'don roondi ha'b'bere.	Min 'don roondi ka'b'be.
O 'don roondi loonde.	'Be 'don roondi loo'de.
Gorko 'don roondi koroowal.	Wor'be 'don roondi koromje.
Debbo 'don roondi tummu'de.	Rew'be 'don roondi tummu'de.
'Bi'd'do Abdullaahi 'don roondi deftere.	'Bi'b'be 'don roondi tummu'de.
'Bii Saalihi 'don roondi leeso.	'Bi'b'be 'don roondi leese.

### Exercise 10

Jawmu fayande 'don sorra fayande.	Jawmu 'don roondi le 'don sorra payan'de.
Go'd'do 'don sorra undugal.	Yim' 'don roondi undu'de.
Debbo 'don sorra lekki.	Rev' 'don roondi le'd'de.
Nayeejo 'don sooda leggal.	Nay 'don roondi ta le'd'de.
'Bingel 'don sooda gertogal.	'Bikk 'don roondi a gertoo'de.
Amerikaaajo 'don sooda leeso.	Amerik 'don roondi sooda leese.

## Exercise 11

O 'don ma'b'ba dammugal.  
 Gorko 'don wa'da koroowal  
 Debbo 'don wuuwa saare.  
 Pullo 'don nyaama luumo.  
 Hawsaajo 'don huuwa haa ngesa.  
 Nayeejo 'don sooda jaawngal.  
 'Bingel 'don laara jigaawal.  
 Go'd'do 'don laara 'bokki.  
 Mi 'don laara maayo.  
 Pukaraajo 'don wuuwa jangirde.

'Be 'don ma'b'ba dammu'de.  
 Wor'be 'don wa'da koromje.  
 Rew'be 'don wuuwa ci'e.  
 Ful'be 'don nyaama luu'be.  
 Hawsaa'en 'don huuwa haa gese.  
 Naye'en 'don sooda jaawle.  
 'Bikkoy 'don laara jigaaje.  
 Yim'be 'don laara 'boo'de.  
 Min 'don laara maaje.  
 Fukaraa'be 'don wuuwa jangir'de.

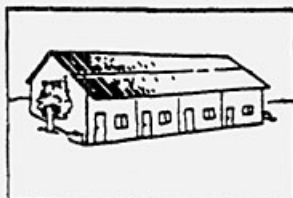
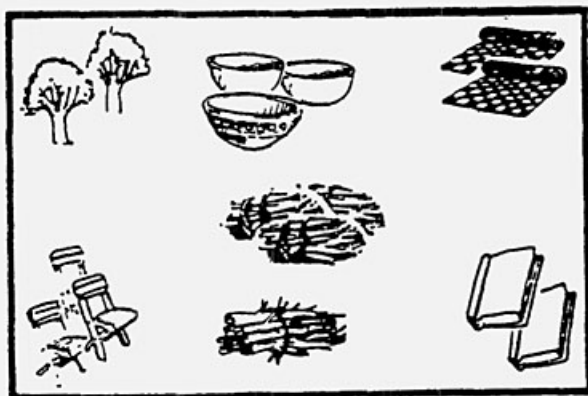
Replace the nouns in the following questions by the appropriate pronouns. Note that the singular pronoun is different from the plural pronoun.

## Exercise 12

Jaawngal woo'di naa?  
 Jaawle woo'di naa?  
 Loonde woo'di naa?  
 Loon'de woo'di naa?  
 Luumo woo'di naa?  
 Luu'be woo'di naa?  
 'Bokki woo'di naa?  
 'Boo'de woo'di naa?  
 Kare woo'di naa?

Ngal woo'di naa?  
 'De woo'di naa?  
 Nde woo'di naa?  
 'De woo'di naa?  
 Ngo woo'di naa?  
 'De woo'di naa?  
 Ki woo'di naa?  
 'De woo'di naa?  
 'De woo'di naa?

## Ngewta

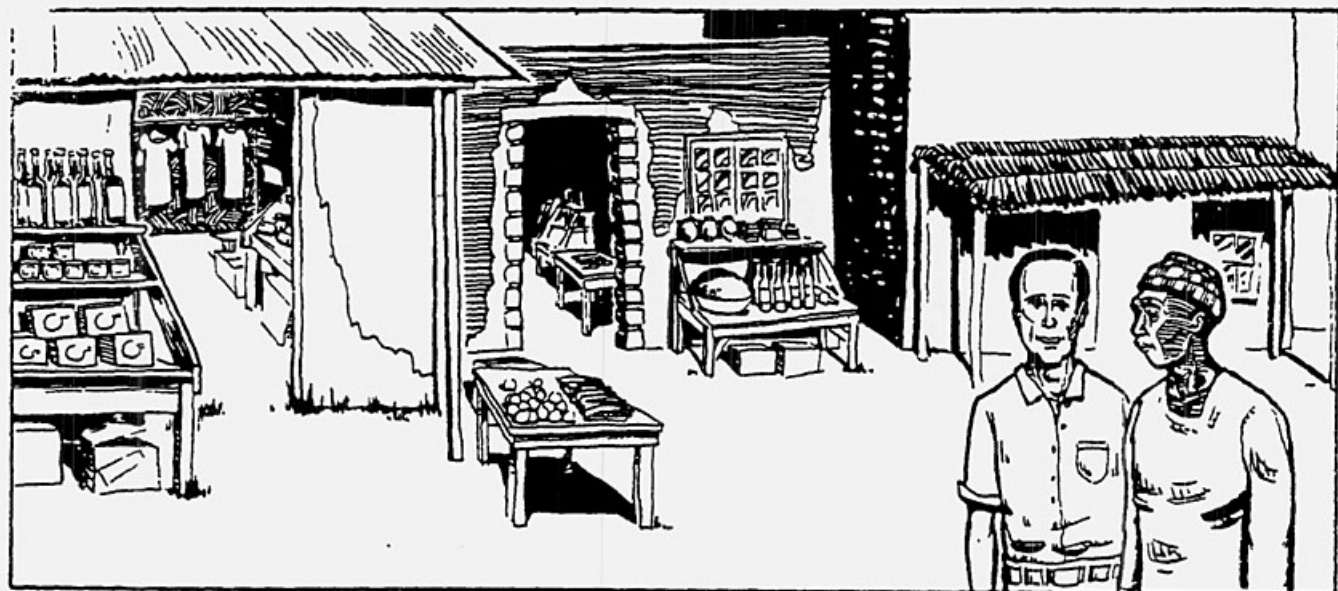


## LESSON 19

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 19, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 7 new vocabulary items
- operate the noun plurals which end in -i
- recognize 'di class nouns
- use 'di appropriately as the pronoun for 'di class nouns.



### Dialogue

Buuba: Sannu, John, a waali jam?

*Greetings.*

John: Jam tawon.

B: A fini jam?

J: Jam koo'dume.

B: Noy saare?

*How's your household?*

J: Jam ni tawon.

*Fine for the moment.*

B: Too, boo'd'dum. Ndaa kantiiji  
Pariya. Ndaa mootaaaji poy!

*That's good. There are the shops of  
Pariya. And there are very many  
cars!*

J: Asee, woodi kuuje feere  
feere 'do!

*Say, there are various things  
here!*

B: Nonnon. Teburji, kolobaaaji,  
ngapaleeji, akootiiji fuh  
'don 'do.

*You're right. Tables, bottles, gowns,  
boxes; all are here.*

J: An boo, toy a yahata?

*And you, where are you going?*

B: Min boo kam, mi 'don yaha  
luumo. Mi 'don yaha haa  
jawmu'en bee'i bee baali  
bee na'i.

*As for me, I'm off to the market.  
I'm going to the men with goats  
and sheep and cattle.*

J: Too. Allah hokku on jam.

*I see. May Allah give you (and  
your family) peace.*

B: Aamiina.

*Amen.*



## Vocabulary

noy saare?: *how's your household?, a greeting*  
jam ni tawon: *fine for the moment, a response to a greeting*  
ni, ni'i: *thus (= non)*  
kantiiji ('di): *plural of kanti (nga)*  
feere feere: *various*  
teburji ('di): *plural of tebur (nga)*  
kolobaaaji ('di): *plural of koloba (ndu)*  
ngapaleeji ('di): *plural of ngapaleewol (ngol)*  
akootiiji ('di): *plural of akootiru (ndu)*  
an: *you, an emphatic pronoun*  
bee'i ('di): *plural of mbeewa (nga)*  
baali ('di): *plural of mbaala (nga)*  
na'i ('di): *plural of nagge (nge)*  
mootaaji ('di): *plural of moota (nga)*  
Allah hokku on jam: *May Allah give you (pl.) peace*  
Aamiina: *Amen*

## 'Di Class Nouns

'Di class is another plural noun class for non-human nouns.

The other common plural ending for non-human nouns is:

-i, often appearing as -ji or 'di.

The noun class for all plural non-human nouns ending in -i is the 'di class.

Examples are:     teburji ('di)  
                      li'd'di ('di)  
                      colli ('di), and so on.

In general, singular nouns ending in:

-ol (ngol class) take the plural ending i, ji, or 'di  
-u (ngu, ndu classes) take the plural ending i, ji, or 'di  
-a (nga class) take the plural ending i, ji, or 'di

The rules for the initial consonant changes of these nouns are the same as the ones presented in the last lesson. Remember that, because of variations in the endings, you should learn the plural of a noun when you learn the singular.

Here are -i plurals for nouns you have already learned.

Exercise 1

Singular

piiroowal  
tebur  
'dereewol  
pataakewol  
koloba  
ngapaleewol  
akootiru  
soorowol  
kanti  
moota  
suudu  
mbulku

nagge  
mbeewa  
puccu  
mbaala  
ngabbu  
sondu  
liingu

Plural

piirooji  
teburji  
'dereoji  
pataakeeji  
kolobaaji  
ngapaleeji  
akootiiji  
soorooji  
kantiji  
mootaaji  
cuu'di  
bulki

na'i  
bee'i  
pucci  
baali  
gabbi  
colli  
li'd'di

Exercise 2

Singular

Toy tebur?  
Ndaa tebur.  
Toy 'dereewol?  
Ndaa 'dereewol.  
'Dum pataakewol moy?  
'Dum pataakewol modibbo.  
'Dum koloba moy?  
'Dum koloba Zeynabu.

Plural

Toy teburji?  
Ndaa teburji.  
Toy 'dereoji?  
Ndaa 'dereoji.  
'Dum pataakeeji moy?  
'Dum pataakeeji modibbo.  
'Dum kolobaaji moy?.  
'Dum kolobaaji Zeynabu.

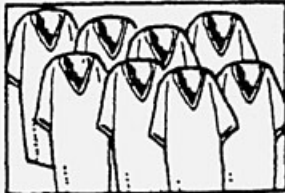
### Exercise 3

1.



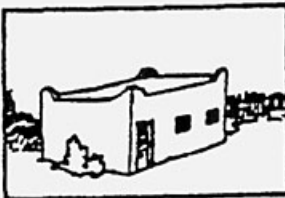
Woodi ngapaleewol naa? Ooho, woodi ngapaleewol.  
Woodi akootiru naa kadi? Aa'a, wala akootiru kam.

2.



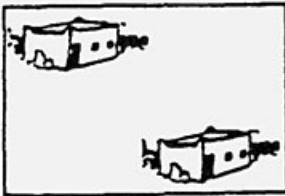
Woodi ngapaleeji naa? Ooho, woodi ngapaleeji.  
Woodi akootiiji naa? Aa'a, wala akootiiji kam.

3.



Woodi soorowol naa? Ooho, woodi soorowol.  
Woodi kanti naa kadi? Aa'a, wala kanti kam.

4.



Woodi sooroji naa? Ooho, woodi sooroji.  
Woodi kantiji naa kadi? Aa'a, wala kantiji kam.

### Exercise 4

Singular

'Dum mootaa naa?  
'Dum suudu naa?  
'Dum mbulku naa?  
'Dum ngabbu naa?  
'Dum sondu naa?

Ooho, 'dum mootaa.  
Ooho, 'dum suudu.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum mbulku.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum ngabbu.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum sondu.

Plural

'Dum mootaaaji naa?  
'Dum cuu'di naa?  
'Dum bulki naa?  
'Dum gabbi naa?  
'Dum colli naa?

Ooho, 'dum mootaaaji.  
Ooho, 'dum cuu'di.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum bulki.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum gabbi.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum colli.

### Exercise 5

#### Singular

'Dum nagge Gi'daa'do naa?  
'Dum mbeewa Buuba naa?  
'Dum puccu Saalihu naa?  
'Dum mbaala Yaakubu naa?  
'Dum liingu Alim naa?

Ooho, 'dum nagge Gi'daa'do.  
Ooho, 'dum mbeewa Buuba.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum puccu Saalihu.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum mbaala Yaakubu.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum liingu Alim.

#### Plural

'Dum na'i Gi'daa'do naa?  
'Dum bee'i Buuba naa?  
'Dum pucci Saalihu naa?  
'Dum baali Yaakubu naa?  
'Dum li'd'di Alim naa?

Ooho, 'dum na'i Gi'daa'do.  
Ooho, 'dum bee'i Buuba.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum pucci Saalihu.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum baali Yaakubu.  
Aa'a, naa 'dum li'd'di Alim.

### Exercise 6 Additional Vocabulary

he'bugo: *to obtain, to get, to attain*

marugo: *to possess, to have*

Here are some singular and plural sentences:

### Exercise 7

Mi 'don mara nagge.  
Mi 'don mara mbeewa.  
Mi 'don mara puccu.  
A 'don he'ba mootaa.  
A 'don he'ba suudu.  
A 'don he'ba kanti.

Min 'don mara na'i.  
Min 'don mara bee'i.  
Min 'don mara pucci.  
On 'don he'ba mootaaaji.  
On 'don he'ba cuu'di.  
On 'don he'ba kantiiji.

### Exercise 8

O marataa mbaala.  
O he'bataa ngapaleewol.  
O marataa tebur.  
Mi he'bataa pataakewol.  
A marataa koloba.  
O he'bataa mbulku.

'Be marataa baali.  
'Be he'bataa ngapaleeji.  
'Be marataa teburji.  
Min he'bataa pataakeeji.  
On marataa kolobaaji.  
'Be he'bataa bulki.

### Exercise 9

'Dume o marata? (nagge)	O 'don mara nagge.
'Dume 'be marata? (na'i)	'Be 'don mara na'i.
'Dume o he'bata? (suudu)	O 'don he'ba suudu.
'Dume 'be he'bata? (cuu'di)	'Be 'don he'ba cuu'di.
'Dume o marata? (mbeewa)	O 'don mara mbeewa.
'Dume 'be marata? (bee'i)	'Be 'don mara bee'i.
'Dume o he'bata? (puccu)	O 'don he'ba puccu.
'Dume 'be he'bata? (pucci)	'Be 'don he'ba pucci.

All the nouns in the following exercise are replaced by the appropriate pronouns. Again, note that the singular pronoun is different from the plural pronoun.

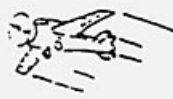
### Exercise 10

Buuba 'don laara ngabbu.	O 'don laara ngu.
Zeynabu 'don laara sondu.	O 'don laara ndu.
Alim 'don laara liingu.	O 'don laara ngu.
Buuba bee Usumaanu 'don laara gabbi.	'Be 'don laara 'di.
Zeynabu bee Sutura 'don laara colli.	'Be 'don laara 'di.
Alim e Usumaanu 'don laara li'd'di.	'Be 'don laara 'di.

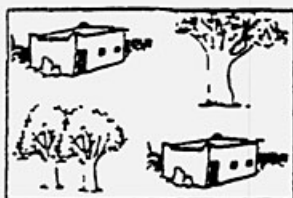
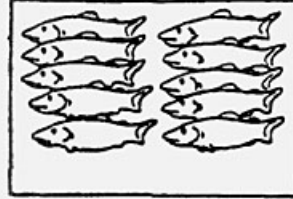
In the next exercise, 'de class and 'di class nouns are mixed. Here are some questions and their negative answers. The answers use pronouns in place of all the nouns.

### Exercise 11

Alim 'don he'ba li'd'di naa?	Aa'a. o he'bataa 'di.
Buuba 'don mara ci'e naa?	Aa'a, o marataa 'de.
Rew'be 'don he'ba undu'de naa?	Aa'a, 'be he'bataa 'de.
Wor'be 'don mara na'i naa?	Aa'a, 'be marataa 'di.
Yim'be 'don he'ba gese naa?	Aa'a, 'be he'bataa 'de.
Yim'be 'don mara teburji naa?	Aa'a, 'be marataa 'di.



Ngewta



## LESSON 20

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 20, the student will be able to:

-identify and correctly use 9 new vocabulary items

-use the locative constructions:

yeeso  
'baawo  
haa yeeso  
haa 'baawo  
hakkunde

in asking and answering questions

-use possessive pronouns with these constructions

-use the newly introduced possessive pronouns:

maaje  
maaji  
maako  
ma'b'be



### Dialogue

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Usumaanu: Baaba, ndaa jangirde.   | <i>Father, here's the school.</i>  |
| Buuba: Jangirde man woo'di!   | <i>That's a fine school!</i>   |
| U: Ndaa Mallum Abdullaahi. O 'don dari haa yeeso fukaraa'be.  | <i>There's Mallum Abdullahi. He's standing in front of the pupils.</i>   |
| B: Nonnon. Ndaa defte kadi yeeso fukaraa'be. 'Be 'don janga naa?  | <i>Just so. And there are books in front of the pupils. Are they reading?</i>  |
| U: Nonnon, baaba. 'Be 'don ekkita jangde. Ndaa alluha makka haa 'baawo mallumjo. Mallum Abdullaahi 'don hakkunde alluha makka bee fukaraa'be jooni. | <i>That's right, father. They are learning to read. And there's a blackboard in back of the teacher. Now, Mallum Abdullahi is between the blackboard and the students.</i> |
| B: A'a! 'Dum sawru naa haa jungo mallumjo?  | <i>Hey! Is that a stick in the teacher's hand?</i>   |
| U: Ooho, o 'don jogi sawru.   | <i>Yes, he's holding a stick.</i>  |

### Vocabulary

- yeeso (ngo): *face, front*  
 yeeso, haa yeeso: *in front of, in front, at the front of*  
 ekkitugo: *to learn*  
 jangde (nde): *reading*  
 alluna (ka): *board*  
 alluha makka: *blackboard*  
 'baawo (ngo): *the back*  
 'baawo, haa 'baawo: *in back of, behind, in the rear*  
 A'a!: *an exclamation of surprise (distinguish from aa'a - no)*



Additional Vocabulary

hu'b'birde (nde), ku'b'bir'de ('de): *place designated for a cooking fire*

Either haa yeeso or yeeso alone can be used to mean *in front of*.

Exercise 1

Nayeejo 'don haa yeeso kanti.  
Undugal 'don haa yeeso soorowol.  
Ndottiijo 'don haa yeeso moota.

Gertogal 'don yeeso 'bokki.  
Mallumjo 'don yeeso pukaraajo.  
Hu'b'birde 'don yeeso suudu.

And either haa 'baawo or 'baawo alone can mean *in back of* or *behind*.

Exercise 2

Gertogal 'don haa 'baawo 'bokki.  
Mallumjo 'don haa 'baawo pukaraajo.  
Hu'b'birde 'don haa 'baawo suudu.

Nayeejo 'don 'baawo kanti.  
Undugal 'don 'baawo soorowol.  
Ndottiijo 'don 'baawo moota.

Here are some questions with answers using haa yeeso or haa 'baawo.

Exercise 3

1.



Toy nayeejo?

Nayeejo 'don haa yeeso kanti.

2.



Toy nayeejo?

Nayeejo 'don haa 'baawo kanti.

3.



Toy ndottiijo?

Ndottiijo 'don haa yeeso moota.

4.



Toy ndottiijo?

Ndottiijo 'don haa 'baawo moota.

5.



Toy mallumjo?

Mallumjo 'don haa yeeso pukaraajo.

6.



Toy mallumjo?

Mallumjo 'don haa 'baawo pukaraajo.

#### Exercise 4

Singular

hu'b'birde  
undugal  
gertogal  
koroowal

Plural

ku'b'bir'de  
undu'de  
gertoo'de  
koromje

Here are some questions with answers using yeeso and 'baawo.

#### Exercise 5

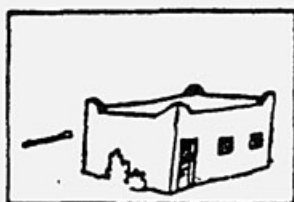
1.



Toy undugal?

Undugal 'don yeeso soorowol.

2.



Toy undugal?

Undugal 'don 'baawo  
soroowol.

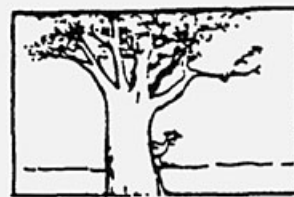
3.



Toy gertogal?

Gertogal 'don yeeso 'bokki.

4.



Toy gertogal?

Gertogal 'don 'baawo  
'bokki.

5.



Toy hu'b'birde?

Hu'b'birde 'don yeeso suudu.

6.



Toy hu'b'birde?

Hu'b'birde 'don 'baawo  
suudu.

Here are some singular and plural sentences

### Exercise 6

Nayeejo 'don haa 'baawo kanti.  
Ndottiijo 'don haa yeeso lekki.  
Mallumjo 'don haa 'baawo pukaraajo.  
Undugal 'don haa yeeso soorowol.  
Gertogal 'don haa 'baawo 'bokki.  
Koroowal 'don haa yeeso suudu.  
Hu'b'birde 'dum haa 'baawo kanti.

Naye'en 'don haa 'baawo kantiiji.  
Ndotti'en 'don haa yeeso le'd'de.  
Mallum'en 'don haa 'baawo fukaraa'be.  
Undu'de 'don haa yeeso soorooji.  
Gertoo'de 'don haa 'baawo boo'de.  
Koromje 'don haa yeeso cuu'di.  
K u'b'bir'de 'don haa 'baawo kantiiji.

Hakkunde means *between*.

Exercise 7

Mallumjo 'don hakkunde alluha makka bee fukaraa'be.  
Koroowal 'don hakkunde suudu bee lekki.  
Buuba 'don hakkunde Zeynabu bee Usumaanu.  
Gertogal 'don hakkunde mbeewa bee nagge.  
Wuro Chicago 'don hakkunde New York bee Los Angeles.  
Wuro Accra 'don hakkunde Dakar bee Lagos.  
Hu'b'birde 'don hakkunde soorowol bee 'bokki.

Here are some questions and answers:

Exercise 8

1.



Mallumjo 'don haa  
toy?

Mallumjo 'don hakkunde  
alluha makka bee  
fukaraa'be.

2.



Koroowal 'don haa  
toy?

Koroowal 'don hakkunde  
suudu bee lekki.

3.



Buuba 'don haa toy?

Buuba 'don hakkunde  
Zeynabu bee  
Usumaanu.

4.



Gertogal 'don haa  
toy?

Gertogal 'don hakkunde  
mbeewa bee nagge.

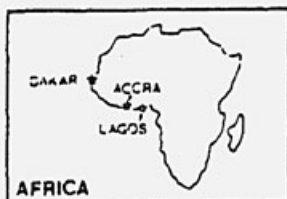
5.



Wuro Chicago 'don  
haa toy?

Wuro Chicago 'don  
hakkunde New York  
bee Los Angeles.

6.



Wuro Accra 'don haa  
toy?

Wuro Accra 'don hakkunde  
Dakar bee Lagos.

7.



Hu'b'birde 'don haa  
toy?

Hu'b'birde 'don hakkunde  
soorowol bee 'bokki.

The noun subjects in the following sentences are replaced by subject pronouns.

### Exercise 9

Nayeejo 'don haa 'baawo kanti.  
Mallum'en 'don 'baawo fukaraa'be.  
Koroowal 'don haa yeeso suudu.  
Undu'de 'don yeeso soorooji.  
Tummu'de 'don hakkunde cuu'di  
bee le'd'de.  
Buuba 'don hakkunde Zeynabu bee  
Usumaanu.

O 'don haa 'baawo kanti.  
'Be 'don 'baawo fukaraa'be.  
Ngal 'don haa yeeso suudu.  
'De 'don yeeso soorooji.  
'De 'don hakkunde cuu'di  
bee le'd'de.  
O 'don hakkunde Zeynabu bee  
Usumaanu.

Yeeso, 'baawo and hakkunde are locatives; and, as you have seen, when a pronoun follows a locative, the possessive form is used.

Nayeejo 'don haa yeeso kanti.  
Undugal 'don haa 'baawo soorowol.  
Gertogal 'don hakkunde mbeewa  
bee nagge.

Nayeejo 'don haa yeeso maanga.  
Undugal 'don haa 'baawo maangol.  
Gertogal 'don hakkunde maanga  
bee maange.

Here are the possessive pronouns for non-human plurals and for the third person human nouns.

### Exercise 10

Noun class

Possessive pronoun

'de  
'di  
o  
'be

maaje  
maaji  
maako  
ma'b'be

## Substitution drill

### Exercise 11

gertoo'de	bee maare
kolobaaaji	bee maaje
gorko	bee maaji
wor'be	bee maako
gertogal	bee ma'b'be
koloba	bee maangal
koromje	bee maaru
cuu'di	bee maaje
debbo	bee maaji
rew'be	bee maako
li'd'di	bee ma'b'be
liingu	bee maaji
juu'de	bee maangu
jungo	bee maaje
defte	bee maango
deftere	bee maaje
	bee maare

All the nouns in the following sentences are changed into the appropriate pronouns.

### Exercise 12

Modibbo 'don haa 'baawo kantiji.  
Ndotti'en 'don haa yeeso le'd'de.  
Mallumjo 'don haa 'baawo pukaraajo.  
'Bingel 'don haa 'baawo rew'be.

O 'don haa 'baawo maaji.  
'Be 'don haa yeeso maaje.  
O 'don haa 'baawo maako.  
O 'don haa 'baawo ma'b'be.

Gorko 'don yeeso debbo.  
Rew'be 'don 'baawo wor'be.  
Koromje 'don yeeso cuu'di.  
Gertoo'de 'don 'baawo boo'de.

O 'don yeeso maako.  
'Be 'don 'baawo ma'b'be.  
'De 'don yeeso maaji.  
'De 'don 'baawo maaje.

When hakkunde is involved, one plural pronoun will usually suffice. Replace all the nouns by the appropriate pronouns.

### Exercise 13

'Bingel 'don hakkunde gorko bee debbo.  
Gertogal 'don hakkunde mbeewa bee nagge.  
Undugal 'don hakkunde suudu 'bee soorowol.  
Nayeejo 'don hakkunde wor'be bee rew'be.  
Luumo 'don hakkunde saare bee ngesa.

O 'don hakkunde ma'b'be.  
Ngal 'don hakkunde maaji.  
Ngal 'don hakkunde maaji.  
O 'don hakkunde ma'b'be.  
Ngo 'don hakkunde maaje.

## Jangde timmunde

Ndaa saare Saalihi.  
Jawmu saare 'don dari les 'bokki. Woodi jigaaje dow 'bokki.  
Debbo Saalihi 'don joo'di dow koroowal.  
Ndaa hu'b'birde haa yeeso debbo Muusa.  
Woodi tummu'de haa les hakkunde debbo man bee jawmu saare.  
Haa fahin woodi unordu 'baawo debbo Muusa.

Jawmu saare 'don haa toy?  
O 'don dari les 'bokki.

Woodi jigaaje ton?  
Ooho, woodi jigaaje dow 'bokki man.

Debbo Muusa 'don 'do naa?  
Ooho, o 'don. Ndaa, o 'don joo'di dow koroowal.  
Woodi hu'b'birde naa?  
Ooho, woodi hu'b'birde haa yeeso debbo man.

Toy tummu'de?  
Tummu'de 'don haa les, hakkunde debbo bee gorko.

Haa fahin, woodi unordu naa?  
Ooho, woodi unordu 'baawo debbo Muusa.

'Dume 'do kombi tummude?  
'Dum undugal debbo Muusa.  
'Dume ton haa yaasi suudu debbo man?  
'Dum gertoo'de Saalihi on.  
Too. Useko.

## Ngewta



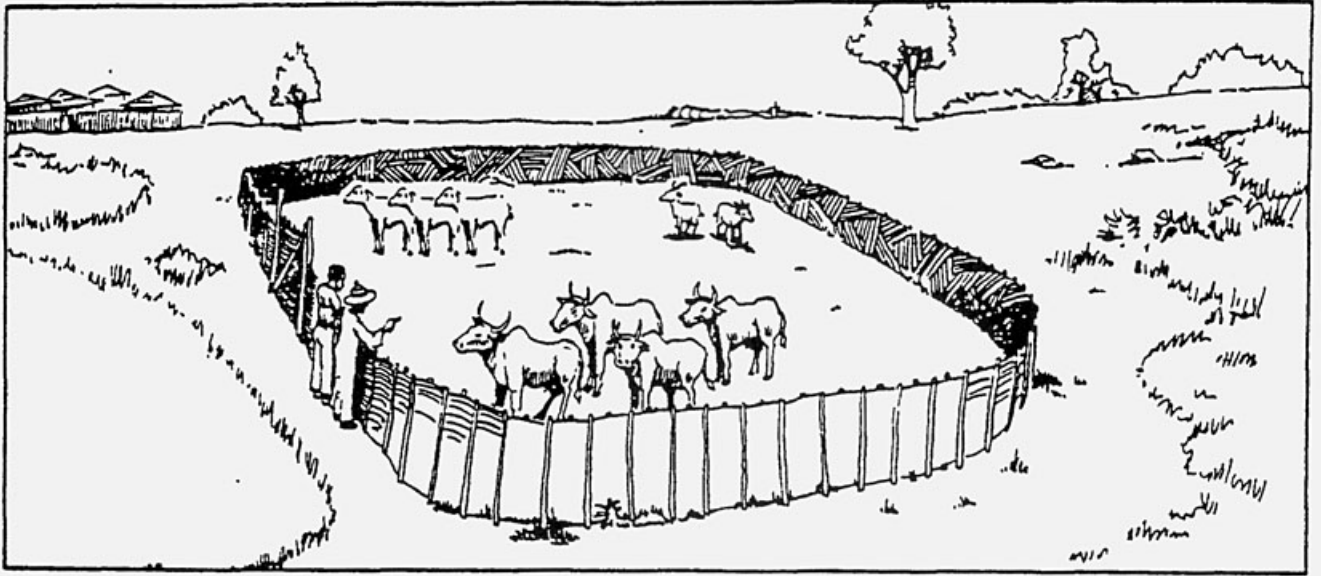
## LESSON 21

### Objectives

After completing Lesson21, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 18 new vocabulary items
- count from one to ten
- use the numbers one to ten and their appropriate endings both with human and with non-human nouns.





### Dialogue

Saalihu: Use, John.

*Greetings.*

John: Useko.

S: Noy comri?

*How's the fatigue?*

J: Koy'dum.

*Not too bad.*

S: Noy saare?

J: Jam tawon.

S: Too. Ndaa waalde Buuba.

*Good. Here is Buba's corral.*

J: Buuba woodi dabbaaji noy?

*How many animals does Buba have?*

S: Buuba woodi dabbaaji joweenayi.  
O woodi na'i nayi, bee baali  
tati bee bee'i 'di'di.

*Buba has nine animals. He has  
four cows, three sheep  
and two goats.*

J: Mi nani. Amma woodi 'yamol  
feere Saalihu. Buuba woodi  
'bi'b'be noy?

*I see. I have another question,  
Salihu. How many children  
does Buba have?*

S: O woodi 'bi'b'be tato.  
Usumaanu bee Sutura bee  
Adamu. Amma o woodi debbo  
gooto tan.

*He has three children.  
Usumanu, Sutura and Adamu.  
But he only has one wife.*

J: Too. Useko.

*I see. Thanks.*

## Vocabulary

koy'dum: *easy, not too bad*, a greeting response  
ndabbawa (nga), dabbaaji ('di): *domestic animal*  
noy?: *how many?*  
'yamol (ngol), 'yami ('di): *question*  
tan: *only*  
laamii'be ('be): *pl. of laamii'do*  
joweenayi: *nine*  
nayi: *four*  
tati: *three*  
'di'di: *two*  
tato: *three (persons)*  
gooto: *one (person)*

## Counting

The Fulfulde counting system is based on five and on ten. Thus the number six is "five plus one," seven is "five plus two," etc. through nine. This is how you count to ten.

### Exercise 1

- 1 — go'o, gootel
- 2 — 'di'di
- 3 — tati
- 4 — nayi
- 5 — jowi
- 6 — joweego
- 7 — jowee'di'di
- 8 — joweetati
- 9 — joweenayi
- 10 — sappo

### Exercise 2 Additional Vocabulary

mbaaloy (koy): *plural of baa'el (ngel)*

With this lesson we are introducing the *koy* noun class. *Koy* is the plural noun class for *ngel* class nouns. Another *koy* class noun you know is 'bikkoy (*koy*). For a summary of the Fulfulde noun class system, refer to Appendix A.

When numerals modify a noun, they always follow the noun modified. Here are some examples with non-human nouns.

Exercise 3

baalel gootel  
 mbaaloy 'di'di  
 bee'i tati  
 na'i nayi  
 pucci jowi  
 baali joweego  
 kuuje jowee'di'di  
 ngapaleeji joweetati  
 kolobaaaji joweenayi  
 cuu'di sappo

Here are some questions and answers

Exercise 4

1.



'Dum mbaaloy noy?

'Dum baalel gootel.

2.



'Dum dabbaaji noy?

'Dum dabbaaji 'di'di.

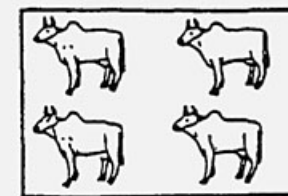
3.



'Dum bee'i noy?

'Dum bee'i tati.

4.



'Dum na'i noy?

'Dum na'i nayi.

5.



'Dum pucci noy?

'Dum pucci jowi.

6.



'Dum baali noy?

'Dum baali joweego.

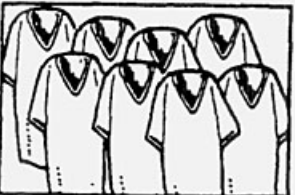
7.



'Dum kuuje noy?

'Dum kuuje jowee'di'di.

8.



'Dum ngapaleeji noy?

'Dum ngapaleeji joweetati.

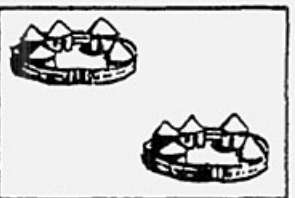
9.



'Dum kolobaaji noy?

'Dum kolobaaji joweenayi.

10.



'Dum cuu'di noy?

'Dum cuu'di sappo.

With human nouns, numerals take the -o human ending in both the singular and plural.

### Exercise 5

ndottiijo gooto  
laamii'be 'di'do  
rew'be tato  
wor'be nayo  
'bi'b'be jowo  
ho'b'be joweego'

maw'be jowee'di'do  
'bikkoy joweetato  
naye'en joweenayo  
mallum'en sappo

Exercise 6

1.



'Dum ndotti'en noy?

'Dum ndottiijo gooto.

2.



'Dum laamii'be noy?

'Dum laamii'be 'di'do.

3.



'Dum rew'be noy?

'Dum rew'be tato.

4.



'Dum wor'be noy?

'Dum wor'be nayo.

5.



'Dum 'bi'b'be noy?

'Dum 'bi'b'be jowo.

6.



'Dum ho'b'be noy?

'Dum ho'b'be joweego'o.

7.



'Dum maw'be noy?

'Dum maw'be jowee'di'do.

8.



'Dum 'bikkoy noy?

'Dum 'bikkoy joweetato.

9.



'Dum naye'en noy?

'Dum naye'en joweenayo.

10.



'Dum mallum'en noy?

'Dum mallum'en sappo.

And now, let's do some addition. Here is one way to do addition in Fulfulde.

Go'o bee go'o noy?  
'Dum 'di'di.

*How much are 1 + 1?  
(They are) 2.*

### Exercise 7

Go'o bee go'o noy?  
'Di'di bee 'di'di noy?  
Tati bee tati noy?  
Nayi bee nayi noy?  
Jowi bee jowi noy?

'Dum 'di'di.  
'Dum nayi.  
'Dum joweego.  
'Dum joweetati.  
'Dum sappo.

And now, multiplication.

### Exercise 8

Additional Vocabulary nde: *times (multiplication)*

'Di'di nde go'o noy?  
'Dum 'di'di.

*How much are 2 times 1?  
(They are) 2.*

'Di'di nde go'o noy?  
'Di'di nde 'di'di noy?  
'Di'di nde tati noy?  
'Di'di nde nayi noy?  
'Di'di nde jowi noy?

'Dum 'di'di.  
'Dum nayi.  
'Dum joweego.  
'Dum joweetati.  
'Dum sappo.

Tati nde go'o noy?  
Tati nde 'di'di noy?  
Tati nde tati noy?

'Dum tati.  
'Dum joweego.  
'Dum joweenayi.

## One

The number one in Fulfulde agrees with the noun it modifies according to the noun class system of concord. In certain areas, Fulfulde speakers simply use *gootel* for every noun class, but in Adamawa, "one" is in agreement with the noun. Subsequent numbers, however, remain unchanged.

Here are the words for "one" for the non-human noun classes most likely to be used. Ko, 'dam, ndi, 'de, 'di and koy class nouns are not apt to appear with the number one.

### Exercise 9

Noun class	One
nde	woore
ngal	gootal
nge	woote
ngu	ngootu
ndu	wooru
ka	ngoota
nga	ngoota
ngo	wooto
ngol	gootol
ki	ngooti
ngel	gootel

### Exercise 10 Additional Vocabulary

woodi: have

In addition to meaning *there is* or *there are*, woodi may be used with a noun or pronoun to mean *have*.

Mi woodi suudu wooru.

*I have one house.*

Here are some questions and answers using *one*.

### Exercise 11

Defte noy a mari?  
Koromje noy a mari?  
Na'i noy a mari?  
Pucci noy a mari?  
Cuu'di noy a mari?  
Bee'i noy a mari?  
Gese noy a mari?  
Daage noy a mari?  
Soorooji noy a mari?  
Le'd'de noy a mari?  
Mbaaloy noy a mari?

Mi woodi deftere woore.  
Mi woodi koroowal gootal.  
Mi woodi nagge woote.  
Mi woodi puccu ngootu.  
Mi woodi suudu wooru.  
Mi woodi mbeewa ngoota.  
Mi woodi ngesa ngoota.  
Mi woodi daago wooto.  
Mi woodi soorowol gootol.  
Mi woodi lekki ngooti.  
Mi woodi baalel gootel.

## Substitution drill

### Exercise 12

koroowal  
nagge  
puccu  
suudu  
mbeewa  
ngesa  
daago  
soorowol  
lekki  
baalel  
deftere

Mi woodi deftere woore.  
Mi woodi koroowal gootal.  
Mi woodi nagge woote.  
Mi woodi puucu ngootu.  
Mi woodi suudu wooru.  
Mi woodi mbeewa ngoota.  
Mi woodi ngesa ngoota.  
Mi woodi daago wooto.  
Mi woodi soorowol gootol.  
Mi woodi lekki ngooti.  
Mi woodi baalel gootel.  
Mi woodi deftere woore.

### **Jangde timmunde**

Gorko gooto bee gorko gooto 'dum wor'be 'di'do.  
Nagge woote bee nagge woote 'dum na'i 'di'di.

Debbo gooto bee wor'be 'di'do 'dum yim'be tato.  
'Bingel gooto bee 'bikkoy tato 'dum 'bikkoy nayo.

Puccu ngootu bee mbeewa ngoota 'dum dabbaaji 'di'di.  
Mbeewa ngoota bee baalel gootel 'dum dabbaaji 'di'di.

Baalel gootel bee baalel gootel 'dum mbaaloy 'di'di.  
Suudu wooru bee suudu wooru 'dum cuu'di 'di'di.

Koroowal gootal bee daago wooto 'dum kuuje 'di'di.

Buuba woodi ngesa ngoota.  
Ndottiijo woodi lekki ngooti.

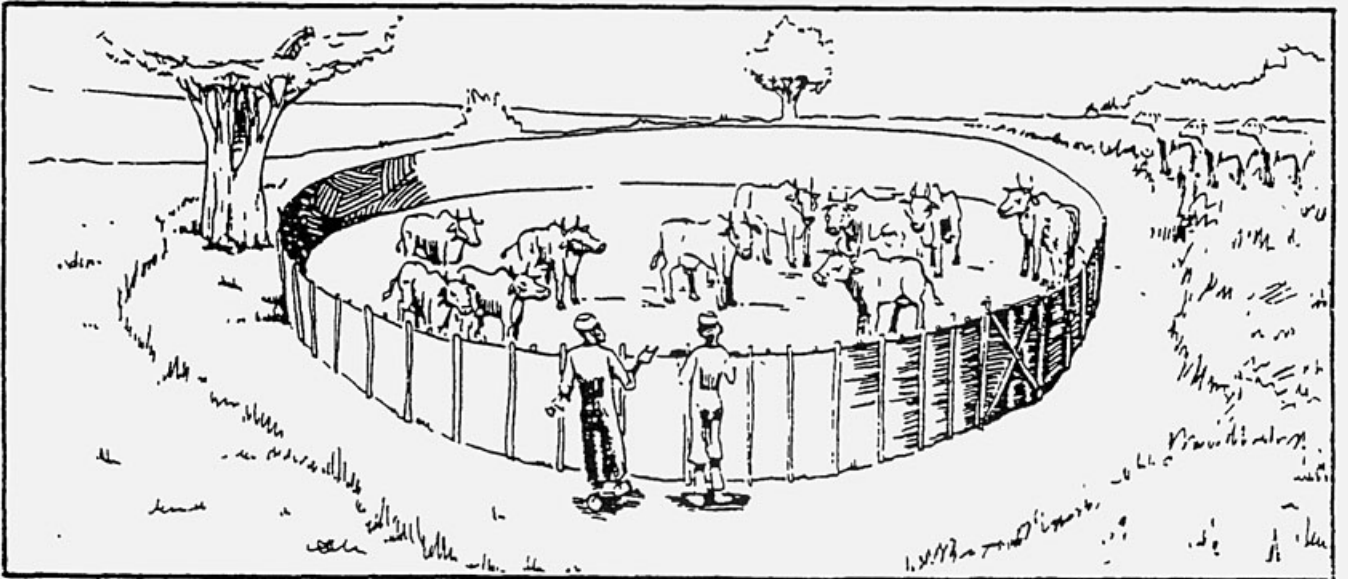
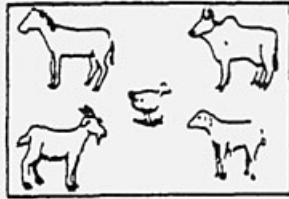
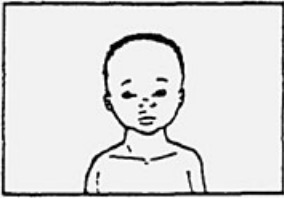
Woodi 'yamol: Saalihi woodi 'bi'b'be noy?  
Saalihi woodi 'bingel gooto tan.

Woodi 'yamol: Buuba woodi dabbaaji sappo?  
Aa'a, Buuba woodi dabbaaji joweenayi tan.

Woodi 'yamol: Zeynabu woodi tummu'de nayi?  
Ooho, amma o woodi unordu wooru tan.



Ngewta



## LESSON 22

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 22, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 14 new vocabulary items
- use the -i form of the verb, the Completed
- use the regular negative form of the Completed -aay
- use the negative forms of the Completed -aa and -aaki.



### Dialogue

Saalihu: Use Buuba. A wari naa?

*Greetings, Buuba. Have you arrived?*

Buuba: Mi wari. Noy saare?

*I have. How's the family?*

S: Saare fuh jam. A wari jam?

*All are fine. Have you come back well?*

B: Jam koo'dume. Asee a dillataa  
waalde? Ngam 'dume?

*Completely well. So you're not going to the corral. Why?*

S: Hande mi somi ngam keenya kuugal  
'duu'di. A nanaay habaru haa jooni?  
Na'i tati majji haa nder ladde.  
Nden mi tokki 'di haa  
mi tawi 'di.

*Today I am tired because yesterday there was a lot of work. You still haven't heard the news? Three cows strayed in the bush. Then I followed them until I found them.*

B: A'a! A hooti kiiki'de naa?

*No kidding! Did you get home in the evening?*

S: Aa'a, 'dum nee'bi. Mi hootaay  
sey jemma.

*No. It took a long time. I didn't get home until night.*

B: Too.

## Vocabulary

- dillugo: to go away, to go  
somugo: to be tired  
kenya: yesterday  
kuugal (ngal), kuu'de ('de): work, exercise, activity, function  
'duu'dugo: to be many, be much, multiply  
nanugo: understand  
habaru (ndu), habaruuji ('di): news  
nden: then  
tokkugo: to follow  
tawugo: to find  
nee'bugo: to be a long time, be slow, take a long time

## Verb Root Plus -i: The Completed

A completed action is expressed in Fulfulde by adding -i to the verb root.

- O dilli waalde.                      *He went to the corral.*

### Exercise 1

- nee'bi.  
 yehi\* luumo.  
 dilli waalde.

\*The first vowel of yahugo changes to -e- when there is an -i ending.

To form the negative of the Completed, add -aay to the verb root.

- O dillaay waalde.                      *He/she didn't go to the corral.*

### Exercise 2

- nee'baay.  
 yahaay luumo.  
 dillaay waalde.

Here are some positive and negative completed actions.

### Exercise 3

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="radio"/> nee'bi.        | <input type="radio"/> nee'baay.        |
| <input type="radio"/> yehi luumo.    | <input type="radio"/> yahaay luumo.    |
| <input type="radio"/> dilli waalde.  | <input type="radio"/> dillaay waalde.  |
| <input type="radio"/> tokki yim'be.  | <input type="radio"/> tokkaay yim'be.  |
| <input type="radio"/> tawi dabbaaji. | <input type="radio"/> tawaay dabbaaji. |
| <input type="radio"/> ekkiti jangde. | <input type="radio"/> ekkitaay jangde. |

Now, to contrast the Continuous and the Completed, here are some positive sentences.

### Exercise 4

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="radio"/> 'don sooda hottollo.   | <input type="radio"/> soodi hottollo.   |
| <input type="radio"/> 'don defa nyamdu.      | <input type="radio"/> defi nyamdu.      |
| <input type="radio"/> 'don winda pataakewol. | <input type="radio"/> windi pataakewol. |
| <input type="radio"/> 'don ma'b'ba fayande.  | <input type="radio"/> ma'b'bi fayande.  |
| <input type="radio"/> 'don motta hottollo.   | <input type="radio"/> motti hottollo.   |
| <input type="radio"/> 'don una gawri.        | <input type="radio"/> uni gawri.        |

And here are some negative sentences.

### Exercise 5

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="radio"/> huuwataa haa ngesa. | <input type="radio"/> huuwaay haa ngesa. |
| <input type="radio"/> nyaamataa luumo.    | <input type="radio"/> nyaamaay luumo.    |
| <input type="radio"/> resataa akootiru.   | <input type="radio"/> resaay akootiru.   |
| <input type="radio"/> yarataa ndiyam.     | <input type="radio"/> yaraay ndiyam.     |
| <input type="radio"/> wuuwataa saare.     | <input type="radio"/> wuuwaay saare.     |
| <input type="radio"/> yeccataa habaru.    | <input type="radio"/> yeccaay habaru.    |

Here are some singular and plural positive sentences using the Completed. Remember that "uncountable" nouns like: hottollo, nyamdu, gawri and ndiyam do not normally have plurals.

### Exercise 6

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="radio"/> soodi hottollo.    | <input type="radio"/> 'Be soodi hottollo.   |
| <input type="radio"/> defi nyamdu.       | <input type="radio"/> 'Be defi nyamdu.      |
| <input type="radio"/> windi pataakeewol. | <input type="radio"/> 'Be windi pataakeeji. |
| <input type="radio"/> ma'b'bi fayande.   | <input type="radio"/> 'Be ma'b'bi payan'de. |
| <input type="radio"/> motti hottollo.    | <input type="radio"/> 'Be motti hottollo.   |
| <input type="radio"/> uni gawri.         | <input type="radio"/> 'Be uni gawri.        |

Here are some singular and plural negative sentences, using the Completed.

### Exercise 7

O huuwaay haa ngesa.  
O nyaamaay luumo.  
O resaay akootiru.  
O yaraay ndiyam.  
O wuuwaay saare.  
O yeccaay habaru.

'Be huuwaay haa gese.  
'Be nyaamaay luu'be.  
'Be resaay akootiiji.  
'Be yaraay ndiyam.  
'Be wuuwaay ci'e.  
'Be yeccaay habaruuji.

All the nouns in the following sentences are replaced by pronouns.

### Exercise 8

Aa'i sorri hottollo keenya.  
Aa'i e Zeynabu sorri hottollo keenya.

O sorri ko keenya.  
'Be sorri ko keenya.

Abdullaahi windaay pataakewol keenya.  
Abdullaahi e Buuba windaay  
pataakeeji keenya.

O windaay ngol keenya.  
'Be windaay 'di keenya.

Nagge majji haa nder ladde keenya.  
Na'i majji haa nder ladde keenya.

Nge majji haa nder maare keenya.  
'Di majji haa nder maare keenya.

Usumaanu tawaay nagge keenya.  
Usumaanu bee Alim tawaay na'i keenya.

O tawaay nge keenya.  
'Be tawaay 'di keenya.

Usumaanu tokki puccu keenya.  
Usumaanu bee Alim tokki pucci keenya.

O tokki ngu keenya.  
'Be tokki 'di keenya.

Gi'daa'do tawi mbeewa haa  
'baawo suudu keenya.  
Gi'daa'do e Saalihi tawi bee'i  
haa 'baawo suudu keenya.

O tawi nga haa  
'baawo maaru keenya.  
'Be tawi 'di haa  
'baawo maaru keenya.

### **A Special Case using the Completed**

Verbs not usually thought of as a process but as a condition or state, for instance, "to know, to love, to be tired, to be lost, to understand" are expressed by the Completed in Fulfulde, even though the condition or state exists now. In general these verbs are not often used in the Continuous.

You have already met:       Mi ja'bi.  
  Mi nani.

and three verbs from this lesson are also used this way:

Kuugal 'duu'di.  
Mi somi  
Mi majji.

When Fulfulde uses identical verb forms to refer to different times, e.g. *mi somi* *I am tired*, or *I was tired*, you must rely on context for the appropriate interpretation.

Often, a time adverb alone can clarify sentences of this type. For example:

Jooni kuugal 'duu'di. *There is a lot of work now.*  
Naane kuugal 'duu'di. *There was a lot of work before.*

The negatives of these verbs are generally formed by adding -aay to the root.

Mi somaay.  
Mi majjaay.  
Kuugal 'duu'daay.

However, there are three frequently used verbs in this category whose negatives are different. They are:

#### Exercise 9 Additional Vocabulary

andugo: *to know*  
yi'dugo: *to love*  
tammugo: *to think*

And here are the positive and negative forms. Note the endings of the negatives.

Mi andi.	<i>I know.</i>
Mi andaa.	<i>I don't know.</i>
Mi yi'di.	<i>I love, I like, I want.</i>
Mi yi'daa.	<i>I don't love, I don't like,</i> <i>I don't want.</i>
Mi tammi.	<i>I think.</i>
Mi tammaaki	<i>I don't think. (or)</i>
Mi tammaay.	<i>I don't think.</i>

Here are some positive and negative verb forms.

#### Exercise 10

Mi somi.	Mi somaay.
Mi majji.	Mi majjaay.
Kuugal 'duu'di.	Kuugal 'duu'daay.
Mi andi.	Mi andaa.
Mi yi'di.	Mi yi'daa.
Mi tammi.	Mi tammaaki.
Mi tammi.	Mi tammaay.

Here are some singular and plural sentences. Note that with these verbs, the same form is used for *hande* and *keenya*.

### Exercise 11

Hande debbo somi amma  
gorko somaay.  
Keenya debbo somi amma  
gorko somaay.  
Hande nagge majji amma  
puccu majjaay.  
Keenya nagge majji amma  
puccu majjaay.

Hande rew'be somi amma  
wor'be somaay.  
Keenya rew'be somi amma  
wor'be somaay.  
Hande na'i majji amma  
pucci majjaay.  
Keenya na'i majji amma  
pucci majjaay.

Here are some positive and negative sentences.

### Exercise 12

Hande kuugal 'duu'di.  
Keenya kuugal 'duu'di.  
Saalihi andi ko'do Buuba.  
Sutura yi'di nyiiri.  
Sutura bee Usumaanu yi'di gawri.  
Mi tammi Yaakubu 'don  
wara 'do. (tammaaki)  
Mi tammi Yaakubu 'don  
wara 'do. (tammaay)

Hande kuugal 'duu'daay.  
Keenya kuugal 'duu'daay.  
Saalihi andaa ko'do Buuba.  
Sutura yi'daa nyiiri.  
Sutura bee Usumaanu yi'daa gawri.  
Mi tammaaki Yaakubu 'don wara 'do.  
Mi tammaay Yaakubu 'don wara 'do.

### **Jangde timmunde**

Ja'b'baama.  
Mi ja'bi.  
Noy comri?  
Koy'dum.  
A wari jam?  
Jam koo'dume.  
Toy Buuba?

Hande Buuba 'don dilla waalde bee baali jowi. Hande 'di majjaay hakkunde saare bee waalde. Amma keenya, Buuba bee Usumaanu dilli waalde bee na'i 'di'di e bee'i tati e baali nayi. Nden na'i 'di'di majji haa nder ladde, bee'i tati majji haa wuro, baali nayi majji hakkunde wuro bee ladde.

Nden Buuba bee Usumaanu tokki dabbaaji haa 'be tawi 'di. 'Dum nee'bi.

Buuba e Usumaanu somi keenya, amma hande 'be somaay.



Zeynabu 'don nee'ba haa saare hande fajiri. O 'don defa nyamdu. Keenya, Zeynabu nee'bi haa saare kadi. O motti hottollo ton.

Ndaa ko'do Buuba.  
Noy innde ko'do man?  
'Dum Muusa.

Saalihi andi Muusa amma Abdullaahi andaa Muusa.

Ndaa nyiiri. Zeynabu yi'di nyiiri amma Adamu yi'daa nyiiri.

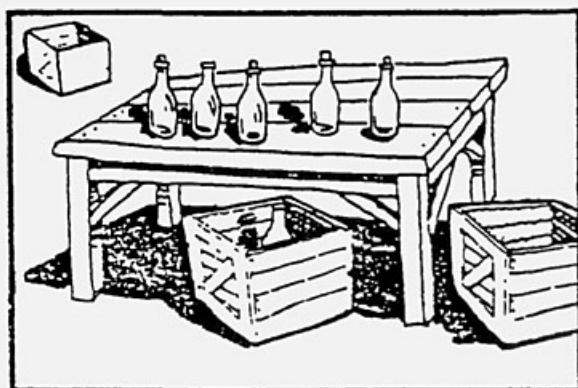
Usumaanu bee Sutura yi'di ndi amma Alim bee Yaakubu yi'daa ndi.

Ndaa Yaakubu ton. Mi tammi o 'don wara 'do amma Alim tammaaki o 'don wara 'do.

Mi tammi yim'be soodaay dabbaaji haa luumo keenya amma mi tammi 'be 'don sooda 'di hande.

Mi tammi 'be 'don sorra na'i hande.  
Mi tammaaki 'be 'don sorra baali kam.

## Ngewta

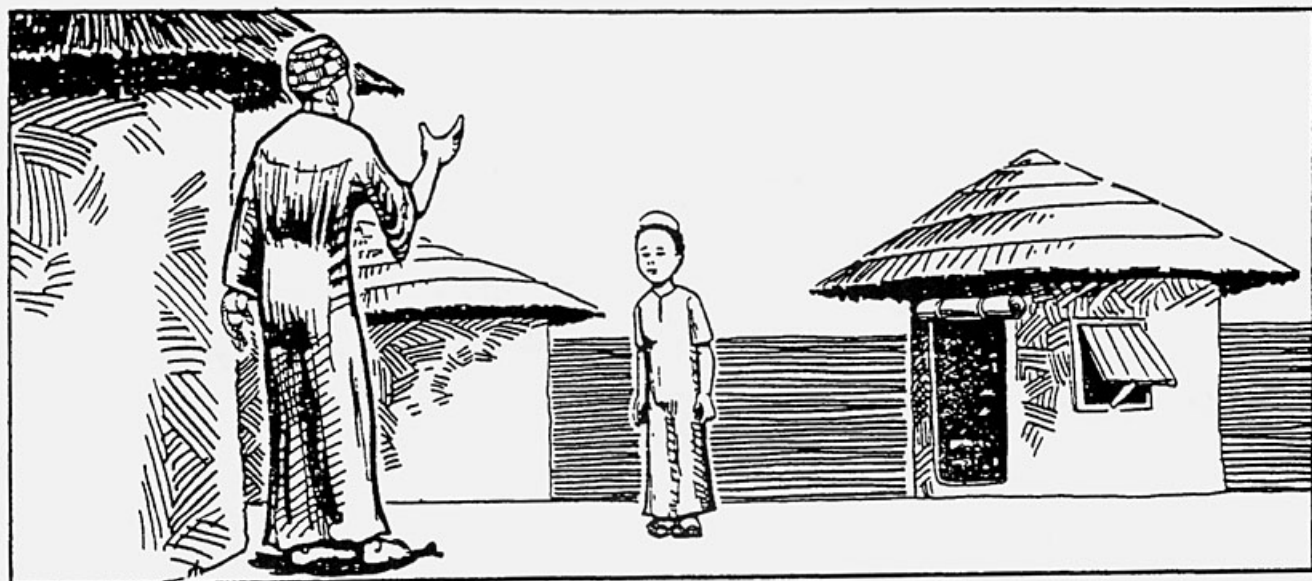


## LESSON 23

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 23, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 14 new vocabulary items
- use the -u form of the verb, the singular Imperative
- use the -ee form of the verb, the plural Imperative.



### Dialogue

Buuba: Hey Usumaanu, war!

*Hey Usumaanu, come here!*

Usumaanu: Too, baaba.

*Okay, father.*

B: Yahu haa luumo, soodu asaana  
bee lootirde. Ndaa kobo jowi.  
Taa nee'bu, wartu lawlaw.  
Wakkati juulde 'badi.

*Go to the market (and) buy matches  
and soap. Here's five kobo.  
Don't delay, come home quickly.  
The time of prayer is near.*

U: Too, baaba, sey to mi warti.

*Okay, father. Til I return!*

B: Sey to a warti.

*Til you return!*

### Vocabulary

asaana (nga): matches

lootirde (nde): soap

kobo (nde), or koboore (nde), kobooje ('de): kobo, Nigerian cent

taa: don't

law: quickly

lawlaw: very quickly

wakkati (nde), or wakkatiire (nde), wakkatiiji ('di): time

juulde (nde): prayer (one of the daily five)

'badugo: to be near

to: if

sey to: until (before a sentence)

wartugo: to return

sey to mi warti: until I return

sey to a warti: until you return

### Exercise 1 Additional Vocabulary

ummugo: *to get up*

yejjitugo: *to forget*

bindirgol (ngol), bindir'di ('di): *pencil*

Usually the Fulfulde singular Imperative is formed by adding -u to the verb root.

### Exercise 2

Waru!

Yahu!

Joo'du!

Ummu!

Dillu!

Wartu!

Here are some sentences describing a completed action followed by the corresponding command.

### Exercise 3

Usumaanu wari.  
Alim yehi jangirde.  
Sutura joo'di dow daago.  
Saalihi ummi.  
Gi'daa'do dilli waalde.  
Zeynabu warti lawlaw.

Usumaanu, waru!  
Alim, yahu jangirde!  
Sutura, joo'du dow daago!  
Saalihi, ummu!  
Gi'daa'do, dillu waalde!  
Zeynabu, wartu lawlaw.

Occasionally, for certain verbs the -u is omitted in the singular. Familiar examples are war! and yah!.

In the following pairs of sentences, the first sentence describes an action using the Completed and the second is the command that produced the action.

### Exercise 4

Usumaanu wari.  
Usumaanu yehi haa luumo.  
Usumaanu wari lawlaw.  
Usumaanu yehi haa jangirde.  
Usumaanu wari 'do.  
Usumaanu yehi haa ngesa.

Usumaanu, war!  
Usumaanu, yah haa luumo!  
Usumaanu, war lawlaw!  
Usumaanu, yah haa jangirde!  
Usumaanu, war 'do!  
Usumaanu, yah haa ngesa!

When the command is addressed to more than one person, then add -ee to the verb root.

### Exercise 5

Singular	Plural
War(u)!	Waree!
Yah(u)!	Yahee!
Joo'du!	Joo'dee!
Ummu!	Ummee!
Dillu!	Dillee!
Wartu!	Wartee!

Here are some sentences using singular and plural Imperatives.

### Exercise 6

Usumaanu, waru! (Usumaanu bee Alim)	Usumaanu bee Alim, waree!
Alim yah jangirde! (Alim bee Usumaanu)	Alim bee Usumaanu yahee jangirde!
Sutura, joo'du dow daago! (Sutura bee Adamu)	Sutura bee Adamu, joo'dee dow daago!
Saalihi, ummu! (Saalihi bee Buuba)	Saalihi bee Buuba, ummee!
Gi'daa'do, dillu waalde! (Gi'daa'do bee Usumaanu)	Gi'daa'do bee Usumaanu, dillee waalde!
Zeynabu, wartu lawlaw! (Zeynabu bee Sutura)	Zeynabu bee Sutura, wartee lawlaw!

A negative command is formed by placing taa (*don't*) before the Imperative verb form. Here are some singular and plural negative commands.

### Exercise 7

Taa joo'du!	Taa joo'dee!
Taa yejjitu!	Taa yejjitee!
Taa nyaamu!	Taa nyaamee!
Taa fijju!	Taa fijjee!
Taa 'daanu!	Taa 'daanee!

Here are some statements using the Continuous or the Stative followed by a prohibition of the action.

### Exercise 8

Adamu 'don joo'di dow  
koroowal baaba.  
Adamu bee Sutura 'don joo'di  
dow koroowal baaba.  
Usumaanu 'don yejjita deftere  
bee bindirgol.  
Usumaanu bee Alim 'don yejjita  
deftere bee bindirgol.  
'Bingel 'don nyaama lawlaw.  
'Bikkoy 'don nyaama lawlaw.  
Pukaraajo 'don fija jooni.

Adamu, taa joo'du dow  
koroowal baaba!  
Adamu bee Sutura, taa joo'dee  
dow koroowal baaba!  
Usumaanu, taa yejjitu deftere  
bee bindirgol!  
Usumaanu bee Alim taa yejjitee  
deftere bee bindirgol!  
'Bingel, taa nyaamu lawlaw!  
'Bikkoy, taa nyaamee lawlaw!  
Pukaraajo, taa fiju jooni!

### **Jangde timmunde**

Salaamu aleykum.  
Aleyka salaamu.  
Sannu.  
Sannu.  
Noy comri?  
Koy'dum.  
Toy a yahata? A 'don dilla luumo naa?

Ooho, mi 'don dilla. Walaa lootirde haa saare.

Too, soodu asaana kadi. Ndaa kobo nayi. Taa yejjitu. Walaa asaana haa saare.  
Taa nee'bu, wakkati juulde 'badi. Wartu lawlaw. Wartu jam.

Sey to mi warti.

On 'don dilla luumo naa?

Ooho, min 'don dilla luumo. Walaa nyamdu haa saare.

Too, soodee kosam kadi. Ndaa kobo joweego'o. Taa yejjitee, walaa kosam haa saare. Taa nee'bee, wakkati juulde 'badi. Wartee lawlaw, wartee jam.

Sey to min warti.

## Ngewta



### Additional Practice with Numbers

Go'o bee go'o 'dum 'di'di.  
 Go'o bee didi 'dum tati.  
 Go'o bee tati 'dum nayi.  
 Go'o bee nayi 'dum jowi.  
 Go'o bee jowi 'dum joweego'o.\*  
 Go'o bee joweego 'dum jowee'di'di.  
 Go'o bee jowee'di'di 'dum joweetati.  
 Go'o bee joweetati 'dum jweenayi.  
 Go'o bee jweenayi 'dum sappo.

'Di'di bee go'o 'dum tati.  
 'Di'di bee 'di'di 'dum nayi.  
 'Di'di bee tati 'dum jowi.  
 'Di'di bee nayi 'dum joweego'o.  
 'Di'di bee jowi 'dum jowee'di'di.  
 'Di'di bee joweego 'dum joweetati.  
 'Di'di bee jowee'di'di 'dum jweenayi.

\*In an actual counting situation, the number 6 is joweego. In some other situations, however, 6 can be joweego'o, just as it is for human nouns.

## LESSON 24

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 24, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 19 new vocabulary items
- use the object personal pronouns:

yam or -am  
maa, ma  
mo  
min  
en  
on  
'be





### Dialogue

Ngewta: Buuba 'don nela  
Usumaanu nelal feere.

*Conversation: Buuba sends  
Usmanu on an errand.*

Buuba: Hey! Usumaanu war!

*Hey! Usmanu, come here!*

Zeynabu: Baaba 'don nodda  
maa Usumaanu.

*Father is calling you,  
Usmanu.*

Usumaanu: Na'am baaba! Daada  
wi'i yam a noddi yam.

*Yes, here I am, Father. Mother  
said (to me) you called me.*

B: Nonnon. Yahu haa saare  
Mallum Gi'daa'do. Yeccu mo mi  
'don huuwa hande fajiri. Sey  
kiiki'de mi 'don wara.  
Too, doggu! Warɗu lawlaw  
taa nee'bu.

*Just so. Go to Malam  
Gidado's house. Tell him I am  
working this morning. (Not) until  
evening am I coming. Okay,  
run along. Come back quickly  
and don't linger.*

U: Too, baaba, sey to mi warti.

*Okay, father. Until I return.*

### Vocabulary

ngewta (ka), ngewtaaji ('di): conversation  
nelugo: to send  
nelal (ngal): errand  
noddugo: to summon, call  
na'am: here I am (response to a call)  
wi'ugo: to say, speak, speak to  
doggugo: to run

Here are the Fulfulde personal pronouns used as direct objects of the verb. Note that the plural pronouns in this category are identical to the plural subject pronouns you have already learned.

### Exercise 1

yam or am  
ma, maa  
mo  
min  
en  
on  
'be

me  
you (singular).  
him or her  
we (excluding the person spoken to)  
we (including the person spoken to)  
you (plural)  
they

Here are some sentences using these pronouns with the Completed form of noddugo.

### Exercise 2

- O noddi yam.
- O noddi ma.
- O noddi mo.
- O noddi min.
- O noddi en.
- O noddi on.
- O noddi 'be.

Exercise 3, which follows, uses object personal pronouns. As you are doing the exercise, pay special attention to the use of the appropriate pronoun in answers involving first and second persons. For example:

O noddi yam naa?  
Ooho, o noddi maa.

Did he call me?  
Yes, he called you. (sing.)

O noddi ma naa?  
Ooho, o noddi yam.

Did he call you? (sing.)  
Yes, he called me.

O noddi on naa?  
Ooho, o noddi min.

Did he call you? (pl.)  
Yes, he called us. (not including  
the person spoken to)

O noddi min naa?  
Ooho, o noddi on.

Did he call us? (not including  
the person spoken to)  
Yes, he called you. (pl.)

With *en*, however, which includes the person spoken to, the pronoun remains the same in the response just as it does for the singular and plural third persons.

O noddi en naa?

*Did he call us? (including the person spoken to)*

Ooho, o noddi en.

*Yes, he called us. (all)*

O noddi mo naa?

*Did he call him?*

Ooho, o noddi mo.

*Yes, he called him.*

O noddi 'be naa?

*Did he call them?*

Ooho, o noddi 'be.

*Yes, he called them.*

### Exercise 3

O noddi yam naa?

Ooho, o noddi maa.

O noddi ma naa?

Ooho, o noddi yam.

O noddi mo naa?

Ooho, o noddi mo.

O noddi min naa?

Ooho, o noddi on.

O noddi en naa?

Ooho, o noddi en.

O noddi on naa?

Ooho, o noddi min.

O noddi 'be naa?

Ooho, o noddi 'be.

### Exercise 4 Additional Vocabulary

*hokkugo: to give*

*ceede ('de): money*

*taalol (ngol), taali ('di): tale*

*ne'd'do (o), yim'be ('be): person*

*hofnugo: to greet*

With the Imperative singular, *-am* is used in place of *yam* to mean *me*. The Imperative ending *-u* is omitted and the *-am* is attached directly to the verb root. For example:

*Hokkam ceede: You, (sing.) give me money!*

*Yeccam habaru: You, (sing.) tell me the news!*

The plural Imperative, however, uses the full Imperative form of the verb plus the pronoun *yam*:

*Hokkee yam ceede: You, (pl.) give me money!*

*Yeceee yam habaru: You, (pl.) tell me the news!*

Here are some singular and plural commands involving the first person object pronoun.

### Exercise 5

#### Singular

Hokkam ceede.  
Yeccam habaru.  
Hokkam ndiyam.  
Yeccam taalol.  
Hokkam nyamdu.  
Yeccam habaru Buuba.

#### Plural

Hokkee yam ceede.  
Yeccee yam habaru.  
Hokkee yam ndiyam.  
Yeccee yam taalol.  
Hokkee yam nyamdu.  
Yeccee yam habaru Buuba.

-am is also used in place of yam when the verb ends in -y as in the singular and plural negative of the Completed. Here are some singular and plural negative sentences involving the first person object pronoun.

### Exercise 6

Debbo hokkaayam ndiyam.  
Nayeejo yeccaayam habaru.  
Gorko hokkaayam ceede.  
Go'd'do yeccaayam taalol.  
Ne'd'do hokkaayam nyamdu.  
'Bingel yeccaayam habaru Buuba.

Rew'be hokkaayam ndiyam.  
Naye'en yeccaayam habaruuji.  
Wor'be hokkaayam ceede.  
Wod'be yeccaayam taali.  
Yim'be hokkaayam nyamdu.  
'Bikkoy yeccaayam habaruuji Buuba.

#### Substitution drill

### Exercise 7

mo  
nyamdu  
maa  
min  
ceede  
on  
'be  
en

Debbo hokki yam ndiyam.  
Debbo hokki mo ndiyam.  
Debbo hokki mo nyamdu.  
Debbo hokki maa nyamdu.  
Debbo hokki min nyamdu.  
Debbo hokki min ceede.  
Debbo hokki on ceede.  
Debbo hokki 'be ceede.  
Debbo hokki en ceede.

In the next substitution drill, the subject pronouns are changed.

Exercise 8 Substitution drill

	Mi neli mo.
o	O neli mo.
noddi	O noddi mo.
a	A noddi mo.
wi'i	A wi'i mo.
on	On wi'i mo.
tokki	On tokki mo.
'be	'Be tokki mo.
tawi	'Be tawi mo.
en	En tawi mo.
andi	En andi mo.
min	Min andi mo.
neli	Min neli mo.
mi	Mi neli mo.

In the next five substitution drills, the object pronouns are changed.

Exercise 9

	O 'don nodda maa.
yam	O 'don nodda yam.
mo	O 'don nodda mo.
min	O 'don nodda min.
en	O 'don nodda en.
on	O 'don nodda on.
'be	O 'don nodda 'be.
maa	O 'don nodda maa.

Exercise 10

	O 'don nela 'be.
on	O 'don nela on.
maa	O 'don nela maa.
en	O 'don nela en.
yam	O 'don nela yam.
min	O 'don nela min.
mo	O 'don nela mo.
'don nodda	O 'don nodda mo.
maa	O 'don nodda maa.
'be	O 'don nodda 'be.
'don nela	O 'don nela 'be.

### Exercise 11

mo  
min  
'be  
on  
yam

Daada wi'i yam a noddi yam.  
Daada wi'i mo a noddi mo.  
Daada wi'i min a noddi min.  
Daada wi'i 'be a noddi 'be.  
Daada wi'i on a noddi on.  
Daada wi'i yam a noddi yam.

The following two exercises use singular and plural imperatives. Remember that in the singular imperative, the first person singular object pronoun becomes -am and is attached directly to the verb root.

### Exercise 12

mo  
'be  
yeccee  
yecu  
yam  
min  
yeccee  
mo  
yam  
yecu

Yeccam habaru Muusa.  
Yecu mo habaru Muusa.  
Yecu 'be habaru Muusa.  
Yeccee 'be habaru Muusa.  
Yecu 'be habaru Muusa.  
Yeccam habaru Muusa.  
Yecu min habaru Muusa.  
Yeccee min habaru Muusa.  
Yeccee mo habaru Muusa.  
Yeccee yam habaru Muusa.  
Yeccam habaru Muusa.

### Exercise 13

mo  
ndiyam  
hokkee  
nyamdu  
'be  
kosam  
hokku  
yam  
ceede  
min  
ndiyam  
yam  
hokku  
'be  
nyamdu  
mo  
ceede

Hokkam ceede.  
Hokku mo ceede.  
Hokku mo ndiyam.  
Hokkee mo ndiyam.  
Hokkee mo nyamdu.  
Hokkee 'be nyamdu.  
Hokkee 'be kosam.  
Hokku 'be kosam.  
Hokkam kosam.  
Hokkam ceede.  
Hokku min ceede.  
Hokku min ndiyam.  
Hokkam ndiyam.  
Hokku 'be ndiyam.  
Hokku 'be nyamdu.  
Hokku mo nyamdu.  
Hokku mo ceede.  
Hokkam ceede.

### Jangde timmunde: Buuba 'don nela Uumaanu nelal feere

Keenya Buuba noddi Uumaanu. Uumaanu nanaay. Nden Zeynabu wi'i mo:  
"Baaba ma 'don nodda ma." Uumaanu wi'i "Na'am baaba. Daada wi'i yam a noddi  
yam."

Buuba neli mo haa saare Mallum Gi'daa'do. Uumaanu doggi, wari haa saare man.  
Mallum Gi'daa'do wi'i mo "Ja'b'baama." Nden Uumaanu hofni mo, wi'i "Baaba  
wartataa jooni, o 'don huuwa kam. Amma o 'don wara kiiki'de. A nani mallam?"  
Mallum Gi'daa'do wi'i mo o nani.

Uumaanu dilli, hooti. Nden daada Uumaanu hokki mo nyamdu. O nyaami, o  
siwti.

### Additional Practice with Numbers.

Nayi bee go'o 'dum jowi.  
Nayi bee 'di'di 'dum joweego'o.  
Nayi bee tati 'dum jowee'di'di.  
Nayi bee nayi 'dum joweetati.  
Nayi bee jowi 'dum joweenayi.  
Nayi bee joweego 'dum sappo.

Jowi bee go'o 'dum joweego'o.  
Jowi bee 'di'di 'dum jowee'di'di.  
Jowi bee tati 'dum joweetati.  
Jowi bee nayi 'dum joweenayi.  
Jowi bee jowi 'dum sappo.

Joweego bee go'o 'dum jowee'di'di.  
Joweego bee 'di'di 'dum joweetati.  
Joweego bee tati 'dum joweenayi.  
Joweego bee nayi 'dum sappo.

Jowee'di'di bee go'o 'dum joweetati.  
Jowee'di'di bee 'di'di 'dum joweenayi.  
Jowee'di'di bee tati 'dum sappo.

Joweetati bee go'o 'dum joweenayi.  
Joweetati bee 'di'di 'dum sappo.  
Joweenayi bee go'o 'dum sappo.

## LESSON 25

### Objectives

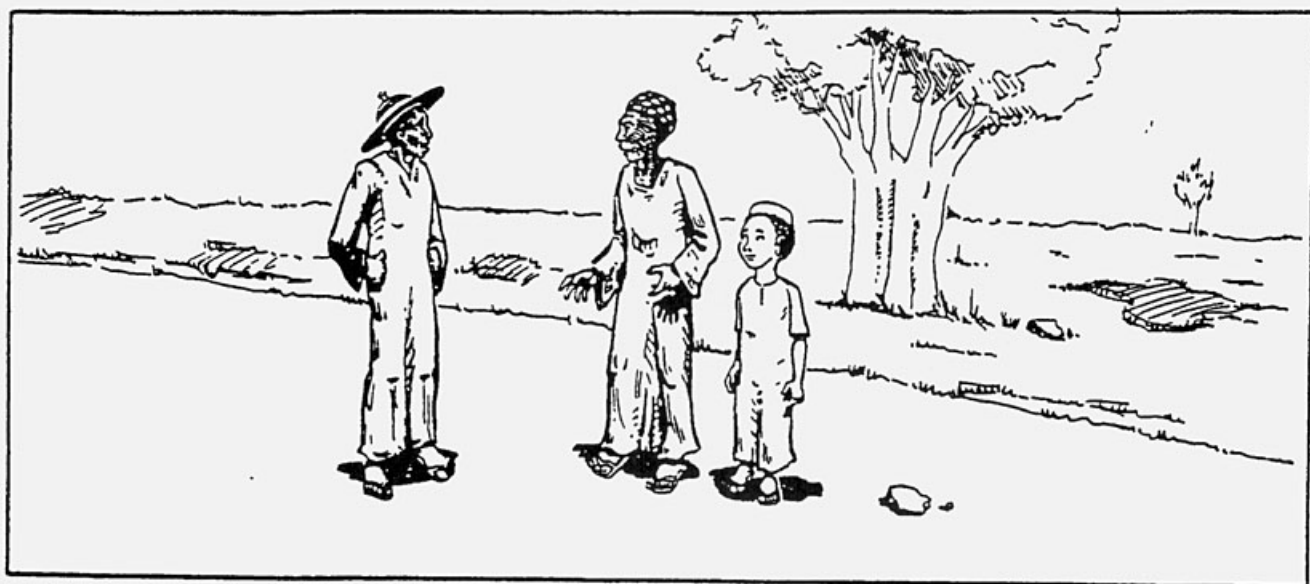
After completing Lesson 25, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 25 new vocabulary items
- use the singular human possessive pronouns:

am  
maa, maa'da  
maako

- use some words for parts of the body.





### Dialogue

Buuba bee Saalihu 'be yiidi  
haa laawol.

*Buuba and Saalihu meet  
on the road.*

Buuba: Use maa'da.

*Greetings.*

Saalihu: Useko maa.

*Greetings.*

B: Noy 'bandu?

*How's your health?*

S: 'Bandu am sey jam.

*Fine.*

B: Noy habaru?

*What's the news?*

S: Habaru am sey jam. Amma  
Aa'i 'don waali haa nder suudu.  
'Bandu maako 'don naawa se'd'da  
se'd'da.

*My news is all fine. But Aa'i  
is lying down in the house.  
Her body is aching a bit.*

B: Jurum'dum! Allah hoynu!

*Very sorry! Allah give ease.*

S: Useko. Mi hofni saare maa.

*Thank you. My greetings to your  
family. (I greet your household.)*

## Vocabulary

yiiidugo: to meet  
laawol (ngol), laabi ('di): road, way  
sey: only  
maa'da, maa: your, yours (singular)  
am: my, mine  
'bandu (ndu), 'baali ('di): body, skin  
noy 'bandu?: how's your health?  
'bandu am sey jam: I am fine (response to noy 'bandu?)  
maako: his, hers  
naawugo: to ache, to hurt, to be sore, to be in pain, to feel pain  
jurum'dum: expression of sympathy  
hoynugo: to make easy

## Singular Possessive Personal Pronouns

### Exercise 1

am	my, mine
maa, maa'da	your, yours
maako, muu'dum*	his, hers

Maa and maa'da are usually interchangeable.

\*Muu'dum refers to what is called the logical topic of discourse as in the sentence:

Saalihi hokki Buuba deftere muu'dum.     *Salihu gave Buba his book.*  
(i.e. Salihu gave Buba Salihu's book.)

as opposed to:

Saalihi hokki Buuba deftere maako.     *Salihu gave Buba his book.*  
(i.e. Salihu gave Buba Buba's book.)

Since Fulbe vary among themselves in the usage of muu'dum and since it is only in longer pieces of narrative that this particular pronoun is of concern, we will mostly use maako in the text.

Here are some questions and their negative answers.

### Exercise 2

'Dum saare maa naa?	Aa'a, naa 'dum saare am.
'Dum 'dereewol maa'da naa?	Aa'a, naa 'dum 'dereewol am.
'Dum leeso maako naa?	Aa'a, naa 'dum leeso maako.

Here are some questions and their positive answers.

### Exercise 3

'Dum deftere maa naa?  
'Dum puccu maa'da naa?  
'Dum ceede maako naa?

Ooho, 'dum deftere am.  
Ooho, 'dum puccu am.  
Ooho, 'dum ceede maako.

### Exercise 4

Noy innde am? (Buuba)  
Noy innde maa? (Saalihi)  
Noy innde maa'da? (Saalihi)  
Noy innde maako? (Sutura)  
Noy innde maako? (Adamu)

Innde maa Buuba.  
Innde am Saalihi.  
Innde am Saalihi.  
Innde maako Sutura.  
Innde maako Adamu.

Substitution drills

### Exercise 5

maa'da  
maako  
o  
maa'da  
maa  
'be  
maako  
maa'da

Mi hofni saare maa.  
Mi hofni saare maa'da.  
Mi hofni saare maako.  
O hofni saare maako.  
O hofni saare maa'da.  
O hofni saare maa.  
'Be hofni saare maa.  
'Be hofni saare maako.  
'Be hofni saare maa'da.

### Exercise 6

saare  
gorko  
maako  
debbo  
saare  
'be  
gorko  
maa'da  
debbo  
saare  
gorko

Mi hofni debbo maa.  
Mi hofni saare maa.  
Mi hofni gorko maa.  
Mi hofni gorko maako.  
Mi hofni debbo maako.  
Mi hofni saare maako.  
'Be hofni saare maako.  
'Be hofni gorko maako.  
'Be hofni gorko maa'da.  
'Be hofni debbo maa'da.  
'Be hofni saare maa'da.  
'Be hofni gorko maa'da.

**'Bandu**

hoore

yiitere  
nofuru  
hunduko  
daande

giite  
noppi  
kine

'bernde

jokkere

jokke

reedu

jungo

juu'de

kosngal

kos'de



Exercise 7 Additional Vocabulary

'bandu (ndu): *body*

hoore (nde): *head*

yiitere (nde), giite ('de): *eye*

kine ('de): *nose (lit. two nostrils - hinere (nde) = nostril)*

nofuru (ndu), noppi ('di): *ear*

hunduko (ko): *mouth*

daande (nde): *neck*

'bernde (nde): *heart*

jokkere (nde), jokke ('de): *arm*

jungo (ngo), juu'de ('de): *hand*

reedu (ndu): *stomach*

kosngal (ngal), kos'de ('de): *leg, foot*

Note: two words we have used in other contexts are also parts of the body.

'baawo (ngo): *back*

yeeso (ngo): *face*

meemugo: *to touch*

sappugo: *to point*

Exercise 8

1.



'Dume o meemata?

O 'don meema  
hoore maako.

2.



'Dume o meemata?

O 'don meema  
yiitere maako.

3.



'Dume o meemata?

O 'don meema  
giite maako.

4.



'Dume o meemata?

O 'don meema  
kine maako.

5.



'Dume o meemata?

O 'don meema  
nofuru maako.

6.



'Dume o meemata?

O 'don meema  
noppi maako.

7.



'Dume o meemata?

O 'don meema  
'baawo maako.

Exercise 9

1.



'Dume mi sappata?

A 'don sappa  
hunduko ma.

2.



'Dume mi sappata?

A 'don sappa  
daande ma.

3.



'Dume mi sappata?

A 'don sappa  
'bernde ma.

4.



'Dume mi sappata?

A 'don sappa  
jokkere ma.

5.



'Dume mi sappata?

A 'don sappa  
jokke ma.

6.



'Dume mi sappata?

A 'don sappa  
reedu ma.

7.



'Dume mi sappata?

A 'don sappa  
yeeso ma.

Exercise 10

1.



'Dume naawata mo?

Jungo maako 'don naawa.

2.



'Dume naawata mo?

Juu'de maako 'don naawa.

3.



'Dume naawata mo?

Kosngal maako 'don naawa.

4.



'Dume naawata mo?

Kos'de maako 'don naawa.

5.



'Dume naawata mo?

Kosngal maako 'don naawa.

Exercise 11

1.



'Dume naawata maa?

Kos'de am 'don naawa.

2.



'Dume naawata maa?

Hoore am 'don naawa.

3.



'Dume naawata maa?

Reedu am 'don naawa.

4.



'Dume naawata maa?

'Baawo am 'don naawa.

5.



'Dume naawata maa?

Daande am 'don naawa.

### Substitution and transformation drills

#### Exercise 12 (for the second person singular, use maa)

a  
mi  
yiitere  
sappugo  
o  
giite  
kine  
nofuru  
a  
noppi  
hunduko  
meemugo  
mi  
daande  
yeeso  
hoore  
o

O 'don meema hoore maako.  
A 'don meema hoore maa.  
Mi 'don meema hoore am.  
Mi 'don meema yiitere am.  
Mi 'don sappa yiitere am.  
O 'don sappa yiitere maako.  
O 'don sappa giite maako.  
O 'don sappa kine maako.  
O 'don sappa nofuru maako.  
A 'don sappa nofuru maa.  
A 'don sappa noppi maa.  
A 'don sappa hunduko maa.  
A 'don meema hunduko maa.  
Mi 'don meema hunduko am.  
Mi 'don meema daande am.  
Mi 'don meema yeeso am.  
Mi 'don meema hoore am.  
O 'don meema hoore maako.



Exercise 13 (for the second person singular use maa'da)

a	O 'don sappa 'bernde maako.
mi	A 'don sappa 'bernde maa'da.
jokkere	Mi 'don sappa 'bernde am.
a	Mi 'don sappa jokkere am.
meemugo	A 'don sappa jokkere maa'da.
jokke	A 'don meema jokkere maa'da.
mi	A 'don meema jokke maa'da.
o	Mi 'don meema jokke am.
jungo	O 'don meema jokke maako.
sappugo	O 'don meema jungo maako.
juu'de	O 'don sappa jungo maako.
a	O 'don sappa juu'de maako.
mi	A 'don sappa juu'de maa'da.
reedu	Mi 'don sappa juu'de am.
o	Mi 'don sappa reedu am.
kosngal	O 'don sappa reedu maako.
kos'de	O 'don sappa kosngal maako.
yeeso	O 'don sappa kos'de maako.
'bernde	O 'don sappa yeeso maako.
	O 'don sappa 'bernde maako.

Asking about a person's health

Exercise 14 Additional Vocabulary

yam'ditugo: *to be recovered from an illness, to  
feel better after an illness*

se'd'da: *a little*

se'd'da se'd'da: *just a little*

In asking about a person's health in Fulfulde, you may often use the question:

Noy 'bandu maa?  
Noy 'bandu maako?

The greeting sequence is normally

Noy 'bandu? 'Bandu am sey jam.

But when the question is not part of a greeting, and when you know or have heard that the person is or has just been sick, then the sey jam response is not appropriate. Here are the appropriate responses:

If the person is quite ill, the answer is often — 'don naawa.

Noy 'bandu maa'da?  
'Bandu am 'don naawa.

If the person is moderately ill, the answer is — 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.

Noy 'bandu maako?

'Bandu maako 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.

If the person has recovered, the answer is — yam'diti.

Noy 'bandu maa?

'Bandu am yam'diti.

If the person is still recovering, the answer is — yam'diti se'd'da.

Noy 'bandu maako?

'Bandu maako yam'diti se'd'da.

These questions and answers may also be used with specific parts of the body.

Noy hoore maa?

Hoore am 'don naawa.

Here are some questions and answers regarding health.

Exercise 15 The person is very sick.

Noy 'bandu maa?

Noy hoore maa?

Noy 'baawo maa?

Noy kosngal maako?

Noy daande maako?

Noy nofuru maako?

'Bandu am 'don naawa.

Hoore am 'don naawa.

'Baawo am 'don naawa.

Kosngal maako 'don naawa.

Daande maako 'don naawa.

Nofuru maako 'don naawa.

Exercise 16 The person is a little sick.

Noy 'bandu maa'da?

Noy jokke maa'da?

Noy reedu maa'da?

Noy noppi maako?

Noy giite maako?

Noy kos'de maako?

'Bandu am 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.

Jokke am 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.

Reedu am 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.

Noppi maako 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.

Giite maako 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.

Kos'de maako 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.

Exercise 17 The person has recovered.

Noy 'bandu maa?

Noy juu'de maa?

Noy daande maa?

Noy kine maako?

Noy jukkere maako?

Noy 'bernde maako?

'Bandu am yam'diti.

Juu'de am yam'diti.

Daande am yam'diti.

Kine maako yam'diti.

Jukkere maako yam'diti.

'Bernde maako yam'diti.

Exercise 18 The person is still recovering.

Noy 'bandu maa'da?  
Noy hoore maa'da?  
Noy reedu maa'da?  
Noy juu'demaako?  
Noy juu'de maako?  
Noy noppi maako?

'Bandu am yam'diti se'd'da.  
Hoore am yam'diti se'd'da.  
Reedu am yam'diti se'd'da.  
Juu'demaako yam'diti se'd'da.  
Juu'de maako yam'diti se'd'da.  
Noppi maako yam'diti se'd'da.

Note that all these answers need not be taken literally. The usual polite response is not to complain but to say — 'don yam'diti se'd'da or 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da, even if you or the person to whom you refer is still quite ill. If a person admits 'don naawa, you might suspect that the situation is indeed serious.

Exercise 19 Substitution and transformation drill

'bandu	Hoore am 'don naawa.
maako	'Bandu am 'don naawa.
yam'diti	'Bandu maako 'don naawa.
am	'Bandu maako yam'diti.
reedu	'Bandu am yam'diti.
'baawo	Reedu am yam'diti.
yam'diti se'd'da	'Baawo am yam'diti.
maako	'Baawo am yam'diti se'd'da.
noppi	'Baawo maako yam'diti se'd'da.
'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da	Noppi maako yam'diti se'd'da.
juu'de	Noppi maako 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.
yiitere	Juu'de maako 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.
am	Yiitere maako 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.
'don naawa	Yiitere am 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.
giite	Yiitere am 'don naawa.
hoore	Giite am 'don naawa.
	Hoore am 'don naawa.

For the next two exercises, suppose that you are Buba talking to Salihu. Gidado and Zainabu are "third persons" to whom you sometimes refer. Transform these sentences by replacing the proper name with the appropriate pronoun.

Exercise 20 Maa is used for the second person singular.

Saare Buuba 'don jam.  
Gertogal Buuba majji.  
Tebur Saalihi woo'di.  
Ku'b'bir'dum Saalihi 'don ton.  
Ha'b'bere gawri Gi'daa'do 'don 'do.

Saare am 'don jam.  
Gertogal am majji.  
Tebur maa woo'di.  
Ku'b'bir'dum maa 'don ton.  
Ha'b'bere gawri maako 'don 'do.

Exercise 21 Maa'da is used for the second person singular.

'Be soodi gerto'de Buuba.  
'Be tawi bee'i Buuba.  
Dabbaaji Saalihi 'don haa ladde.  
Nyamdu Saalihi 'don haa nder suudu.  
Nagge Gi'daa'do 'don haa waalde.  
Unordu Zeynabu 'don haa dammugal.

'Be soodi gerto'de am.  
'Be tawi bee'i am.  
Dabbaaji maa'da 'don haa ladde.  
Nyamdu maa'da 'don haa nder suudu.  
Nagge maako 'don haa waalde.  
Unordu maako 'don haa dammugal.

**Jangde timmunde**

Use maa'da.  
Useko maa.  
Noy 'bandu?  
'Bandu am sey jam.  
Yawwa.

Toy a yahata ?

Mi 'don yaha luumo jooni, mi 'don sorra bee'i am. Asee keenya a sorri nagge maa?

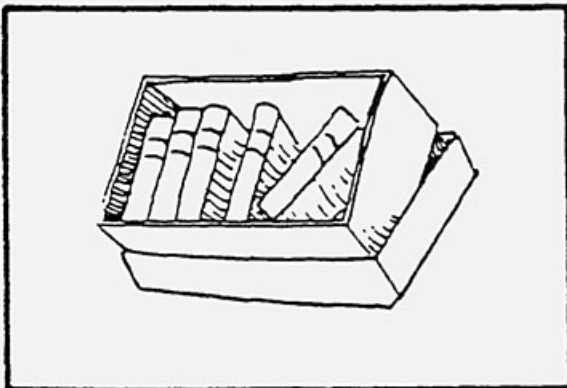
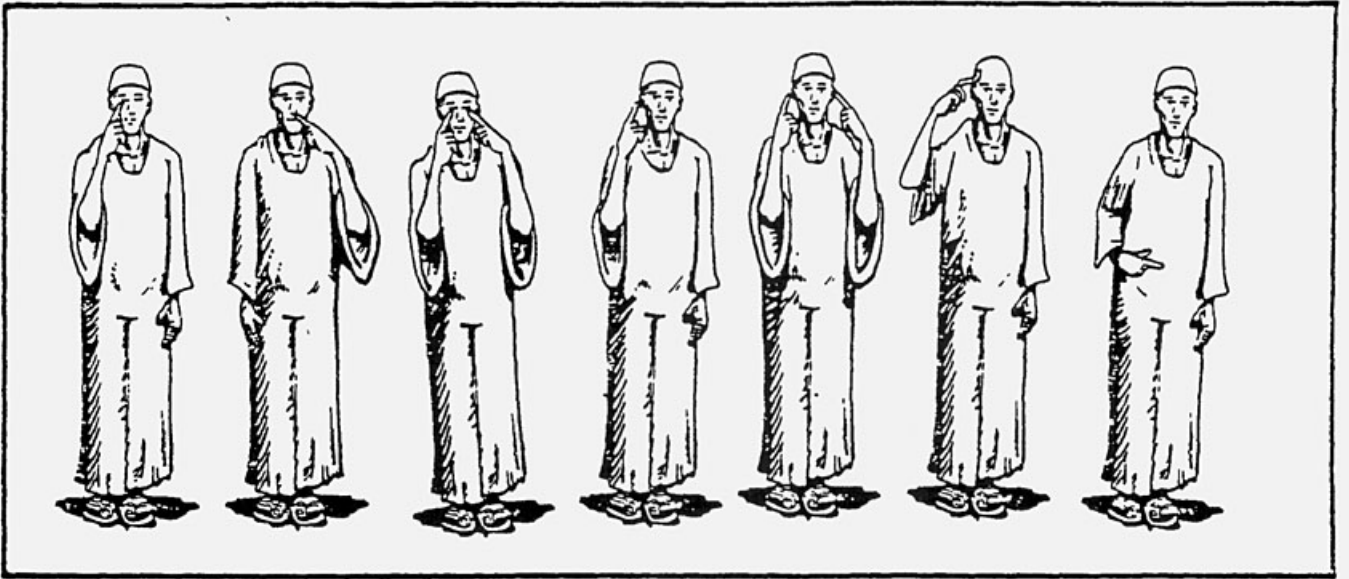
Ooho, mi sorri nge.

Toy Abdullaahi?  
O yehi jangirde maako ton, haa wuro. Ndaa laawol.  
Too. Toy Zeynabu?  
Zeynabu 'don haa saare. O 'don motta hottollo maako.

Mi hofni 'be.  
Too, useko.

Salaamu aleykum.  
Aleyka salaamu. Ja'b'baama.  
Mi ja'bi. A waali jam?  
Jam koo'dume. Use maa'da, Gi'daa'do.  
Asee a 'don 'do hande, a dillaay ngesa.  
Nonnon boo. Mi dillaay kam. 'Bandu am 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da.  
Jurum'dum! Allah hoynu 'bandu maa. Amma mi nani, Mallum Abdullaahi, 'bandu maako 'don naawa.  
Too, Allah hoynu. Mi hooti kadi.  
Too, sey yeeso.

Ngewta



## LESSON 26

### Objectives

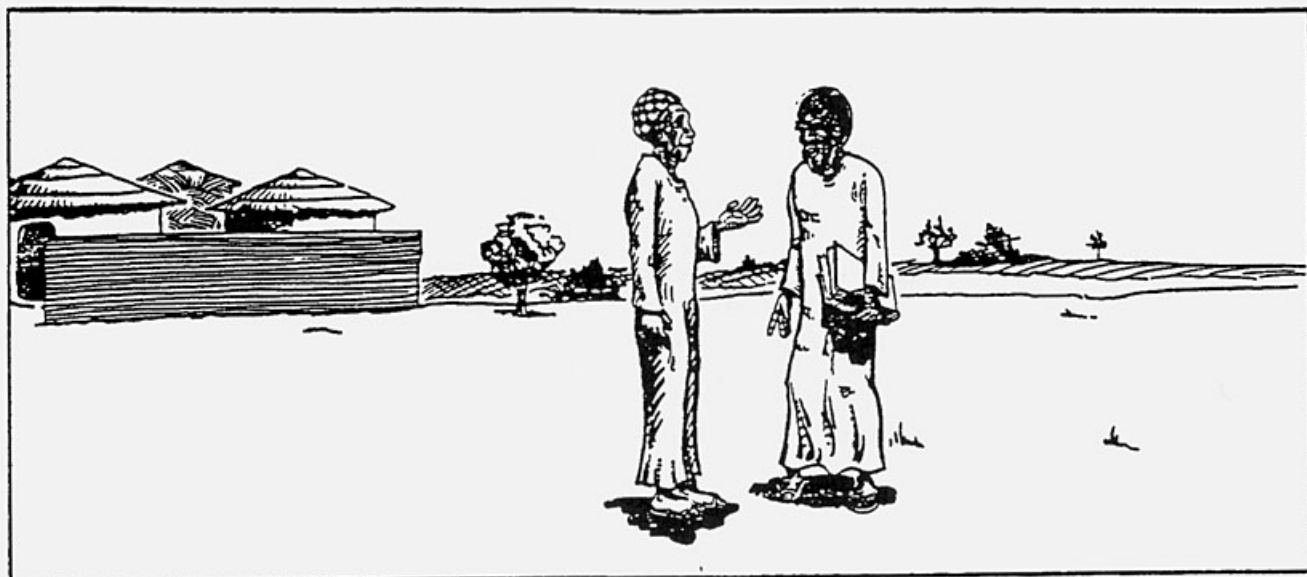
After completing Lesson 26, the student will be able to:

-identify and correctly use 15 new vocabulary items

-use the plural human possessive pronouns:

amin  
mee'den, men  
moo'don, mon  
ma'b'be

-use jirnugo.



## Dialogue

Buuba bee Abdullaahi yiidi haa laawol.

Abdullaahi: Noy habaru moo'don?

*How is your news?*

Buuba: Habaru amin sey jam.

*Our news is all good.*

A: Toy Bello bee Zeynabu hande?

*Where are Bello and Zainabu today?*

B: 'Be dilli 'Yoola fajiri cup.  
'Be 'don yilla him'be ma'b'be.

*They went to Yola early this morning.  
They are visiting their relatives.*

A: Yawwa! Maadalla!

*Say! Good!*

B: Mi 'don yaha haa ngesa am.

*I am going to my field.*

A: Min boo kam, mi 'don yaha  
haa waalde.

*As for myself I'm going to  
the corral.*

B: Kay! Kuugal mee'den 'duu'di!

*Kay! We have so much work!*

A: Haala maa goonga!

*Your words are true.*

B: Sey yeeso.

*Until later.*

A: Jippu jam.

*Stay well.*

## Vocabulary

moo'don: *your (plural)*  
amin: *our*  
fajiri: *morning*  
fajiri cup: *very early morning, around 5 a.m.*  
yillugo: *to visit*  
him'be = yim'be (here, relatives)  
ma'b'be: *their*  
maadalla: *expression of pleasure, approval (similar to yawwa)*  
min boo kam: *as for me, as for myself; an emphatic expression*  
mee'den: *our (yours and mine)*  
haala (ka), haalaaji ('di): *talk, palaver, matter, gossip (in plural)*  
goonga (nga): *the truth*  
jippugo: *stay for a while, dismount*  
jippu jam: *stay well*

## Plural Possessive Personal Pronouns

### Exercise 1

amin: *our (his/hers/theirs and mine)*

mee'den, men: *our (yours and mine)*

moo'don, mon: *your*

ma'b'be: *their*

Moo'don and mon are interchangeable as are mee'den and men.

lesdi (ndi) or leddi (ndi): *ground, earth, land, country*

The following drills involve some common Fulfulde expressions which make use of possessive personal pronouns.

Lesdi amin Nijeriya.

Wuro amin 'Yoola.

'Bi'b'be amin tato.

Dabbaaji amin tati.

*Nigeria is our country.*

*Yola is our city.*

*We have three children.*

*We have three domestic animals.*

In using words like *country, town, village, or home*, Fulfulde speakers generally use the plural possessive pronoun.

### Exercise 2

Lesdi amin Nijeriya.

Lesdi moo'don Adamaawa.

Lesdi mon Adamaawa.

Lesdi ma'b'be Kamarun.



Exercise 3 Substitution drill

moo'don	Lesdi amin Nijeriya.
Adamaawa	Lesdi moo'don Nijeriya.
ma'b'be	Lesdi moo'don Adamaawa.
Marwa	Lesdi ma'b'be Adamaawa.
men	Lesdi ma'b'be Marwa.
mee'den	Lesdi men Marwa.
	Lesdi mee'den Marwa.
amin	Lesdi amin Marwa.
Kamarun	Lesdi amin Kamarun.
ma'b'be	Lesdi ma'b'be Kamarun.
Nijeriya	Lesdi ma'b'be Nijeriya.
amin	Lesdi amin Nijeriya.

Exercise 4

Wuro amin 'Yoola.  
Wuro moo'don Pariya.  
Wuro mon Pariya.  
Wuro ma'b'be Boston.  
Wuro amin Chicago.  
Wuro moo'don Ngawndere.

Exercise 5 Substitution drill

ma'b'be	Wuro amin 'Yoola.
Ngawndere	Wuro ma'b'be 'Yoola.
amin	Wuro ma'b'be Ngawndere.
Boston	Wuro amin Ngawndere.
mon	Wuro amin Boston.
Chicago	Wuro mon Boston.
Pariya	Wuro mon Chicago.
moo'don	Wuro mon Pariya.
Ngawndere	Wuro moo'don Pariya.
ma'b'be	Wuro moo'don Ngawndere.
'Yoola	Wuro ma'b'be Ngawndere.
amin	Wuro ma'b'be 'Yoola.
	Wuro amin 'Yoola.

Exercise 6

'Bi'b'be amin di'do.  
'Bi'b'be moo'don tato.  
'Bi'b'be mon tato.  
'Bi'b'be ma'b'be nayo.  
'Bi'b'be am jowo.  
'Bi'b'be maa joweego'o.  
'Bi'b'be maako jowee'di'do.

Exercise 7 Substitution drill

maako  
tato  
maa  
nayo  
moo'don  
jowo  
ma'b'be  
joweego'o  
mon  
jowee'di'do  
am  
'di'do  
amin

'Bi'b'be amin 'di'do.  
'Bi'b'be maako 'di'do.  
'Bi'b'be maako tato.  
'Bi'b'be maa tato.  
'Bi'b'be maa nayo.  
'Bi'b'be moo'don nayo.  
'Bi'b'be moo'don jowo.  
'Bi'b'be ma'b'be jowo.  
'Bi'b'be ma'b'be joweego'o.  
'Bi'b'be mon joweego'o.  
'Bi'b'be mon jowee'di'do.  
'Bi'b'be am jowee'di'do.  
'Bi'b'be am 'di'do.  
'Bi'b'be amin 'di'do.

Exercise 8

Dabbaaji amin 'di'di.  
Dabbaaji moo'don tati.  
Dabbaaji mon tati.  
Dabbaaji ma'b'be nayi.  
Dabbaaji am jowi.  
Dabbaaji maa joweego'o.  
Dabbaaji maako jowee'di'di.

Exercise 9 Substitution drill

maa  
tati  
moo'don  
nayi  
ma'b'be  
joweego'o  
am  
jowee'di'di  
mon  
joweetati  
maako  
'di'di  
amin

Dabbaaji amin 'di'di.  
Dabbaaji maa 'di'di.  
Dabbaaji maa tati.  
Dabbaaji moo'don tati.  
Dabbaaji moo'don nayi.  
Dabbaaji ma'b'be nayi.  
Dabbaaji ma'b'be joweego'o.  
Dabbaaji am joweego'o.  
Dabbaaji am jowee'di'di.  
Dabbaaji mon jowee'di'di.  
Dabbaaji mon joweetati.  
Dabbaaji maako joweetati.  
Dabbaaji maako 'di'di.  
Dabbaaji amin 'di'di.

Exercise 10 Substitution drill

maa	Haala am goonga.
maako	Haala maa goonga.
amin	Haala maako goonga.
haalaaji	Haala amin goonga.
mee'den	Haalaaji amin goonga.
moo'don	Haalaaji mee'den goonga.
am	Haalaaji moo'don goonga.
haala	Haalaaji am goonga.
ma'b'be	Haala am goonga.
maako	Haala ma'b'be goonga.
am	Haala maako goonga.
	Haala am goonga.

Exercise 11 Additional Vocabulary

manda (ka): salt

jinnugo: to be finished up, run out

If you have run out of a quantitative substance, like salt, you might say:

Manda mee'den jinni.      *Our salt is finished.*  
We are out of salt.

Conversely, if you have salt on hand, you might say:

Manda mee'den jinnaay.      *Our salt is not finished.*  
We still have salt.

Here are some sentences involving this construction.

Exercise 12

Manda mee'den jinni.	Manda mee'den jinnaay.
Kosam men jinni.	Kosam men jinnaay.
Nyebbam moo'don jinni.	Nyebbam moo'don jinnaay.
Ku'b'bir'dum mon jinni.	Ku'b'bir'dum mon jinnaay.
Ndiyam ma'b'be jinni.	Ndiyam ma'b'be jinnaay.

Exercise 13 Substitution drill

ma'b'be  
nyamdu  
jinnaay,  
mon  
ndiyam  
jinni  
men  
jinnaay  
moo'don  
ku'b'bir'dum  
jinni  
nyebbam  
jinnaay  
manda  
mee'den  
jinni

Manda mee'den jinni.  
Manda ma'b'be jinni.  
Nyamdu ma'b'be jinni.  
Nyamdu ma'b'be jinnaay.  
Nyamdu mon jinnaay.  
Ndiyam mon jinnaay.  
Ndiyam mon jinni.  
Ndiyam men jinni.  
Ndiyam men jinnaay.  
Ndiyam moo'don jinnaay.  
Ku'b'bir'dum moo'don jinnaay.  
Ku'b'bir'dum moo'don jinni.  
Nyebbam moo'don jinni.  
Nyebbam moo'don jinnaay.  
Manda moo'don jinnaay.  
Manda mee'den jinnaay.  
Manda mee'den jinni.

The nouns in the following exercise are replaced by the appropriate noun class pronouns.

Exercise 14

Wuro amin 'Yoola.  
'Bi'b'be maako 'di'do.  
Dabbaaji mon tati.  
Haala maa goonga  
Manda mee'den jinni.  
Nyamdu ma'b'be jinnaay.  
Ndiyam mon jinni.

Ngo amin 'Yoola.  
'Be maako 'di'do.  
'Di mon tati.  
Ka maa goonga.  
Ka mee'den jinni.  
Ndu ma'b'be jinnaay.  
'Dam mon jinni.

\* yi'ugo: to see

### Jangde timmunde

Use moo'don.

Useko.

Noy habaru moo'don?

Habaru amin sey jam.

Yawwa!

Toy laawol luumo?

Tokku laawol 'do haa a\*yi'a yonnde saare laamii'do.

Nden tokku laawol ton se'd'da. Luumo Pariya 'don ton.

Too, boo'd'dum. Useko.

Toy en yahata?

Min 'don yaha luumo jooni, min 'don sorra bee'i amin. Goonga keenya on sorri na'i mon?

Ooho, goonga.

Toy Abdullaahi bee 'bingel maako?

'Be yehi jangirde ma'b'be ton, haa wuro.

Too. Toy Zeynabu bee Aa'i?

'Be 'don haa saare. 'Be 'don motta hottollo ma'b'be.

Min hofni 'be.

Too, maadalla.

Sey yeeso.

Jippee jam.

### Ngewta



## LESSON 27

### Objectives

After completing lesson 27, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 17 new vocabulary items
- use the following time expressions:

asaweere 'do  
asaweere saaliinde  
lewru 'do  
lewru saaliindu  
hikka  
rowani  
rowtani  
'dum wa'di  
hitaande woore  
kitaale 'di'di, etc.

- place actions back in time by using the -no suffix with the Completed
- use the words for *this, these, that* and *which*?

## Narrative

Rowani Gi'daa'do yillino soobaa'jo maako, Buuba. O hofni mo, o 'yami mo ngam 'dume o dillataa waalde. Buuba jaabi, wi'i mo 'bandu muu'dum 'don naawa se'd'da se'd'da. Gi'daa'do wi'i o yahataa ngam o woodi ko'do. Nden haala man timmi.

*Last year Gidado had visited his friend Buba. He greeted him and asked him why he wasn't going to the corral. Buba answered him and told him that his body was aching a bit. Gidado said that he wasn't going to the corral because he had a guest. Then the conversation ended.*

### Vocabulary

rowani (nde), or rowaniire (nde): *last year*  
soobaa'jo (o), soobaa'en ('be): *friend*  
'yamugo: *to ask*  
ngam 'dume?: *why?*  
jaabugo: *to answer*  
muu'dum: *his (see lesson 25)*

### More on the -no suffix: a placement back in time

As we have seen with the Continuous and the Stative, Fulfulde can place a verb back in time by using the -no suffix.

#### Continuous

Mi 'don huuwa. *I am working.*

Mi huuwataa. *I am not working.*

#### Past Continuous

Mi 'donno huuwa. *I was working.*

Mi huuwataano. *I was not working.*

#### Stative

O 'don joo'di. *He is sitting.*

O joo'daaki. *He is not sitting.*

#### Past Stative

O 'donno joo'di. *He was sitting.*

O joo'daakino. *He was not sitting.*

The -no suffix may also be used with the Completed to form the Past Completed.

#### Completed

O doggi. *He ran.*

O doggaay. *He did not run.*

#### Past Completed

O doggino. *He had run.*

O doggaayno. *He had not run.*

Some Fulfulde speakers lengthen the -i- of the Past Completed so that you might hear O doggiino, for example. In the text, however, we have left the -i- short for this verb form.

### Exercise 1 Additional Vocabulary

asaweere (nde), asaweeje ('de): week  
lewru (ndu), lebbi ('di): month  
hitaande (nde), kitaale ('de): year  
asaweere 'do: this week  
asaweere saaliinde: last week  
lewru 'do: this month  
lewru saaliindu: last month  
hikka: this year  
rowani: last year  
rowtani: two years ago

Here are some sentences contrasting the Completed and the Past Completed. It is important to note that the expressions *this week, this month, etc.* do not necessarily require the Completed, and that the expressions *last week, last month, etc.* do not necessarily require the Past Completed. We are simply using these expressions as a device for the drill.

### Exercise 2

Asaweere 'do Gi'daa'do yilli  
soobaaajo maako.  
Lewru 'do o 'yami mo 'yamol.  
Hikka o dillaay waalde.  
Hikka o yahaay luumo.  
Hikka o wi'i mo o yahaay  
jangirde.

Asaweere saaliinde Gi'daa'do  
yillino soobaaajo maako.  
Lewru saaliindu o 'yamino mo 'yamol.  
Rowani o dillaayno waalde.  
Rowtani o yahaayno luumo.  
Rowtani o wi'ino mo o yahaayno  
jangirde.

### Exercise 3 Substitution and transformation drill

asaweere saaliinde  
yim'be  
rowtani  
Buuba  
hikka  
Zeynabu  
jaabugo  
rowani  
Zeynabu e Sutura  
lewru 'do  
asaweere 'do  
asaweere saaliinde  
lewru saaliindu  
Aa'i  
'yamugo  
hikka  
'Gi'daa'do  
rowani  
asaweere 'do

Asaweere 'do Gi'daa'do 'yami.  
Asaweere saaliinde Gi'daa'do 'yamino.  
Asaweere saaliinde yim'be 'yamino.  
Rowtani yim'be 'yamino.  
Rowtani Buuba 'yamino.  
Hikka Buuba 'yami.  
Hikka Zeynabu 'yami.  
Hikka Zeynabu jaabi.  
Rowani Zeynabu jaabino.  
Rowani Zeynabu e Sutura jaabino.  
Lewru 'do Zeynabu e Sutura jaabi.  
Asaweere 'do Zeynabu e Sutura jaabi.  
Asaweere saaliinde Zeynabu e Sutura jaabino.  
Lewru saaliindu Zeynabu e Sutura jaabino.  
Lewru saaliindu Aa'i jaabino.  
Lewru saaliindu Aa'i 'yamino.  
Hikka Aa'i 'yami.  
Hikka Gi'daa'do 'yami.  
Rowani Gi'daa'do 'yamino.  
Asaweere 'do Gi'daa'do 'yami.



#### Exercise 4 Additional Vocabulary

'dum wa'di: ago (literally, it made)

'dum wa'di asaweere woore: one week ago

#### Exercise 5

'Dum wa'di asaweere woore.

'Dum wa'di asaweeje 'di'di.

'Dum wa'di lewru wooru.

'Dum wa'di lebbi 'di'di.

'Dum wa'di hitaande woore.

'Dum wa'di kitaale 'di'di.

#### Exercise 6 Substitution and transformation drill

'di'di	'Dum wa'di asaweere woore.
tati	'Dum wa'di asaweeje 'di'di.
woore	'Dum wa'di asaweeje tati.
lewru	'Dum wa'di asaweere woore.
nayi	'Dum wa'di lewru wooru.
jowi	'Dum wa'di lebbi nayi.
wooru	'Dum wa'di lebbi jowi.
hitaande	'Dum wa'di lewru wooru.
joweego	'Dum wa'di hitaande woore.
jowee'di'di	'Dum wa'di kitaale joweego.
joweenayi	'Dum wa'di kitaale jowee'di'di.
sappo	'Dum wa'di kitaale joweenayi.
asaweere	'Dum wa'di kitaale sappo.
lewru	'Dum wa'di asaweeje sappo.
wooru	'Dum wa'di lebbi sappo.
hitaande	'Dum wa'di lewru wooru.
asaweere	'Dum wa'di hitaande woore.
	'Dum wa'di asaweere woore.

To say *this* or *these* in Fulfulde, there are a number of options.

1. The noun class marker following the noun:

Mi 'don yaha limugo na'i 'di.      *I'm going to count these cattle.*

2. The noun class marker with a glottal stop and a repeated vowel:

Mi 'don yaha limugo na'i 'di'i.

3. The noun class marker with a lengthened vowel:

Mi 'don yaha limugo na'i 'dii.

Here is a list of the Fulfulde forms for *this* and *these*.

Exercise 7

Noun class

*This, these*

nde	nde, nde'e, ndee
ngal	ngal, nga'al, ngaal
nge	nge, nge'e, ngee
ngu	ngu, ngu'u, ngu
ndu	ndu, ndu'u, nduu
ko	ko, ko'o, koo
'dam	'dam, 'da'am, 'daam
ka	ka, ka'a, kaa
nga	nga, nga'a, ngaa
ngo	ngo, ngo'o, ngoo
ngol	ngol, ngo'ol, ngool
ndi	ndi, ndi'i, ndii
ki	ki, ki'i, kii
ngel	ngel, nge'el, ngeel
koy	koy, ko'oy, kooy
'de	'de, 'de'e, 'dee
'di	'di, 'di'i, 'dii
o	o, o'o, oo
'be	'be, 'be'e, 'bee

Add *this* or *these* to the following sentences by using the noun class marker after the noun.

Exercise 8

Lekki woo'di.	Lekki ki woo'di.
Baalel woo'di.	Baalel ngel woo'di.
Ci'e woo'di.	Ci'e 'de woo'di.
Cuu'di woo'di.	Cuu'di 'di woo'di.
Leddi woo'di.	Leddi ndi woo'di.
Ngapaleewol woo'di.	Ngapaleewol ngol woo'di.
Gorko woo'di.	Gorko o woo'di.
'Bikkoy woo'di.	'Bikkoy koy woo'di.

Add *this* or *these* to the following sentences by using the noun class marker with a glottal stop and a repeated vowel.

### Exercise 9

Mi 'don yaha limugo fukaraa'be.  
Mi 'don yaha remugo ngesa.  
Mi 'don yaha waddugo ndiyam.  
Mi 'don yaha mi wadda nagge.  
Mi 'don yaha mi wa'da tebur.  
Mi 'don yaha mi wadda puccu.  
Mi 'don yaha mottugo hottollo.

Mi 'don yaha limugo fukaraa'be 'be'e.  
Mi 'don yaha remugo ngesa ka'a.  
Mi 'don yaha waddugo ndiyam 'da'am.  
Mi 'don yaha mi wadda nagge nge'e.  
Mi 'don yaha mi wa'da tebur nga'a.  
Mi 'don yaha mi wadda puccu ngu'u.  
Mi 'don yaha mottugo hottollo ko'o.

Add *this* or *these* to the following sentences by using the noun class marker with a lengthened vowel.

### Exercise 10

Yiitere 'don naawa.  
Nofuru 'don naawa.  
Jokkere 'don naawa.  
Jungo 'don naawa.  
Kosngal 'don naawa.

Yiitere ndee 'don naawa.  
Nofuru nduu 'don naawa.  
Jokkere ndee 'don naawa.  
Jungo ngoo 'don naawa.  
Kosngal ngaal 'don naawa.

To say *which?* in Fulfulde, use the noun class marker with -e or -ye.

-e after a final consonant: ngale

-ye after a final vowel: ndeya

For o class nouns, moye? is the form for *which?*

Here is a list of the forms for *which?*:

### Exercise 11

Noun class

which?

nde	ndeye?
ngal	ngale?
nge	ngeye?
ngu	nguye?
ndu	nduye?
ko	koye?
'dam	'dame?
ka	kaye?
nga	ngaye?
ngo	ngoye?
ngol	ngole?
ndi	ndiye?
ki	kiye?
ngel	ngele?
koy	koye?
'de	'deye?
'di	'diye?
o	moye?
'be	'beye?

Here are some commands followed by the question *Which one do you want?* Use the appropriate form of *which*.

### Exercise 12

Waddu deftere.	Ndeye a yi'di?
Waddu koroowal	Ngale a yi'di?
Waddu nagge.	Ngeye a yi'di?
Waddu puccu.	Nguye a yi'di?
Waddu akootiru.	Nduye a yi'di?
Waddu hu'do.	Koye a yi'di?
Waddu nyebbam.	'Dame a yi'di?
Yeccu haala.	Kaye a yi'di?
Waddu tebur.	Ngaye a yi'di?
Waddu daago.	Ngoye a yi'di?
Waddu ngapaleewol.	Ngole a yi'di?
Waddu gawri.	Ndiye a yi'di?
Waddu lekki.	Kiye a yi'di?
Waddu baalel.	Ngele a yi'di?
Waddu mbaaloy.	Koye a yi'di?
Waddu koromje.	'Deye a yi'di?
Waddu li'd'di.	'Diye a yi'di?
Waddu gorko.	Moye a yi'di?
Waddu wor'be.	'Beye a yi'di?

To say *that* or *that one* in Fulfulde, use the noun class marker plus *-ya* or *-a*.

-a after a final consonant: ngala

-ya after a final vowel: ndeya

Here is a list of the forms for *that, that one*.

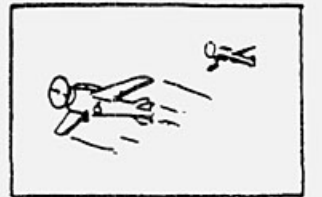
### Exercise 13

Noun class	That
nde	ndeya
ngal	ngala
nge	ngeya
ngu	nguya
ndu	nduya
ko	koya
'dam	'dama
ka	kaya
nga	ngaya
ngo	ngoya
ngol	ngola
ndi	ndiya
ki	kiya
ngel	ngela
koy	koya
'de	'deya
'di	'diya
o	oya
'be	'beya

### Exercise 14 Substitution and transformation drill

gertogal	Ndee a yi'di naa maa boo ndeya?
nagge	Ngaal a yi'di naa maa boo ngala?
puccu	Ngee a yi'di naa maa boo ngeya?
koloba	Nguu a yi'di naa maa boo nguya?
hu'do	Nduu a yi'di naa maa boo nduya?
nyebbam	Koo a yi'di naa maa boo koya?
mbeewa	'Daam a yi'di naa maa boo 'dama?
leeso	Nгаа a yi'di naa maa boo ngaya?
'dereewol	Ngoo a yi'di naa maa boo ngoya?
gawri	Ngool a yi'di naa maa boo ngola?
lekki	Ndii a yi'di naa maa boo ndiya?
baalel	Kii a yi'di naa maa boo kiya?
mbaaloy	Ngeel a yi'di naa maa boo ngela?
payan'de	Kooy a yi'di naa maa boo koya?
bulki	'Dee a yi'di naa maa boo 'deya?
Pullo	'Dii a yi'di naa maa boo 'diya?
Hawsa'en	Oo a yi'di naa maa boo oya?
tummude	'Bee a yi'di naa maa boo 'beya?
	Ndee a yi'di naa maa boo ndeya?

Ngewta



## LESSON 28

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 28, the student will be able to:

-identify and correctly use 10 new vocabulary items

-use the emphatic personal pronouns:

min  
an  
kanko  
minin  
enen  
onon  
kam'be

-use juxtaposed verbs and verb phrases

-use conjoined pronouns before a verb.



### Dialogue

John: A! Gaafara! 'Dum moy?

*Pardon me. Who's there?*

Buuba: Min on, Buuba. An moy?

*It's me, Buba. Who are you?*

J: Use, use. Min John, soobaajo maa.

*I'm John, your friend.*

B: Maadalla, use John. Kanko moy?

*Fine, hey John! Who's he?*

J: O soobaajo am. Innde maako Bakari.

*He's my friend. His name is Bakari.*

B: Too, too. Naa 'dum onon mi yi'ino keenya haa saare laamii'do?

*Okay. Didn't I see you both yesterday at the emir's palace?*

J: Goonga maa'da. Minin on.

*You're right. It was us.*

### Vocabulary

yi'ugo: to see

onon: you (plural, emphatic personal pronoun)

kanko: he, she (emphatic personal pronoun)

minin: we (exclusive of you, emphatic personal pronoun)

Bakari: Bakari (man's name)



## The emphatic personal pronouns

### Exercise 1

min	<i>I/me</i>
an	<i>you (singular)</i>
kanko	<i>he, she/him, her</i>
minin	<i>we/us (excluding the person addressed)</i>
enen	<i>we/us (including the person addressed)</i>
onon	<i>you (plural)</i>
kam'be	<i>they/them</i>

The emphatic pronouns are commonly used in Fulfulde for emphasis. There are a number of ways in which they are used:

a) with verbs, for example, in answering questions beginning with moy.

Moy wi'i mo haalaaaji?      *Who told him the gossip?*

Min wi'i mo.      *I* told him.

Naa min wi'i mo.      *I* didn't tell him.

b) in sentences without verbs.

Kanko.      *Him.*  
Naa kanko.      *Not him.*

Here are some questions and their positive answers.

### Exercise 2

Moy wi'i mo haalaaaji? (min)	Min wi'i mo. or Min.
Moy hofni mo? (an)	An hofni mo. or An.
Moy jaabi mo? (kanko)	Kanko jaabi mo. or Kanko.
Moy 'yamino mo? (onon)	Onon 'yamino mo. or Onon.
Moy andino mo? (enen)	Enen andino mo. or Enen.
Moy marino ndu? (kam'be)	Kam'be marino ndu. or Kam'be.

Here are some questions and their negative answers.

### Exercise 3

Moy marino ndu? (kam'be)	Naa kam'be marino ndu. or Naa kam'be.
Moy andino mo? (enen)	Naa enen andino mo. or Naa enen.
Moy dillino waalde? (minin)	Naa minin dillino waalde. or Naa minin.
Moy 'yamino mo? (onon)	Naa onon 'yamino mo. or Naa onon.
Moy jaabi mo? (kanko)	Naa kanko jaabi mo. or Naa kanko.
Moy hofni mo? (an)	Naa an hofni mo. or Naa an.
Moy wi'i mo haalaaaji? (min)	Naa min wi'i mo. or Naa min

c) The emphatic pronoun may replace the subject personal pronoun, for example:

Gi'daa'do wi'ino o  
yahataa waalde.

*Gidado had said that he was  
not going to the corral.*

Gi'daa'do wi'ino kanko  
yahataa waalde.

*Gidado said that he, himself,  
was not going to the corral.*

Here are two sets of sentences. The first uses the subject personal pronoun, the second uses the emphatic pronoun in its place.

#### Exercise 4

Mi 'yami mo.  
A 'yamino mo.  
O jaabi mo.  
Min jaabino mo.  
En wi'i mo haala.  
On defi ndu.  
'Be defino ndu.

Min 'yami mo.  
An 'yamino mo.  
Kanko jaabi mo.  
Minin jaabino mo.  
Enen wi'i mo haala.  
Onon defi ndu.  
Kam'be defino ndu.

d) The emphatic pronoun is sometimes used in addition to a subject pronoun. Usually, the emphatic pronoun precedes the subject pronoun, and it is often reinforced with boo.

Min, mi yilli soobaaajo am.  
Min boo, mi yilli soobaaajo am.

*As for me, I visited my friend.*

#### Exercise 5

Mi yilli soobaaajo am.  
A dilli luumo Pariya.  
O 'yami mo ngam 'dume o  
warataano.  
On 'yami mo ngam 'dume o  
yahataano.  
Min 'yami mo ngam 'dume o  
huuwataano.  
En wi'i mo haala man.  
'Be wi'i mo haalaaji.

Min, mi yilli soobaaajo am.  
An, a dilli luumo Pariya.  
Kanko, o 'yami mo ngam 'dume o  
warataano.  
Onon, on 'yami mo ngam 'dume o  
yahataano.  
Minin, min 'yami mo ngam 'dume o  
huuwataano.  
Enen, en wi'i mo haala man.  
Kam'be, 'be wi'i mo haalaaji.

## Exercise 6 Substitution drill

min	Kanko o yehi.
an	Min mi yehi.
kam'be	An a yehi.
kanko	Kam'be 'be yehi.
Buuba	Kanko o yehi.
'be	Kanko Buuba yehi.
onon	Kam'be 'be yehi.
minin	Onon on yehi.
enen	Minin min yehi.
Buuba e Saalihi	Enen en yehi.
Zeynabu e Aa'i	kam'be Buuba e Saalihi yehi.
kanko	Kam'be Zeynabu e Aa'i yehi.
	Kanko o yehi.

e) Sometimes, an emphatic pronoun will precede a noun and be reinforced by *on*.

Kanko Buuba on dilli waalde.

*Buba went to the corral. or  
It's Buba who went to the corral.*

## Exercise 7

Buuba dilli waalde.	Kanko Buuba on dilli waalde.
Zeynabu uni gawri.	Kanko Zeynabu on uni gawri.
Abdullaahi hofni 'be.	Kanko Abdullaahi on hofni 'be.
Soobaaajo am yi'i laamii'do.	Kanko soobaaajo am on yi'i laamii'do.
Debbo maa yehi luumo keenya.	Kanko debbo maa on yehi luumo keenya.
'Bi'b'be ma'b'be yehi jangirde 'Yoola.	Kam'be 'bi'b'be ma'b'be on yehi jangirde 'Yoola.

## Juxtaposed verbs or verb phrases

Verbs and verb phrases may immediately follow one another in Fulfulde, unlike English where there is usually a connecting word like *and* or *then* joining them.

O ummi o dilli.

*He got up (and) went.*

When subject pronouns are involved, they are usually, as above, repeated before each verb in the sequence; when a person's name or an emphatic pronoun is involved, however, it is not repeated.

Buuba ummi, dilli.

*Buba got up (and) went.*

Saalihi hofni mo, 'yami mo...

*Salihu greeted him (then) asked him...*

Kanko ummi, dilli.

*He got up (and) left.*

### Exercise 8

O ummi, o dilli.  
Buuba ummi, dilli.  
Kanko ummi, dilli.

'Be hofni mo, 'be 'yami mo 'yamol.  
Buuba bee Zeynabu hofni mo, 'yami mo 'yamol.  
Kam'be hofni mo, 'yami mo 'yamol.

### Exercise 9 Substitution and transformation drill

Buuba  
a  
'be  
kam'be  
onon  
on  
kanko  
mi  
min (emphatic)  
o

O ummi, o dilli.  
Buuba ummi, dilli.  
A ummi, a dilli.  
'Be ummi, 'be dilli.  
Kam'be ummi, dilli.  
Onon ummi, dilli.  
On ummi, on dilli.  
Kanko ummi, dilli.  
Mi ummi, mi dilli.  
Min ummi, dilli.  
O ummi, o dilli.

### Exercise 10

'be  
kam'be  
minin  
enen  
en  
onon  
Buuba  
an  
o

O hofni mo, o 'yami mo 'yamol.  
'Be hofni mo, 'be 'yami mo 'yamol.  
Kam'be hofni mo, 'yami mo 'yamol.  
Minin hofni mo, 'yami mo 'yamol.  
Enen hofni mo, 'yami mo 'yamol.  
En hofni mo, en 'yami mo 'yamol.  
Onon hofni mo, 'yami mo 'yamol.  
Buuba hofni mo, 'yami mo 'yamol.  
An hofni mo, 'yami mo 'yamol.  
O hofni mo, o 'yami mo 'yamol.

### **The order for conjoined pronouns**

When two pronouns connected by *bee* occur before a verb, the first pronoun is emphatic and the second, which follows *bee*, is possessive. Furthermore, a plural subject pronoun which encompasses the two is added.

An bee am, en doggi.  
Min bee maako, min doggi.  
Kanko bee maako, 'be doggi.

*You and I (we) ran.*  
*He and I (we) ran.*  
*They (he and he) ran.*

Suppose that you are Buba talking to Salihu. Zainabu and Abdullaahi are third persons to whom you sometimes refer.

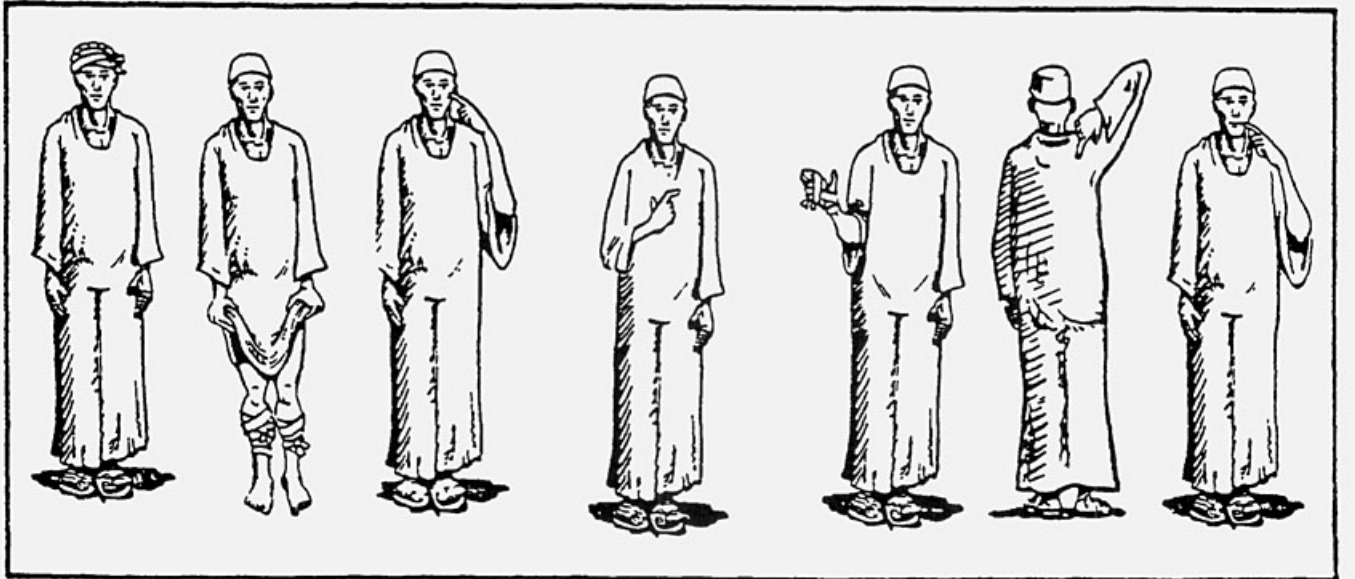
Replace the names in the following sentences by the appropriate pronouns.

Exercise II

Saalihu bee Buuba doggi.  
 Buuba bee Abdullaahi doggi.  
 Zeynabu bee Abdullaahi doggi.  
 Saalihu bee Abdullaahi doggi.  
 Buuba bee Saalihu doggi.  
 Zeynabu bee Buuba doggi.

An bee am, en doggi.  
 Min bee maako, min doggi.  
 Kanko bee maako, 'be doggi.  
 An bee maako, on doggi.  
 Min bee maa, en doggi.  
 Kanko bee am, min doggi.

**Ngewta**



## LESSON 29

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 29, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 11 new vocabulary items
- use the Subjunctive (or Indefinite) -a verb suffix in the following situations:
  - a) to indicate purpose
  - b) to give an indirect command
  - c) with naa to ask permission
  - d) with haa to make an offer or a request for permission
  - e) after ndikka and sey
- use useni to make polite commands and requests
- use le in making polite commands and requests.

## Dialogue

Mary: Salaamu aleykum.

Greetings

Zeynabu: Aleyka salaamu.  
Ja'b'baama.

M: Mi ja'bi. Noy a waali?

*Did you sleep well?*

Z: Jam koo'dume yettoore Allah.  
A 'don yaha kanti naa?

*Are you going to the store?*

M: Ooho, mi 'don yaha mi sooda  
kusel bee tumaatir. Useni,  
'do 'dum laawol naa?

*Yes, I'm going (there) to buy  
meat and tomatoes. Please,  
is this the way?*

Z: Non non, amma ndikka a yaha  
luumo, a sooda haa ton. Kuuje  
man buuti haa luumo. Sey  
a tokka laawol 'do, haa  
a yotta luumo.

*Yes it is, but it is better that  
you go to the market and buy there.  
Those things are cheap at the  
market. You should follow the  
road here until you reach  
the market.*

M: Too, mi nani, mi yetti kadi.  
Sey to mi warti.

*Okay, I understand, and thank you.  
Until I return.*

Z: Too, wartu jam.

*Return well.*

## Vocabulary

noy a waali?: *did you sleep well?*

yettoore Allah: *thanks be to Allah*

useni: *please*

buutugo: *to be cheap*

kusel (ngel), kuselji ('di): *meat (mostly used collectively in the singular)*

tumaatir (nde), also tumaatiire (nde), tumaatirji ('di): *tomato (mostly used collectively in the singular)*

ndikka: *better, it is better, it is better that, please*

sey: *please*

## Verb Root Plus -a: The Subjunctive

The Subjunctive is also called the timeless or indefinite form of the verb and is often found in subordinate clauses. It expresses wishes, desires, intentions or may be used in asking questions, requesting permission, making offers or polite commands.

The Subjunctive is formed by adding -a to the verb root.

### Exercise 1 Additional Vocabulary

waddugo: *to bring*

tingyeere (nde), tingyeeje ('de): *onion (mostly used in the singular)*

The following exercises give examples of some uses of the Subjunctive.

#### a) The Subjunctive is used to indicate purpose.

Ngam 'dume a yahata luumo?  
Mi 'don yaha mi sooda kusel.

*Why are you going to the market?  
I am going to buy meat.*

### Exercise 2

Ngam 'dume a yahata luumo?

soodugo tingyeere  
soodugo kusel  
soodugo tumaatir  
soodugo tingyeere  
sorrugo lootirde  
sorrugo nyebbam  
sorrugo tingyeere  
sorrugo tumaatir

Ngam mi yi'di mi sooda tingyeere.  
Ngam mi yi'di mi sooda kusel.  
Ngam mi yi'di mi sooda tumaatir.  
Ngam mi yi'di mi sooda tingyeere.  
Ngam mi yi'di mi sorra lootirde.  
Ngam mi yi'di mi sorra nyebbam.  
Ngam mi yi'di mi sorra tingyeere.  
Ngam mi yi'di mi sorra tumaatir.

### Exercise 3 Substitution drill

waddugo 'dereji  
waddugo ndiyam  
waddugo ku'b'bir'dum  
ma'b'bitugo nde  
wuwugo nde  
laarugo mallumjo  
laarugo fukaraa'be  
hofnugo mallumjo  
waddugo defte

Mi 'don yaha jangirde mi wadda defte.  
Mi 'don yaha jangirde mi wadda 'dereji.  
Mi 'don yaha jangirde mi wadda ndiyam.  
Mi 'don yaha jangirde mi wadda ku'b'bir'dum.  
Mi 'don yaha jangirde mi ma'b'bita nde.  
Mi 'don yaha jangirde mi wuuwa nde.  
Mi 'don yaha jangirde mi laara mallumjo.  
Mi 'don yaha jangirde mi laara fukaraa'be.  
Mi 'don yaha jangirde mi hofna mallumjo.  
Mi 'don yaha jangirde mi wadda defte.



b) The Subjunctive is used for an indirect command.

O yecci mo o yaha luumo.

*He told him to go to the market.*

Exercise 4 Substitution drill

wartugo lawlaw  
soodugo tumaatir  
soodugo tingyeere  
soodugo kusel  
yahugo luumo

O yecci mo o yaha luumo.  
O yecci mo o warta lawlaw.  
O yecci mo o sooda tumaatir.  
O yecci mo o sooda tingyeere.  
O yecci mo o sooda kusel.  
O yecci mo o yaha luumo.

For the negative of a Subjunctive subordinate clause, use *taa* before the pronoun or noun and verb.

O yecci mo taa o yaha luumo.

*He told him to not go to the market.*

Exercise 5 Substitution drill

wartugo lawlaw  
soodugo tumaatir  
soodugo tingyeere  
soodugo kusel  
nee'bugo  
yahugo luumo

O yecci mo taa o yaha luumo.  
O yecci mo taa o warta lawlaw.  
O yecci mo taa o sooda tumaatir.  
O yecci mo taa o sooda tingyeere.  
O yecci mo taa o sooda kusel.  
O yecci mo taa o nee'ba.  
O yecci mo taa o yaha luumo.

Exercise 6 Additional Vocabulary

nastugo: *to enter*

c) The Subjunctive plus *naa*: asking permission

Mi nasta naa?

*May I enter?*

Exercise 7

Mi nasta naa?  
Mi joo'da naa?  
Mi wara naa?  
Mi warta naa?  
Mi 'yama mo naa?  
Mi yetta mo naa?

Exercise 8 Substitution drill

o	Mi nasta naa?
joo'dugo	O nasta naa?
'be	O joo'da naa?
warugo	'Be joo'da naa?
wartugo	'Be wara naa?
min	'Be warta naa?
mi	Min warta naa?
'yamugo mo	Mi warta naa?
yettugo mo	Mi 'yama mo naa?
nastugo	Mi yetta mo naa?
en	Mi nasta naa?
a	En nasta naa?
mi	A nasta naa?
	Mi nasta naa?

d) **Haa plus the Subjunctive:** an offer, a request for permission

Haa mi nodda Usumaanu.	<i>Let me call Usmanu.</i>
Haa mi 'yama mo.	<i>Let me ask him.</i>

Exercise 9 Substitution and transformation drill

mo	Haa mi nodda Usumaanu.
o	Haa mi nodda mo.
yam	Haa o nodda mo.
en (object)	Haa o nodda yam.
'be (subject)	Haa o nodda en.
'be (object)	Haa 'be nodda en.
a	Haa 'be nodda 'be.
on (subject)	Haa a nodda 'be.
mi	Haa on nodda 'be.
maa	Haa mi nodda 'be.
mo	Haa mi nodda maa.
Usumaanu	Haa mi nodda mo.
	Haa mi nodda Usumaanu.

Exercise 10

ndikka: *it is better that*  
sey: *please*

e) The Subjunctive is used after *ndikka* and *sey*.

Often, this usage serves to express a polite command or request. When Buba was talking to Usmanu in Lesson 23, and telling him to buy some things at the market, you learned the basic way to give a command. But in Fulfulde, as in many other languages, it is more usual, and more polite, not to be so brief. Fulfulde handles polite commands and requests in a number of ways, including the use of *ndikka* or *sey* plus the Subjunctive.

The more polite counterpart of *yahu kanti* is *ndikka a yaha kanti* or *sey a yaha kanti*.

### Exercise 11

*Ndikka a yaha kanti.*  
*Ndikka a yecca baaba maa.*  
*Ndikka on tokka laawol luumo.*  
*Ndikka on wara nyande Alat.*

*Sey a yaha haa luumo.*  
*Sey a sooda tumaatir bee tingyeere.*  
*Sey on warta lawlaw.*  
*Sey on ma'b'ba dammugal.*

The following two exercises juxtapose abrupt and polite commands.

### Exercise 12 *Ndikka*

*Yahu kanti.*  
*Yeccu baaba maa.*  
*Tokkee laawol luumo.*  
*Waree nyande Alat.*

*Ndikka a yaha kanti.*  
*Ndikka a yecca baaba maa.*  
*Ndikka on tokka laawol luumo.*  
*Ndikka on wara nyande Alat.*

### Exercise 13 *Sey*

*Yahu haa luumo.*  
*Ma'b'bu dammugal.*  
*Wartee lawlaw.*  
*Soodee tumaatir bee tingyeere.*

*Sey a yaha haa luumo.*  
*Sey a ma'b'ba dammugal.*  
*Sey on warta lawlaw.*  
*Sey on sooda tumaatir bee tingyeere.*

Sey and ndikka plus the Subjunctive may be used with other pronouns as well.

Exercise 14 Substitution drill

sey  
mi  
ndikka  
en  
sey  
min  
ndikka  
on  
sey  
o  
ndikka

Ndikka o yaha kanti.  
Sey o yaha kanti.  
Sey mi yaha kanti.  
Ndikka mi yaha kanti.  
Ndikka en yaha kanti.  
Sey en yaha kanti.  
Sey min yaha kanti.  
Ndikka min yaha kanti.  
Ndikka on yaha kanti.  
Sey on yaha kanti.  
Sey o yaha kanti.  
Ndikka o yaha kanti.

Exercise 15

useni: *please*

**Useni**

Another way to make a question or a request more polite is to use the word *useni* before it. Unlike *sey* and *ndikka*, *useni* does not require the Subjunctive.

'Do 'dum laawol naa?  
Useni, 'do 'dum laawol naa?

*Is this the road?*  
*Please, is this the road?*

Hokkam ndiyam.  
Useni, hokkam ndiyam.

*Give me water.*  
*Please, give me (some) water.*

Exercise 16

'Do 'dum laawol naa?  
'Do 'dum tummu'de maa naa?  
Hokkam ndiyam.  
Yeccu mo haala Muusa.  
Haa toy laawol luumo?  
Haa toy saare baaba ma'b'be?

Useni, 'do 'dum laawol naa?  
Useni, 'do 'dum tummu'de maa naa?  
Useni, hokkam ndiyam.  
Useni, yeccu mo haala Muusa.  
Useni, haa toy laawol luumo?  
Useni, haa toy saare baaba ma'b'be?

Exercise 17 Additional Vocabulary

le: *then, indeed*

Another way to make a command or a request more polite is to add the word *le*.

Defu nyamdu Saalihi.      *Prepare Saalihi's food.*  
Defu nyamdu Saalihi le.      *Would you please prepare Saalihi's food?*

### Exercise 18

Defu nyamdu Saalihi.	Defu nyamdu Saalihi le.
Wi'u mo haala Muusa.	Wi'u mo haala Muusa le.
'Yamu mo haala Muusa.	'Yamu mo haala Muusa le.
Hokkam ndiyam.	Hokkam ndiyam le.
Yahu kanti.	Yahu kanti le.
Soodu kusel.	Soodu kusel le.

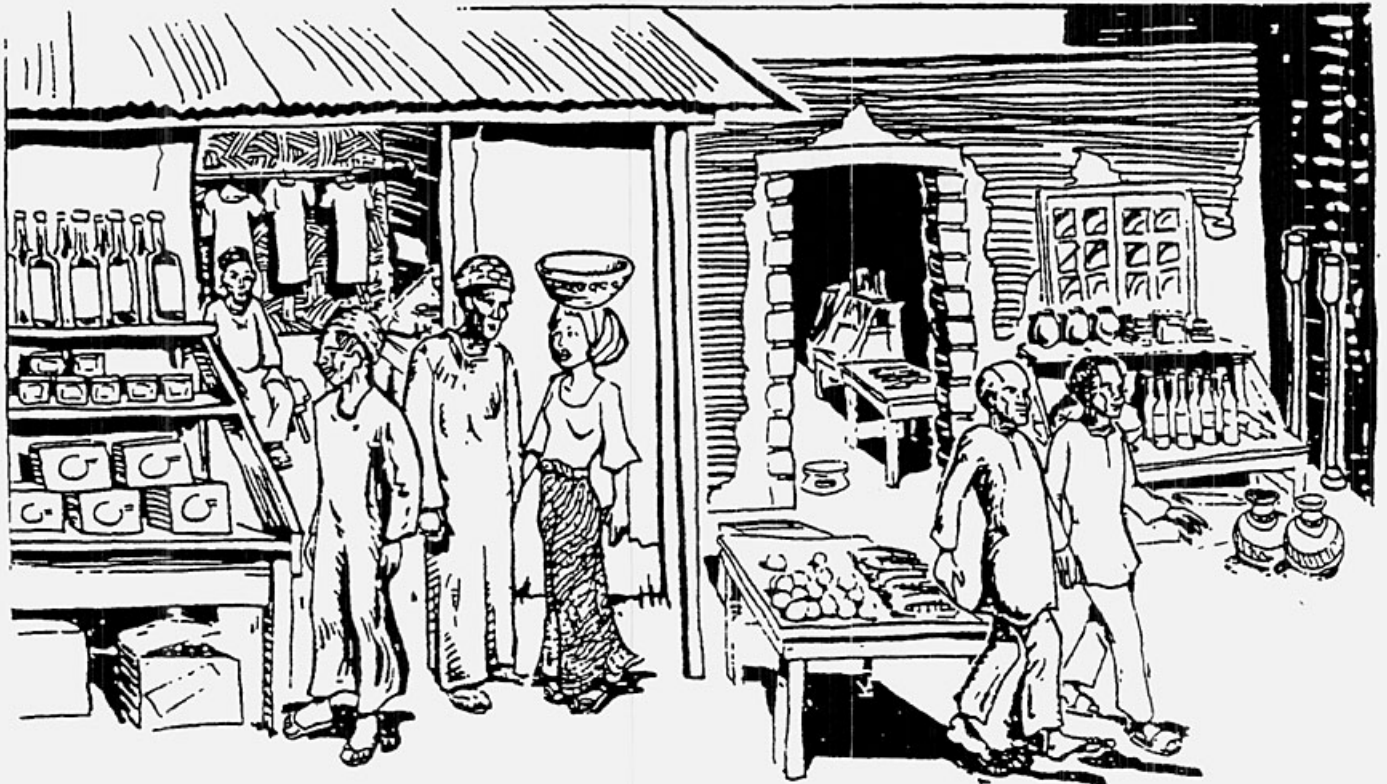
Polite commands and requests, a recapitulation:

When *sey* and *ndikka* are involved in making a polite command or request, use the Subjunctive.

With *useni* and *le*, the Subjunctive is not used.

### Exercise 19 Substitution and transformation drill

sey	Yahu kanti le.
useni	Sey a yaha kanti.
ndikka	Useni, yahu kanti.
le	Ndikka a yaha kanti.
wartu lawlaw	Yahu kanti le.
ndikka	Wartu lawlaw le.
useni	Ndikka a warta lawlaw.
le	Useni, wartu lawlaw.
defu nyamdu	Wartu lawlaw le.
sey	Defu nyamdu le.
useni	Sey a defa nyamdu.
ndikka	Useni, defu nyamdu.
yahu kanti	Ndikka a defa nyamdu.
le	Ndikka a yaha kanti.
	Yahu kanti le.



## LESSON 30

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 30, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 10 new vocabulary items
- use qualitative verbs
- use *masi n.*

## Narrative

Keenya John yilli Buuba. O silmini mo, o hofni mo. Buuba 'yami mo habaru leddi Amerika. John jaabi, wi'ileddi ma'b'be wo'd'di. Wakkati man boo peewol 'duu'di haa ton. Yim'be 'don hu'b'ba yiiteeji haa nder cuu'di ma'b'be ngam 'be yi'di 'be fadda peewol.

*Yesterday John visited Buba. He said "salaamu aleykum" and greeted him. Buba asked him news of the land of America. John answered and said that their country was far way. And at that time it was very cold there. People were lighting fires in their houses in order to ward off the cold.*

## Vocabulary

silminugo: *to greet someone by saying salaamu aleykum*  
wo'd'dugo: *to be far*  
peewol (ngol): *cold*  
hu'b'bugo: *to make a fire, to light a fire*  
yiite (nde), yiiteeji ('di): *fire*  
faddugo: *to ward off*

## Qualitative Verbs

Qualitative verbs in Fulfulde have the same function as adjectival phrases in English. Here are some qualitative verbs you already know, along with some additional vocabulary.

### Exercise 1

'duu'dugo: *to be plentiful, excessive*

wo'd'dugo: *to be far (with human nouns: be advanced in learning)*

'badugo: *to be near*

yam'dugo: *to be well*

mawnugo: *to be big, adult, important*

fam'dugo: *to be small*

he'ugo: *to be sufficient*

welugo: *to be pleasant, nice, good tasting*

'balwugo: *to be black*

ranwugo: *to be white*



woojugo: to be red

yoorigo: to be dry

soofugo: to be wet, to urinate (euphemistic)

Adjectival phrases beginning with *it, he, she, or they* may be expressed with 'dum or o and one of the adjectival verbs in the Completed.

Here are some of the more commonly used expressions.

### Exercise 2

'Dum mawni.	<i>It is big.</i>
O mawni.	<i>He/she is adult, he/she is important.</i>
'Be mawni.	<i>They are adult, they are important.</i>
'Dum fam'di.	<i>It is small.</i>
O fam'di.	<i>He/she is small.</i>
'Be fam'di.	<i>They are small.</i>
'Dum 'duu'di.	<i>It is plentiful, excessive.</i>
'Be 'duu'di.	<i>They are many.</i>
'Dum wo'd'di.	<i>It is far.</i>
O wo'd'di.	<i>He/she is far, he/she is advanced in learning.</i>
'Be wo'd'di.	<i>They are far, they are advanced in learning.</i>
'Dum he'i.	<i>It is sufficient.</i>
'Dum weli.	<i>It is nice, pleasant, good tasting.</i>
O yam'di.	<i>He/she is well.</i>
'Dum 'balwi.	<i>It is black.</i>
'Dum ranwi.	<i>It is white.</i>
'Dum wooji.	<i>It is red.</i>
'Dum yoori.	<i>It is dry.</i>
'Dum soofi.	<i>It is wet.</i>
O soofi.	<i>He/she urinated.</i>

Nouns are also used with these qualitative verbs, but only when the English pattern is: Noun is Adjective or Nouns are Adjective.

Gorko mawni.      *The man is important.*

Na'i 'balwi.      *The cows are black.*

It is important to remember that *the important man, the black cows, etc.* involve a different construction.

To form the negative of these qualitative verbs, use the negative ending -aay.

Here are some positive and negative sentences.

### Exercise 3

'Dum mawni.	'Dum mawnaay.
'Dum fam'di.	'Dum fam'daay.
'Dum 'duu'di.	'Dum 'duu'daay.
'Dum wo'd'di.	'Dum wo'd'daay.
'Dum 'badi.	'Dum 'badaay.
'Dum he'i.	'Dum he'aay.
'Dum weli.	'Dum welaay.
O yam'di.	O yam'daay.
'Dum 'balwi.	'Dum 'balwaay.
'Dum ranwi.	'Dum ranwaay.
'Dum wooji.	'Dum woojaay.
'Dum yoori.	'Dum yooraaay.
'Dum soofi.	'Dum soofaay.

Here are some questions and their positive answers. Pronouns are used in the answers.

### Exercise 4

O mawni naa maa boo o mawnaay?	O mawni.
Puccu fam'di naa maa boo ngu fam'daay?	Ngu fam'di.
Peewol 'duu'di naa maa boo ngol 'duu'daay?	Ngol 'duu'di.
Wuro wo'd'di naa maa boo ngo wo'd'daay.	Ngo wo'd'di.
Wor'be 'badi naa maa boo 'be 'badaay?	'Be 'badi.
Leggal he'i naa maa boo ngal he'aay?	Ngal he'i.

Here are some questions and their negative answers. Pronouns are used in the answers.

### Exercise 5

Nyamdu weli naa koo boo ndu welaay?	Ndu welaay.
Abdullaahi yam'di naa koo boo o yam'daay?	O yam'daay.
Nagge 'balwi naa koo boo nge 'balwaay?	Nge 'balwaay.
Puccu ranwi naa koo boo ngu ranwaay?	Ngu ranwaay.
Ngapaleewol wooji naa koo boo ngol woojaay?	Ngol woojaay.
Leggal yoori naa maa boo ngal yooraaay.	Ngal yooraaay.
Peewol 'duu'di naa maa boo ngol 'duu'daay?	Ngol 'duu'daay.

Aa'a is omitted from the negative answers in the following exercise.

Exercise 6

1.



O mawni naa?

Ooho, o mawni.

2.



O mawni naa?

O mawnaay.

3.



'Dum 'balwi naa?

Ooho, 'dum 'balwi.

4.



'Dum 'balwi naa?  
'Dum ranwi naa?

'Dum 'balwaay.  
Ooho, 'dum ranwi.

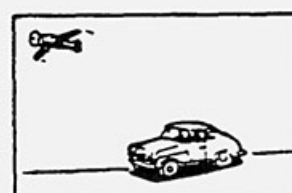
5.



Lekki wo'd'di naa?  
Lekki 'badi naa?

Ooho, lekki wo'd'di.  
Lekki 'badaay.

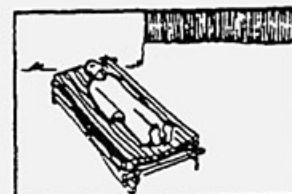
6.



Moota wo'd'di naa?  
Moota 'badi naa?

Moota wo'd'daay.  
Ooho, moota 'badi.

7.



O yam'di naa?

O yam'daay.

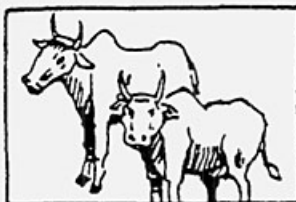
8.



Nyamdu weli naa?

Nyamdu welaay.

9.



Na'i 'duu'di naa?

Na'i 'duu'daay.

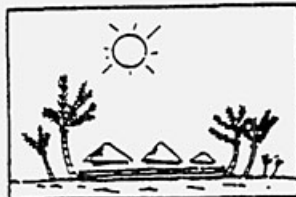
10.



Ku'b'bir'dum he'i naa?

Ku'b'bir'dum he'aay.

11.



Peewol 'duu'di naa?

Peewol 'duu'daay.

### Exercise 7 Additional Vocabulary

masin: very, very much, a lot

Nyamdu weli masin.

*The food is quite good.*

*The food is very good.*

Ngapaleewol yooraa masin.

*The gown isn't very dry.*

Here are some positive and negative statements.

### Exercise 8

Peewol 'duu'di masin.

Peewol 'du'daay masin.

Ku'b'bir'dum he'i masin.

Ku'b'bir'dum he'aay masin.

Nayeejo yam'di masin.

Nayeejo yam'daay masin.

Ngapaleewol yoori masin.

Ngapaleewol yooraa masin.

Laawol soofi masin.

Laawol soofaay masin.

Nyamdu weli masin.

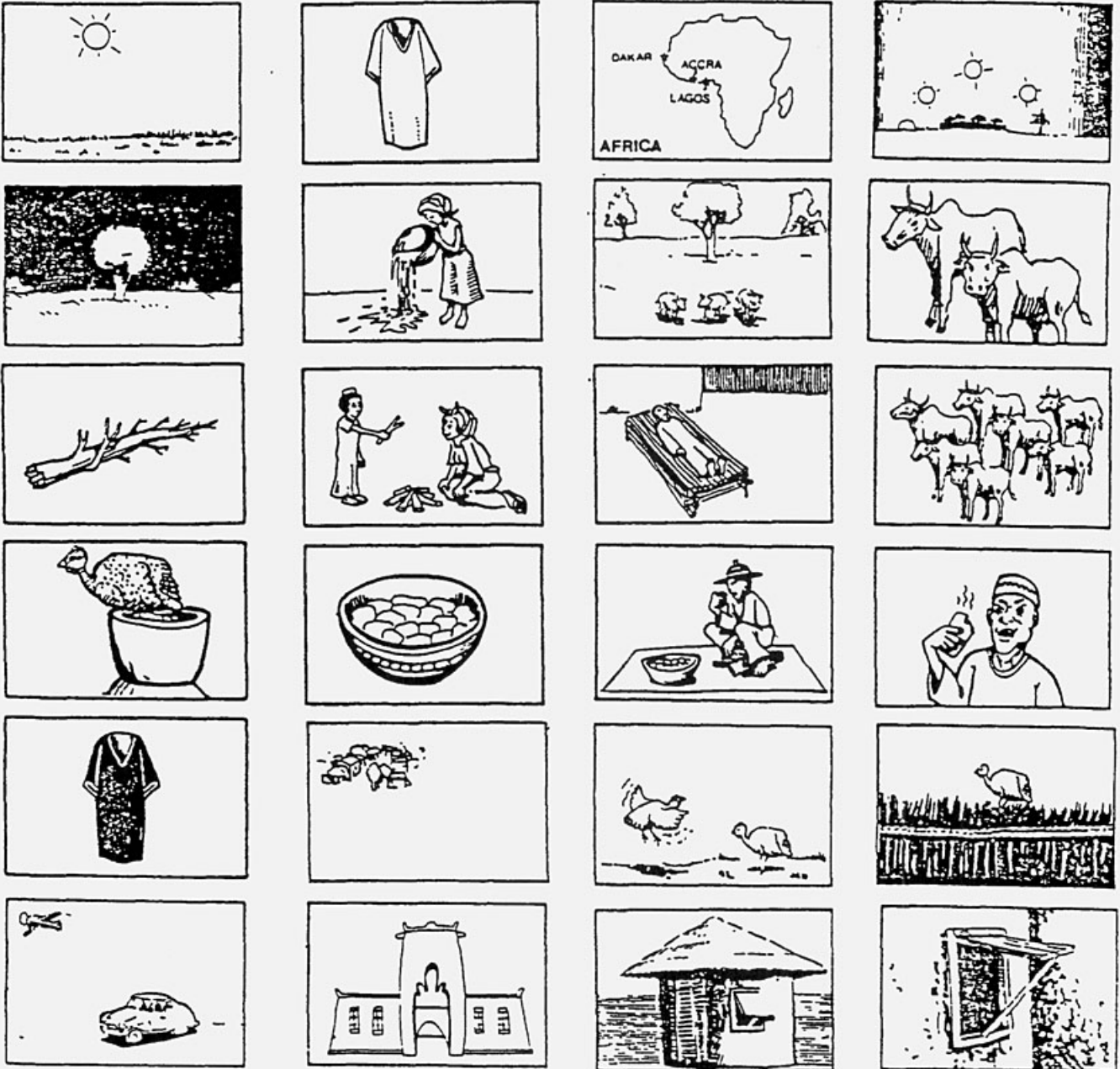
Nyamdu welaay masin.

**Jangde timmunde**

Hande mi yehi luumo. Haa ton mi yi'i dabbaaji feere feere. Mi soodi nagge. Nge ranwi. Mi yi'dino mi sooda puccu feere, amma ngu yam'daay. Nden mi soodaay ngu.

Ndaa mbeewa. Nga ranwi naa? Aa'a, nga 'balwi. Mi he'bi nga haa luumo hande. Hande kuugal am 'duu'di. 'Dum weli masin.

**Ngewta**



## LESSON 31

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 31, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 16 new vocabulary items
- use Infinitives as nouns
- use Infinitives after the verbs:

wayri  
mee'di  
waawi  
'buri

- use sam.



### Dialogue

Muusa: Af! Saalihi, ja'b'baama.  
Mi wayri yi'ugo maa!

*Hello! Saalihi, welcome. I haven't  
seen you for a long time!*

Saalihi: Mi ja'bi, Muusa am.  
A jamo?

*Thanks (my) Musa. Are you well?*

M: Jam koo'dume. Asee, a andi  
Maamudu naa?

*I'm fine. So you know Mamudu?*

S: Ooho, mi andi mo, o  
minyiraawo Buuba.

*Yes. I know him, he's Buba's  
younger brother.*

M: O waawi jangugo naa?

*Can he read?*

S: Aa'a, o waawataa sam.

*No, not at all.*

M: O yi'di ekkitugo naa?

*Would he like to learn?*

S: Ooho, o yi'di masin. O yi'di  
nastugo jangirde maw'be haa  
wuro ma'b'be.

*Yes, very much. He wants to enter  
the adult school in his  
village.*

M: Too, mi nani. Allah hokku mo  
saa'a.

*I see. God give him good luck.*

S: Aamiina.

*Amen to that.*

## Vocabulary

mi wayri yi'ugo maa: *I haven't seen you for a long time.*  
a jamo?: *are you well?*  
minyirawo (o), minyiraa'be ('be): *younger sibling*  
waawugo: *to be able, can*  
sam: *at all, ever*  
saa'a (nga): *good luck*  
Maamudu: *Mamudu (man's name)*

Until now, we have only used Infinitives in the vocabulary lists to give the meaning of a word. In this lesson, we will use Infinitives as verbal nouns. Some examples are:

soodugo na'i	<i>buying cattle or to buy cattle</i>
kuugal jangugo	<i>school work (reading work)</i>

### Exercise 1 Substitution drill

gawri	soodugo na'i
defugo	soodugo gawri
kusel	defugo gawri
laarugo	defugo kusel
asaana	laarugo kusel
sorrugo	laarugo asaana
lootirde	sorrugo asaana
he'bugo	sorrugo lootirde
tumaatir	he'bugo lootirde
tingyeere	he'bugo tumaatir
yi'ugo	he'bugo tingyeere
soodugo	yi'ugo tingyeere
na'i	soodugo tingyeere
	soodugo na'i

### Exercise 2 Additional Vocabulary

remugo: *to cultivate*  
nyallugo: *to spend the day*

### Exercise 3 Substitution drill

remugo	kuugal jangugo
windugo	kuugal remugo
defugo	kuugal windugo
suudu	kuugal defugo
nyallugo	suudu defugo
jangugo	suudu nyallugo
laawol	suudu jangugo
kuugal	laawol jangugo
	kuugal jangugo



Using the Infinitive provides an alternative to using the Subjunctive.

Mi yehi remugo ngesa means the same as  
Mi yehi mi rema ngesa.  
*I went to cultivate the field.*

The following exercise demonstrates two ways of expressing the same thing.

#### Exercise 4

O yi'di o nasta jangirde maw'be.	O yi'di nastugo jangirde maw'be.
Mi yehi mi sooda na'i.	Mi yehi soodugo na'i.
'Be yehi 'be una gawri.	'Be yehi unugo gawri.
O hooti o nyaama nyiiri.	O hooti nyaamugo nyiiri.
O dilli o tawa bee'i.	O dilli tawugo bee'i.
Min warti min hofna ko'do.	Min warti hofnugo ko'do.
'Be dilli ngesa 'be rema ka.	'Be dilli ngesa remugo ka.
O yehi jangirde o ekkita jangde.	O yehi jangirde ekkitugo jangde.
Mi hooti mi nyalla haa saare.	Mi hooti nyallugo haa saare.

Here are some questions with their positive answers.

#### Exercise 5

A yi'di warugo naa?	Ooho, mi yi'di warugo.
A yi'di soodugo tummude naa?	Ooho, mi yi'di soodugo tummude.
A yi'di joo'dugo 'do naa?	Ooho, mi yi'di joo'dugo 'do.
A yi'di yarugo ndiyam naa?	Ooho, mi yi'di yarugo ndiyam.
A yi'di remugo ngesa naa?	Ooho, mi yi'di remugo ngesa.

Here are some questions and their negative answers.

#### Exercise 6

A yi'di nastugo naa?	Aa'a, mi yi'daa nastugo.
A yi'di soodugo tummude naa?	Aa'a, mi yi'daa soodugo tummude.
A yi'di joo'dugo 'do naa?	Aa'a, mi yi'daa joo'dugo 'do.
A yi'di yarugo ndiyam naa?	Aa'a, mi yi'daa yarugo ndiyam.
A yi'di remugo ngesa naa?	Aa'a, mi yi'daa remugo ngesa.

Infinitives will often occur after the following:

#### Exercise 7 Additional Vocabulary

wayrugo: *to leave off, to be a long time without*  
mee'dugo: *to do once, to have done before*  
waawugo: *to be able*  
'burugo: *to surpass, to exceed*

In general, when these verbs are used with Infinitives, they take the Completed form.

Mi wayri yi'ugo maa.	<i>I haven't seen you for a long time.</i>
Mi mee'di laanyugo moota.	<i>I have driven a car before.</i>
Mi waawi jangugo.	<i>I can read.</i>
Mi 'buri andugo Muusa.	<i>I know Musa better.</i>

### Wayri

The expression *Mi wayri yi'ugo maa* - *I haven't seen you for a long time*, and variations on it, is commonly used. These expressions may also, but do not necessarily, convey the notion *I've missed seeing* \_\_\_\_\_.

### Substitution drills

Exercise 8 For this drill, change the objects only.

mallumjo	Mi wayri yi'ugo laamii'do.
nayeejo	Mi wayri yi'ugo mallumjo.
jawmu kanti	Mi wayri yi'ugo nayeejo.
minyiraawo Buuba	Mi wayri yi'ugo jawmu kanti.
minyiraa'be Buuba	Mi wayri yi'ugo minyiraawo Buuba.
yim'be ma'b'be	Mi wayri yi'ugo minyiraa'be Buuba.
minyiraawo Zeynabu	Mi wayri yi'ugo yim'be ma'b'be.
minyiraa'be Zeynabu	Mi wayri yi'ugo minyiraawo Zeynabu.
laamii'do	Mi wayri yi'ugo minyiraa'be Zeynabu.
	Mi wayri yi'ugo laamii'do.

Exercise 9 For this drill, the subject or the object is changed depending on the given pronoun.

mo	Mi wayri yi'ugo maa.
o	Mi wayri yi'ugo mo.
a	O wayri yi'ugo mo.
o	A wayri yi'ugo mo.
maa	O wayri yi'ugo mo.
mi	O wayri yi'ugo maa.
	Mi wayri yi'ugo maa.

Wayri is also used with verbs other than *yi'ugo*. For example:

O wayri warugo jangirde.	<i>He hasn't been coming to school.</i>
	<i>He hasn't come to school</i>
	<i>for a long time.</i>

Here are two sets of sentences. One describes an ongoing action, the other describes the same action as not having taken place for a long time.

### Exercise 10

O 'don wara jangirde.  
O 'don yilla minyiraa'be Saalihi.  
Mi 'don hofna minyiraawo Buuba.  
Buuba 'don reima ngesa ma'b'be.  
Buuba 'don yaha saare soobaajo  
maako.  
Zeynabu nani haalaaji ma'b'be.  
Abdullaahi nyalli haa saare Buuba.

O wayri warugo jangirde.  
O wayri yillugo minyiraa'be Saalihi.  
Mi wayri hofnugo minyiraawo Buuba.  
Buuba wayri remugo ngesa ma'b'be.  
Buuba wayri yahugo saare  
soobaajo maako.  
Zeynabu wayri nanugo haalaaji ma'b'be.  
Abdullaahi wayri nyallugo haa  
saare Buuba.

### Exercise 11 Additional Vocabulary

laanyugo: to pole (a boat), to drive (a car)  
koombowal (ngal), koombooje ('de): canoe, boat  
wa"ugo: to mount, climb, ride  
baskur (nga), or baskurwa (nga), baskurji ('di): bicycle

**Mee'di** plus an infinitive phrase usually has the meaning:

*to have done before*  
*to have ever done*

Mi mee'di laanyugo mootaa.  
A mee'di wa"ugo baskur?  
Mi mee'di warugo Nijeriya.

*I have driven a car.*  
*Have you ever ridden a bicycle?*  
*I have been to Nigeria before.*

Here are some questions and their positive answers.

### Exercise 12

A mee'di laanyugo mootaa naa?	Ooho, mi mee'di laanyugo mootaa.
A mee'di laanyugo koombowal naa?	Ooho, mi mee'di laanyugo koombowal.
A mee'di wa"ugo baskur naa?	Ooho, mi mee'di wa"ugo baskur.
Buuba mee'di wa"ugo puccu naa?	Ooho, Buuba mee'di wa"ugo puccu.
On mee'di warugo leddi Nijeriya naa?	Ooho, min mee'di warugo leddi Nijeriya.
'Be mee'di nastugo piiroowal naa?	Ooho, 'be mee'di nastugo piiroowal.

Another way to answer questions like the above is to simply use

\_\_\_\_\_ mee'di (positive)  
\_\_\_\_\_ mee'daay (negative)

Here are some questions and their positive answers. The answers use subject pronouns.

### Exercise 13

Usumaanu mee'di laanyugo koombowal naa?	O mee'di.
Minyiraa'be Buuba mee'di laanyugo moota naa?	'Be mee'di.
A mee'di wa"ugo baskur naa?	Mi mee'di.

Here are some questions and their negative answers. The answers use subject pronouns.

### Exercise 14

Minyiraawo Buuba mee'di wa"ugo puccu naa?	O mee'daay.
A mee'di warugo lesdi Nijeriya naa?	Mi mee'daay.
Yim'be ladde mee'di nastugo piiroowal naa?	'Be mee'daay.

### **Waawi**

A waawi jangugo naa?

*Can you read?*

Minyiraawo Zeynabu waawi  
wa"ugo baskur.

*Zainabu's younger sibling can ride  
a bicycle.*

In the following drill, the emphatic personal pronouns are replaced with the appropriate subject pronouns.

### Exercise 15 Substitution drill

an  
windugo  
kanko  
defugo  
enen  
laanyugo koombowal  
minin  
laanyugo moota  
onon  
wa"ugo baskur  
kam'be  
min  
jangugo

Min waawi jangugo.  
A waawi jangugo.  
A waawi windugo.  
O waawi windugo.  
O waawi defugo.  
En waawi defugo.  
En waawi laanyugo koombowal.  
Min waawi laanyugo koombowal.  
Min waawi laanyugo moota.  
On waawi laanyugo moota.  
On waawi wa"ugo baskur.  
'Be waawi wa"ugo baskur.  
Mi waawi wa"ugo baskur.  
Mi waawi jangugo.

Note that the negative of *waawi* is commonly the Continuous negative form *waawataa*.

Here are some questions and their negative answers.

### Exercise 16

A <i>waawi jangugo naa?</i>	Aa'a, mi <i>waawataa jangugo</i> .
O <i>waawi wa"ugo baskur naa?</i>	Aa'a, o <i>waawataa wa"ugo baskur</i> .
On <i>waawi defugo nyiiri naa?</i>	Aa'a, min <i>waawataa defugo nyiiri</i> .

**Sam** may be used to emphasize a negative.

Here are some questions and their negative answers using *sam*.

### Exercise 17

A <i>waawi laanyugo koombawal naa?</i>	Mi <i>waawataa laanyugo koombawal sam!</i>
'Be <i>waawi laanyugo moota naa?</i>	'Be <i>waawataa laanyugo moota sam!</i>
O <i>waawi wa"ugo puccu naa?</i>	O <i>waawataa wa"ugo puccu sam!</i>

*Waawi* and *waawataa* may also be used to indicate the ability to speak a language. In this case, the Infinitive is omitted and the name of the language directly follows the verb.

A <i>waawi Fulfulde naa?</i>	<i>Can you speak Fulfulde?</i>
Ooho, mi <i>waawi</i> .	<i>Yes, I can.</i>
Ooho, mi <i>waawi Fulfulde</i> .	<i>Yes, I can speak Fulfulde.</i>
Ooho, mi <i>waawi Fulfulde masin</i> .	<i>Yes, I can speak Fulfulde very well.</i>
Aa'a, mi <i>waawataa</i> .	<i>No, I can't.</i>
Aa'a, mi <i>waawataa Fulfulde</i> .	<i>No, I can't speak Fulfulde.</i>
Aa'a, mi <i>waawataa Fulfulde sam!</i>	<i>No, I can't speak Fulfulde at all!</i>
Aa'a, mi <i>waawataa sam!</i>	<i>No, I can't at all!</i>
Ooho, mi <i>waawi se'd'da se'd'da</i> .	<i>Yes, I can speak a little.</i>
Ooho, mi <i>waawi Fulfulde se'd'da se'd'da</i> .	<i>Yes, I can speak Fulfulde a little.</i>

### Exercise 18 Substitution drill

o  
se'd'da se'd'da  
'be  
masin  
a  
Nasaaraare  
on  
ko'do Buuba  
se'd'da se'd'da  
soobaa'jo Buuba  
  
soobaa'en Buuba  
  
ho'b'be Buuba  
Fulfulde  
masin  
mi

Mi waawi Fulfulde.  
O waawi Fulfulde.  
O waawi Fulfulde se'd'da se'd'da.  
'Be waawi Fulfulde se'd'da se'd'da.  
'Be waawi Fulfulde masin.  
A waawi Fulfulde masin.  
A waawi Nasaaraare masin.  
On waawi Nasaaraare masin.  
Ko'do Buuba waawi Nasaaraare masin.  
Ko'do Buuba waawi Nasaaraare se'd'da se'd'da.  
Soobaa'jo Buuba waawi Nasaaraare  
se'd'da se'd'da.  
Soobaa'en Buuba waawi Nasaaraare  
se'd'da se'd'da.  
Ho'b'be Buuba waawi Nasaaraare se'd'da se'd'da.  
Ho'b'be Buuba waawi Fulfulde se'd'da se'd'da.  
Ho'b'be Buuba waawi Fulfulde masin.  
Mi waawi Fulfulde masin.

### Exercise 19

a  
on  
sam  
Turankoojo  
Turanko'en  
kam'be  
ko'do Buuba  
kanko  
o

O waawataa Fulfulde.  
A waawataa Fulfulde.  
On waawataa Fulfulde.  
On waawataa Fulfulde sam.  
Turankoojo waawataa Fulfulde sam.  
Turanko'en waawataa Fulfulde sam.  
Kam'be waawataa Fulfulde sam.  
Ko'do Buuba waawataa Fulfulde sam.  
Kanko waawataa Fulfulde sam.  
O waawataa Fulfulde sam.

### 'Buri

'Buri is often used with Infinitives to indicate comparison.

Mi 'buri yi'dugo Muusa.

*I like Musa better.*

O 'buri nanugo Nasaaraare.

*He understands English better.*

A 'buri soodugo nyamdu.

*You buy more food.*

Here is a sentence and a cued word, followed by a sentence expressing a favorable comparison of the cued word with the object of the first sentence. Here is an example:

Mi yi'di Abdullaahi. (Buuba)

*I like Abdullahi. (Buba)*

Mi yi'di Abdullaahi amma mi  
'buri yi'dugo Buuba.

*I like Abdullaahi, but  
I like Buba better.*

### Exercise 20

Mi yi'di Abdullaahi. (Buuba)

Mi yi'di Abdullaahi amma mi  
'buri yi'dugo Buuba.

Mi nani Nasaaraare. (Fulfulde)

Mi nani Nasaaraare amma mi  
'buri nanugo Fulfulde.

Mi soodi tingyeere. (tumaatir)

Mi soodi tingyeere amma mi  
'buri soodugo tumaatir.

Mi wa"i puccu. (baskur)

Mi wa"i puccu amma mi  
'buri wa"ugo baskur.

Mi waawi Fulfulde. (Nasaaraare)

Mi waawi Fulfulde amma mi  
'buri waawugo Nasaaraare.

Mi waawi laanyugo moota. (koombowal) Mi waawi laanyugo moota amma  
mi 'buri laanyugo koombowal.

Here are two sets of sentences. The first uses nouns, the second uses pronouns.

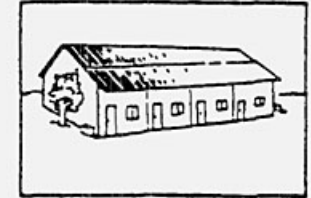
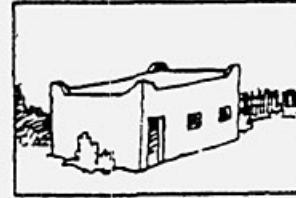
### Exercise 21

Yaakubu mee'di laanyugo moota.  
Alim mee'daay laanyugo koombowal.  
Minyiraawo Buuba mee'daay wa"ugo  
baskur.

O mee'di laanyugo nga.  
O mee'daay laanyugo ngal.  
O mee'daay wa"ugo nga.

Saalihi mee'di wa"ugo puccu.  
Zeynabu waawi defugo nyiri.  
Zeynabu yi'di soodugo tummude.  
Zeynabu yi'di o sooda tummude.  
Buuba wayri yi'ugo laamii'do.  
Muusa silmini minyiraa'be Buuba.  
Ko'do Buuba waawi Fulfulde masin.  
Soobaaajo Buuba waawataa Nasaaraare  
sam!  
Saalihi 'buri yi'dugo Muusa.

O mee'di wa"ugo ngu.  
O waawi defugo ndi.  
O yi'di soodugo nde.  
O yi'di o sooda nde.  
O wayri yi'ugo mo.  
O silmini 'be.  
O waawi nde masin.  
O waawataa nde sam!  
O 'buri yi'dugo mo.





## LESSON 32

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 32, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 21 new vocabulary items
- use some of the Fulfulde words for family members
- use woni
- use ko in place of 'dume.

## Dialogue

- Buuba: Mi 'don yaha laara bandiraa'be haa Giirey. *I am going to see relatives in Girei.*
- Muusa: Asee, on woodi bandiraa'be haa Giirey? *So, you have relatives at Girei?*
- B: Ooho, minyiraawo amin 'don te'a ton bee esiraa'be. *Yes, our younger sister is married (and living) there, with the in-laws.*
- M: Laaru, mi yehino Giirey boo. *Look, I went to Girei too.*
- B: Ko yaari maa Giirey? *What took you to Girei?*
- M: Mi yehino nyaamugo luumo bee laarugo dewer'diraawo Aa'i. *I went to do some marketing and to see A'i's sister.*
- B: Haa toy jooni mawniraawo maako te'ata? *Where is her older sister married (and living)?*
- M: O 'don te'a haa Jaalingo. *She's married (and living) in Jalingo.*
- B: Mi nani maamiraawo mo'on hooti Jaalingo. *I hear that your grandmother has gone home to Jalingo.*
- M: Ooho, kanko bee dewer'diraawo Umaru fuh 'be eggi. *Yes, she and Umaru's brother have both moved there.*

## Vocabulary

- bandiraawo (o), bandiraa'be ('be): *blood relative*  
esiraawo (o), esiraa'be ('be): *in-law*  
yottugo: *to reach, to arrive at*  
yaarugo: *to take to a place*  
dewer'diraawo (o), dewer'diraa'be ('be): *sibling, sister, brother*  
mawniraawo (o), mawniraa'be ('be): *older sibling, older sister, older brother*  
te'ugo: *to marry, to marry (and live at)*  
maamiraawo (o), maamiraa'be ('be): *grandparent, grandmother, grandfather*  
eggugo: *to migrate, to change domicile*  
Umaru: *man's name*  
Giirey: *Girei (name of a town)*  
Jaalingo: *Jalingo (name of a town)*

Here is a list of some singular and plural words for relatives.

Exercise 1

bandiraawo	bandiraa'be:	relative
gorko	wor'be:	husband
debbo	rew'be:	wife
nawliraawo	nawliraa'be:	co-wife
baabiraawo	baabiraa'be:	father
daadiraawo	daadiraa'be:	mother
'bi'd'do	'bi'b'be:	child
dewer'diraawo	dewer'diraa'be:	sibling
mawniraawo	mawniraa'be:	older sibling
minyiraawo	minyiraa'be:	younger sibling
esiraawo	esiraa'be:	in-law
maamiraawo	maamiraa'be:	grandparent
taaniraawo	taaniraa'be:	grandchild

Exercise 2

Awdu: *Audu (man's name)*

Mayrama: *Mairama (woman's name)*

Astawaa'bi: *Astawabi (woman's name)*

Amiinatu: *Aminatu (woman's name)*

Now is an appropriate time for you to meet some more members of Buba Bello's extended family.

Exercise 3

1.



Ndaa esiraawo Buuba.

Innde maako Awdu.  
Awdu boo 'dum  
dewer'diraawo  
Zeynabu.

2.



Ndaa debbo Awdu.

Innde maako Mayrama.  
Mayrama boo 'dum  
esiraawo Buuba.

3.



Ndaa nawliraawo  
Mayrama.

Innde maako Astawaa'bi.  
Astawaa'bi boo 'dum  
debbo Awdu bee  
esiraawo Buuba bee  
nawliraawo Mayrama.

4.



Ndaa debbo Bello.

Innde maako Amiinatu.  
Amiinatu boo 'dum  
daadiraawo Buuba.  
Amiinatu 'dum  
maamiraawo Usumaanu  
bee Sutura bee Adamu.

### Woni

Woni is the Fulfulde copula, first met in Lesson 15. While, as we have seen, the copula is frequently omitted in Fulfulde, it is nevertheless used in certain situations and sometimes interchangeably with the structures characterized by copula omission. For example,

after moy:

Moy Mayrama? = Moy woni Mayrama?

Moy nawliraawo Astawaa'bi? = Moy woni nawliraawo  
Astawaa'bi?

or, in a question, instead of 'dum:

Astawaa'bi woni nawliraawo Mayrama naa?

Here are some questions and answers.

### Exercise 4

Moy woni Awdu?  
Moy woni Mayrama?  
Moy woni Astawaa'bi?  
Moy woni Amiinatu?  
Moy woni Bello?  
Moy woni Usumaanu?

Awdu 'dum esiraawo Buuba.  
Mayrama 'dum nawliraawo Astawaa'bi.  
Astawaa'bi 'dum nawliraawo Mayrama.  
Amiinatu 'dum daadiraawo Buuba.  
Bello 'dum maamiraawo Usumaanu.  
Usumaanu 'dum taaniraawo Bello.

### Exercise 5

Moy woni dewer'diraawo Zeynabu?	Awdu 'dum dewer'diraawo Zeynabu.
Moy woni mawniraawo Sutura?	Usumaanu 'dum mawniraawo Sutura.
Moy woni minyiraawo Usumaanu?	Sutura 'dum minyiraawo Usumaanu.
Moy woni maamiraawo Usumaanu?	Amiinatu 'dum maamiraawo Usumaanu.
Moy woni baabiraawo Usumaanu?	Buuba 'dum baabiraawo Usumaanu.
Moy woni esiraawo Buuba?	Awdu 'dum esiraawo Buuba.
Moy woni bandiraawo Buuba?	Bello 'dum bandiraawo Buuba.

### Exercise 6

Awdu bee Astawaa'bi woni esiraa'be Buuba naa?	Ooho, Awdu bee Astawaa'bi 'dum esiraa'be Buuba.
Mayrama bee Astawaa'bi woni esiraa'be Buuba naa?	Ooho, Mayrama bee Astawaa'bi 'dum esiraa'be Buuba.
Sutura bee Adamu woni dewer'diraa'be Usumaanu naa?	Ooho, Sutura bee Adamu 'dum dewer'diraa'be Usumaanu.
Sutura bee Adamu woni minyiraa'be Usumaanu naa?	Ooho, Sutura bee Adamu 'dum minyiraa'be Usumaanu.
Usumaanu bee Sutura woni mawniraa'be Adamu naa?	Ooho, Usumaanu bee Sutura 'dum mawniraa'be Adamu.
Bello bee Amiinatu woni maamiraa'be Usumaanu naa?	Ooho, Bello bee Amiinatu 'dum maamiraa'be Usumaanu.
Usumaanu bee Sutura woni taaniraa'be Amiinatu naa?	Ooho, Usumaanu bee Sutura 'dum taaniraa'be Amiinatu.
Bello bee Amiinatu woni bandiraa'be Buuba naa?	Ooho, Bello bee Amiinatu 'dum bandiraa'be Buuba.

### **Ko**

Ko in many cases can substitute for 'dume. For example:

Ko yaari maa Giirey? = 'Dume yaari maa Giirey?

### Exercise 7 Substitution drill

'dume	Ko yaari maa Giirey?
Pariya	'Dume yaari maa Giirey?
ko	'Dume yaari maa Pariya?
'Yoola	Ko yaari maa Pariya?
'dume	Ko yaari maa 'Yoola?
Jaalingo	'Dume yaari maa 'Yoola?
ko	'Dume yaari maa Jaalingo?
Nijeriya	Ko yaari maa Jaalingo?
'dume	Ko yaari maa Nijeriya?
Giirey	'Dume yaari maa Nijeriya?
ko	'Dume yaari maa Giirey?
	Ko yaari maa Giirey?

### Exercise 8

-ata form

Ko yaarata maa Giirey?  
'Dume yaarata maa Giirey?  
Ko esiraa'be ma'b'be waddata?  
'Dume esiraa'be ma'b'be waddata?  
Ko mawniraawo amin wi'ata?  
'Dume mawniraawo amin wi'ata?  
Ko maamiraawo mo'on jangata?  
'Dume maamiraawo mo'on jangata?  
Ko dewer'diraa'be maako defata?  
'Dume dewer'diraa'be maako defata?  
Ko taaniraawo mo'on huuwata?  
'Dume taaniraawo mo'on huuwata?

Completed

Ko yaari maa Giirey?  
'Dume yaari maa Giirey?  
Ko esiraa'be ma'b'be waddi?  
'Dume esiraa'be ma'b'be waddi?  
Ko mawniraawo amin wi'i?  
'Dume mawniraawo amin wi'i?  
Ko maamiraawo mo'on jangi?  
'Dume maamiraawo mo'on jangi?  
Ko dewer'diraa'be maako defi?  
'Dume dewer'diraa'be maako defi?  
Ko taaniraawo mo'on huuwi?  
'Dume taaniraawo mo'on huuwi?

### Exercise 9

dewer'diraa'be  
ma'b'be  
mo'on  
taaniraawo  
minyiraawo  
moo'don  
mee'den  
esiraawo  
ma'b'be  
mawniraawo  
maako

Haa toy jooni mawniraawo maako te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni dewer'diraa'be maako te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni dewer'diraa'be ma'b'be te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni dewer'diraa'be mo'on te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni taaniraawo mo'on te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni minyiraawo mo'on te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni minyiraawo moo'don te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni minyiraawo mee'den te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni esiraawo mee'den te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni esiraawo ma'b'be te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni mawniraawo ma'b'be te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni mawniraawo maako te'ata?

### Exercise 10

esiraawo Zeynabu  
mawniraawo Buuba  
wuro ma'b'be.  
Giirey  
minyiraa'be Buuba  
Pariya  
leddi ma'b'be  
mawniraawo Zeynabu

Mawniraawo Zeynabu 'don te'a haa leddi  
ma'b'be.  
Esiraawo Zeynabu 'don te'a haa leddi ma'b'be.  
Mawniraawo Buuba 'don te'a haa leddi ma'b'be.  
Mawniraawo Buuba 'don te'a haa wuro ma'b'be.  
Mawniraawo Buuba 'don te'a haa Giirey.  
Minyiraa'be Buuba 'don te'a haa Giirey.  
Minyiraa'be Buuba 'don te'a haa Pariya.  
Minyiraa'be Buuba 'don te'a haa leddi ma'b'be.  
Mawniraawo Zeynabu 'don te'a haa leddi  
ma'b'be.

## Exercise 11

Haa toy 'bi'd'do Abdullaahi hooti? (Giirey)  
 Haa toy bi'b'be Bello hootata? (Jaalingo)  
 Haa toy maamiraawo Buuba hooti? (Pariya)  
 Haa toy maamiraa'be Buuba hootata? (Pariya)  
 Haa toy esiraa'be Zeynabu eggì? (Jaalingo)  
 Haa toy taaniraawo maako eggata? ('Yoola)  
 Haa toy taaniraa'be maako eggì? ('Yoola)  
 Haa toy baabiraawo mo'on eggata? (Giirey)

O hooti Giirey.  
 'Be 'don hoota Jaalingo.  
 O hooti Pariya.  
 'Be 'don hoota Pariya.  
 'Be eggì Jaalingo.  
 O 'don egga 'Yoola.  
 'Be eggì 'Yoola.  
 O 'don egga Giirey.

## Jangde timmunde

Ngam 'dume a yehi Giirey?  
 Ngam mi yi'di yi'ugo bandiraa'be am.  
 Bandiraa'be maa haa Giirey 'duu'di naa?  
 'Be 'duu'di. Min nee'bi haa ton.  
 Maamiraa'be maa 'don ton naa?  
 Ooho, 'be 'don. Amma mi woodi dewer'diraawo 'don te'a haa Jaalingo.  
 Ndey o te'i?  
 Mi yejjiti, amma 'dum nee'bi.  
 Noy innde maako?  
 Innde maako Aa'i.

## Ngewta



## LESSON 33

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 33, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 4 new vocabulary items
- use the personal pronoun possessives for family members
- use kori.





## Dialogue

Awdu: Gaafara mo'on.

*Excuse me (may I come in?)*

Buuba: 'Dum moyjo? A! Awdu  
naa? Sannu e warugo.

*Who is it? Ah! Is that  
Audu? Welcome.*

A: Yawwa, maadalla.

*Thank you, thank you!*

B: Kori a wari jam?

*I hope you are well.*

A: Jam koo'dume.

*I'm just fine.*

B: Noy a acci der'da Amadu?

*How did you leave your brother  
Ahmadu (and family)?*

A: 'Be fuh 'be yam'be.

*They are all well.*

B: Toy 'biya Dawda woni jooni?

*Where's your son Dauda now?*

A: O 'don haa mawniiko Yaakubu.

*He's with his elder brother Yakubu.*

B: A yiidi bee esiraawo am naa?

*Did you meet with my in-law?*

A: Aa'a, amma mi yiidi e  
taaniraawo maako.

*No, but I met with his  
grandchild.*

B: Too, boo'd'dum. Jippu jam!

*So, great! Safe arrival!*

A: Useko.

*Thank you.*

## Vocabulary

kori: *surely*

accugo: *to leave, to leave off, to let go*

jamo (o), yam'be ('be): *someone in good health*

'biya (o): *your child (son or daughter)*

Dawda: *Dawda (man's name)*

mawniiko (o): *his elder brother, her elder brother*

der'da: *your brother (or sister)*

## Personal Pronoun Possessives for Family Members

The singulars of some words for family members have counterparts which include the singular possessive pronouns. These counterparts serve to shorten the expression, but the longer forms are also in use. For example:

minyiraawo am = minyam

'bi'd'do maa = 'biya

gorko maako = goriiko

gorko muu'dum = gorum

Here is a list of some words for relatives along with their singular personal possessive counterparts.

### Exercise 1

gorko

goram: *my husband*

gora: *your husband*

goriiko or gorum: *her husband*

nawliraawo

nawlam: *my co-wife*

nawla: *your co-wife*

nawliiko or nawlum: *her co-wife*

'bi'd'do or 'bii

'biyam: *my child*

'biya: *your child*

'biyiiko or 'biyum: *his/her child*

## dewer'diraawo

dewer'dam or der'dam: *my sibling*  
dewer'da or der'da: *your sibling*  
dewer'diiko or dewer'dum: *his/her sibling*

## mawniraawo

mawnam: *my elder sibling*  
mawna: *your elder sibling*  
mawniiko or mawnum: *his/her elder sibling*

## esiraawo

esam: *my in-law*  
esa: *your in-law*  
esiiko or esum: *his/her in-law*

## taaniraawo

taanam: *my grandchild*  
taana: *your grandchild*  
taaniiko or taanum: *his/her grandchild*

## bandiraawo

bandam: *my relative*  
banda: *your relative*  
bandiiko or bandum: *his/her relative*

The words for *father*, *mother* and *grandparent* also have shortened forms which are used with the personal possessive pronouns, but they are written as two words.

### Exercise 2

baabiraawo (often baaba as you have learned)

baa am: *my father*  
baa maa: *your father*  
baa maako: *his/her father*

Of course, the forms: *baaba am*, *baaba maa*, *baaba maako* are also used.

daadiraawo

daada am: *my mother*  
daada maa: *your mother*  
daada maako: *his/her mother*

maamiraawo

maama am: *my grandparent*  
maama maa: *your grandparent*  
maama maako: *his/her grandparent*

debbo does not have a shortened form:

debbo am: *my wife*  
debbo maa: *your wife*  
debbo maako: *his wife*

Here are some long form and short form possessives for relatives — first person.

### Exercise 3

gorko am	goram
nawliraawo am	nawlam
'bi'd'do am	'biyam
dewer'diraawo am	dewer'dam, der'dam
mawniraawo am	mawnam
minyiraawo am	minyam
esiraawo am	esam
taaniraawo am	taanam
maamiraawo am	maama am
baabiraawo am	baa am
daadiraawo am	daada am
bandiraawo am	bandam

### Exercise 4

A yiidi bee gorko am naa?	A yiidi bee goram naa?
A yiidi bee nawliraawo am naa?	A yiidi bee nawlam naa?
A yiidi bee 'bi'd'do am naa?	A yiidi bee 'biyam naa?
A yiidi bee dewer'diraawo am naa?	A yiidi bee dewer'dam naa?
	A yiidi bee der'dam naa?
A yiidi bee mawniraawo am naa?	A yiidi bee mawnam naa?
A yiidi bee minyiraawo am naa?	A yiidi bee minyam naa?

### Exercise 5

Noy a acci esiraawo am?	Noy a acci esam?
Noy a acci taaniraawo am?	Noy a acci taanam?
Noy a acci maamiraawo am?	Noy a acci maama am?
Noy a acci baabiraawo am?	Noy a acci baa am?
Noy a acci daadiraawo am?	Noy a acci daada am?
Noy a acci bandiraawo am?	Noy a acci bandam?

Exercise 6 Substitution drill. Second person.

nawliraawo maa	gora
'bi'd'do maa	nawla
dewer'diraawo maa	'biya
mawniraawo maa	dewer'da, der'da
minyiraawo maa	mawna
esiraawo maa	minya
taaniraawo maa	esa
maamiraawo maa	taana
baabiraawo maa	maama maa
daadiraawo maa	baa maa
bandiraawo maa	daada maa
gorko maa	banda
	gora

Exercise 7

Mi andi gorko maa.	Mi andi gora.
Mi andi nawliraawo maa.	Mi andi nawla.
Mi andi 'bi'd'do maa.	Mi andi 'biya.
Mi andaa dewer'diraawo maa sam.	Mi andaa dewer'da sam.
	Mi andaa der'da sam.
Mi andaa mawniraawo maa sam.	Mi andaa mawna sam.
Mi andaa minyiraawo maa sam.	Mi andaa minya sam.

Exercise 8

Mi yi'daa esiraawo maa sam.	Mi yi'daa esa sam.
Mi yi'daa taaniraawo maa sam.	Mi yi'daa taana sam.
Mi yi'daa bandiraawo maa sam.	Mi yi'daa banda sam.
Mi yi'di maamiraawo maa masin.	Mi yi'di maama maa masin.
Mi yi'di baabiraawo maa masin.	Mi yi'di baa maa masin.
Mi yi'di daadiraawo maa masin.	Mi yi'di daada maa masin.

Exercise 9 Substitution drill. Third person.

nawliraawo maako	goriiko
'bi'd'do maako	nawliiko
dewer'diraawo maako	'biyiiko
mawniraawo maako	dewer'diiko, der'diiko
minyiraawo maako	mawniiko
esiraawo maako	minyiiko
taaniraawo maako	esiiko
maamiraawo maako	taaniiko
baabiraawo maako	maama maako
daadiraawo maako	baa maako
bandiraawo maako	daada maako
gorko maako	bandiiko
	goriiko

### Exercise 10

Toy gorko maako woni jooni?  
Toy nawliraawo maako woni  
jooni?  
Toy 'bi'd'do maako woni  
jooni?  
Toy dewer'diraawo maako  
woni jooni?  
Toy mawniraawo maako  
woni jooni?  
Toy minyiraawo maako  
woni jooni?

Toy goriiko woni jooni?  
Toy nawliiko woni jooni?  
Toy 'biyiiko woni jooni?  
Toy dewer'diiko woni jooni?  
Toy mawniiko woni jooni?  
Toy minyiiko woni jooni?

### Exercise 11

O 'don haa esiraawo maako.  
O 'don haa taaniraawo maako.  
O 'don haa maamiraawo maako.  
O 'don haa baabiraawo maako.  
O 'don haa daadiraawo maako.  
O 'don haa bandiraawo maako.

O 'don haa esiiko.  
O 'don haa taaniiko.  
O 'don haa maama maako.  
O 'don haa baa maako.  
O 'don haa daada maako.  
O 'don haa bandiiko.

### Substitution drills

### Exercise 12

mawniiko  
der'da  
'biyiiko  
taaniiko  
esa  
bandiiko  
dewer'diiko  
der'diiko  
minyiiko

Haa toy jooni minyiiko te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni mawniiko te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni der'da te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni 'biyiiko te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni taaniiko te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni esa te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni bandiiko te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni dewer'diiko te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni der'diiko te'ata?  
Haa toy jooni minyiiko te'ata?

## A Note on yiidugo.

Yiidugo, when followed by a human noun takes bee or e after it as you saw in the dialogue: A yiidi bee esiraawo am naa? Aa'a, amma mi yiidi e taaniraawo maako.

### Exercise 13

goram	Mi yotti bandam.
'biyam	Mi yotti goram.
laarugo	Mi yotti 'biyam.
'biyiiko	Mi laari 'biyam.
daada maako	Mi laari 'biyiiko.
hofnugo	Mi laari daada maako.
baa maako	Mi hofni daada maako.
maama maako	Mi hofni baa maako.
silminugo	Mi hofni maama maako.
bandiiko	Mi silmini maama maako.
esiiko	Mi silmini bandiiko.
yiidugo e	Mi silmini esiiko.
esam	Mi yiidi e esiiko.
minyam	Mi yiidi e esam.
yillugo	Mi yiidi e minyam.
banda	Mi yilli minyam.
bandiiko	Mi yilli banda.
yottugo	Mi yilli bandiiko.
'biya	Mi yotti bandiiko.
bandam	Mi yotti 'biya.
	Mi yotti bandam.

### **Kori**

Kori is often used in a greeting situation.

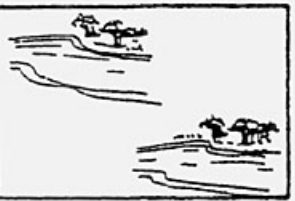
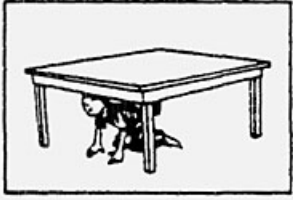
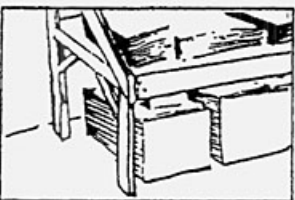
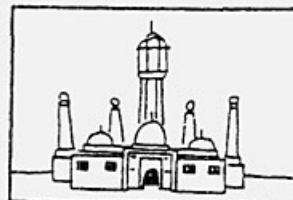
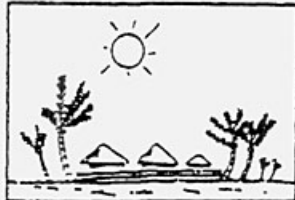
*Surely, (hopefully) you are well?*

*Surely, (hopefully) you have returned safely?*

### Exercise 14

On yam'be?	Kori a jamo?
A warti jam?	Kori on yam'be?
A fini jam?	Kori a warti jam?
A nyalli jam?	Kori a fini jam?
^ hirti jam?	Kori a nyalli jam?
. jamo?	Kori a hirti jam?
	Kori a jamo?

Ngewta



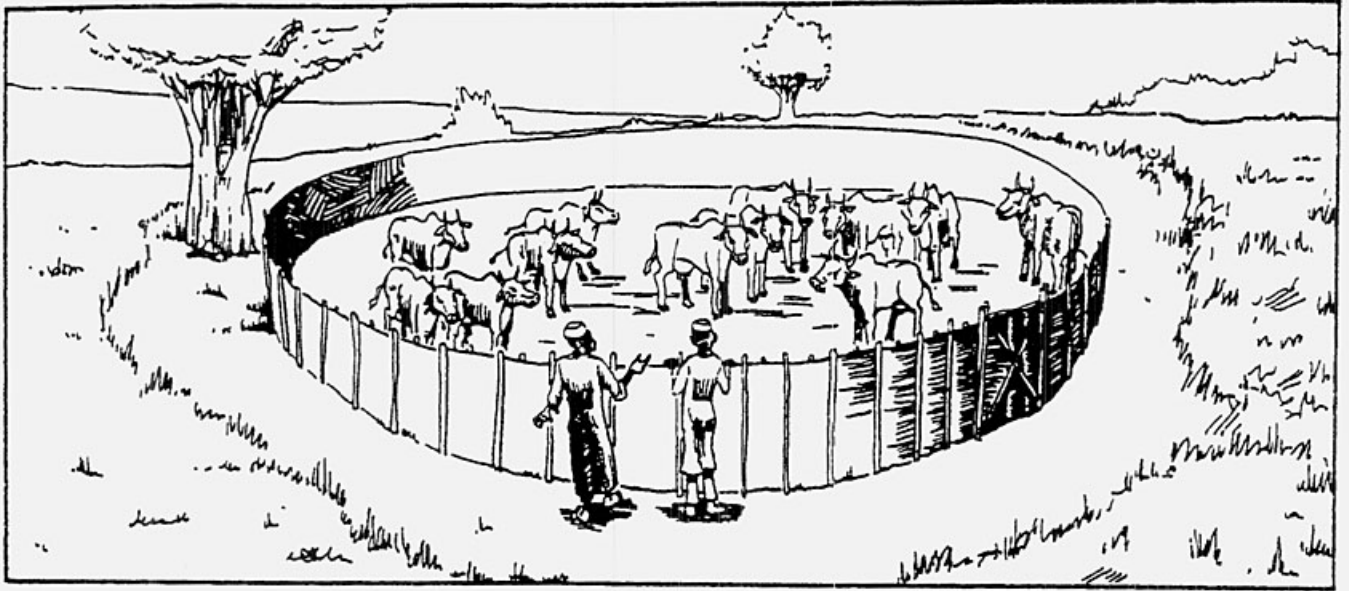


## LESSON 34

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 34, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 1 new vocabulary item
- use the numbers 11 to 100.



### Dialogue

Awdu: Toy a yahata jooni?

*Where are you going now?*

Gi'daa'do: Mi 'don yaha limugo  
na'i 'di.

*I'm going to count these cattle.*

A: 'Di noy?

*How many are there?*

G: 'Di sappo e 'di'di.

*They are 12.*

A: On noy haa baabiraawo  
moo'don?

*How many are you at your  
father's? (How many children does  
your father have?)*

G: Min jowheetato, rew'be tato,  
wor'be jowo, amma min 'di'do  
haa daadiraawo amin.

*We are eight, three female, five  
male, but my mother has (only) two  
(i.e. me and another).*

A: On 'don mari cuu'di noy?

*How many huts have you?*

G: Min 'don mari cuu'di jowee'di'di.

*We have seven huts.*

### Vocabulary

limugo: to count

sappo e 'di'di: twelve

Let's review the numbers from one to ten:

Exercise 1

Limu haa sappo:

go'o  
'di'di  
tati  
nayi  
jowi  
joweego  
jowee'di'di  
joweetati  
jowenayi  
sappo

Exercise 2

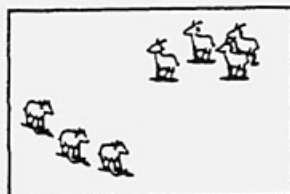
1.



Limu na'i 'di.

Go'o, 'di'di, tati,  
nayi, jowi.

2.



Limu bee'i 'di.

Go'o, 'di'di, tati,  
nayi, jowi, joweego,  
jowee'di'di.

3.



Sey a lima  
baali 'di

Go'o, 'di'di, tati,  
nayi, jowi, joweego,  
jowee'di'di, joweetati.

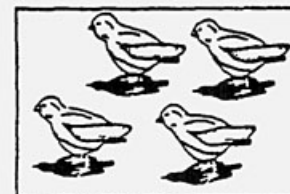
4.



Ndikka a lima  
pucci 'di.

Go'o, 'di'di, tati,  
nayi, jowi, joweego,  
jowee'di'di, joweetati,  
jowenayi.

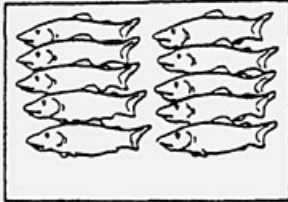
5.



Useni, limu  
colli 'di.

Go'o, 'di'di, tati,  
nayi.

6.



Useni, limu  
li'd'di 'di.

Go'o, 'di'di, tati,  
nayi, jowi, joweego,  
jowee'di'di, joweetati,  
joweenayi, sappo.

Here are some more Fulfulde numbers.

Exercise 3

- |     |                       |
|-----|-----------------------|
| 11  | sappo e go'o          |
| 12  | sappo e 'di'di        |
| 13  | sappo e tati          |
| 14  | sappo e nayi          |
| 15  | sappo e jowi          |
| 16  | sappo e joweego       |
| 17  | sappo e jowee'di'di   |
| 18  | sappo e joweetati     |
| 19  | sappo e joweenayi     |
| 20  | noogas                |
| 21  | noogas e go'o         |
| 30  | cappan'de tati        |
| 40  | cappan'de nayi        |
| 50  | cappan'de jowi        |
| 60  | cappan'de joweego     |
| 70  | cappan'de jowee'di'di |
| 80  | cappan'de joweetati   |
| 90  | cappan'de joweenayi   |
| 100 | temerre               |

Exercise 4

- |    |                     |    |                      |
|----|---------------------|----|----------------------|
| 11 | sappo e go'o        | 21 | noogas e go'o        |
| 12 | sappo e 'di'di      | 22 | noogas e 'di'di      |
| 13 | sappo e tati        | 23 | noogas e tati        |
| 14 | sappo e nayi        | 24 | noogas e nayi        |
| 15 | sappo e jowi        | 25 | noogas e jowi        |
| 16 | sappo e joweego     | 26 | noogas e joweego     |
| 17 | sappo e jowee'di'di | 27 | noogas e jowee'di'di |
| 18 | sappo e joweetati   | 28 | noogas e joweetati   |
| 19 | sappo e joweenayi   | 29 | noogas e joweenayi   |
| 20 | noogas              | 30 | cappan'de tati       |

31	cappan'de tati e go'o	41	cappan'de nayi e go'o
32	cappan'de tati e 'di'di	42	cappan'de nayi e 'di'di
33	cappan'de tati e tati	43	cappan'de nayi e tati
34	cappan'de tati e nayi	44	cappan'de nayi e nayi
35	cappan'de tati e jowi	45	cappan'de nayi e jowi
36	cappan'de tati e joweego	46	cappan'de nayi e joweego
37	cappan'de tati e jowee'di'di	47	cappan'de nayi e jowee'di'di
38	cappan'de tati e joweetati	48	cappan'de nayi e joweetati
39	cappan'de tati e joweenayi	49	cappan'de nayi e joweenayi
40	cappan'de nayi	50	cappan'de jowi
51	cappan'de jowi e go'o	61	cappan'de joweego e go'o
52	cappan'de jowi e 'di'di	62	cappan'de joweego e 'di'di
53	cappan'de jowi e tati	63	cappan'de joweego e tati
54	cappan'de jowi e nayi	64	cappan'de joweego e nayi
55	cappan'de jowi e jowi	65	cappan'de joweego e jowi
56	cappan'de jowi e joweego	66	cappan'de joweego e joweego
57	cappan'de jowi e jowee'di'di	67	cappan'de joweego e jowee'di'di
58	cappan'de jowi e joweetati	68	cappan'de joweego e joweetati
59	cappan'de jowi e joweenayi	69	cappan'de joweego e joweenayi
60	cappan'de joweego	70	cappan'de jowee'di'di
71	cappan'de jowee'di'di e go'o	81	cappan'de joweetati e go'o
72	cappan'de jowee'di'di e 'di'di	82	cappan'de joweetati e 'di'di
73	cappan'de jowee'di'di e tati	83	cappan'de joweetati e tati
74	cappan'de jowee'di'di e nayi	84	cappan'de joweetati e nayi
75	cappan'de jowee'di'di e jowi	85	cappan'de joweetati e jowi
76	cappan'de jowee'di'di e joweego	86	cappan'de joweetati e joweego
77	cappan'de jowee'di'di e jowee'di'di	87	cappan'de joweetati e jowee'di'di
78	cappan'de jowee'di'di e joweetati	88	cappan'de joweetati e joweetati
79	cappan'de jowee'di'di e joweenayi	89	cappan'de joweetati e joweenayi
80	cappan'de joweetati	90	cappan'de joweenayi
91	cappan'de joweenayi e go'o		
92	cappan'de joweenayi e 'di'di		
93	cappan'de joweenayi e tati		
94	cappan'de joweenayi e nayi		
95	cappan'de joweenayi e jowi		
96	cappan'de joweenayi e joweego		
97	cappan'de joweenayi e jowee'di'di		
98	cappan'de joweenayi e joweetati		
99	cappan'de joweenayi e joweenayi		
100	temerre		

### Exercise 5

Give the following numbers in Fulfulde.

12	sappo e 'di'di
17	sappo e jowee'di'di
21	noogas e go'o
29	noogas e joweenayi
30	cappan'de tati
34	cappan'de tati e nayi
42	cappan'de nayi e 'di'di
47	cappan'de nayi e jowee'di'di
50	cappan'de jowi
55	cappan'de jowi e jowi
64	cappan'de joweego e nayi
69	cappan'de joweego e joweenayi
73	cappan'de jowee'di'di e tati
78	cappan'de jowee'di'di e joweetati
86	cappan'de joweetati e joweego
89	cappan'de joweetati e joweenayi
92	cappan'de joweenayi e 'di'di
96	cappan'de joweenayi e joweego
100	temerre

### Exercise 6 Addition

Jowi bee jowi noy?	'Dum sappo.
Jowi bee joweego noy?	'Dum sappo e go'o.
Jowi bee jowee'di'di noy?	'Dum sappo e 'di'di.
Jowi bee joweetati noy?	'Dum sappo e tati.
Jowi bee joweenayi noy?	'Dum sappo e nayi.
Jowi bee sappo noy?	'Dum sappo e jowi.
Jowi bee sappo e go'o noy?	'Dum sappo e joweego.
Jowi bee sappo e 'di'di noy?	'Dum sappo e jowee'di'di.
Jowi bee sappo e tati noy?	'Dum sappo e joweetati.
Jowi bee sappo e nayi noy?	'Dum sappo e joweenayi.
Jowi bee sappo e jowi noy?	'Dum noogas.

### Exercise 7 Multiplication

Sappo nde 'di'di noy?	'Dum noogas.
Sappo nde tati noy?	'Dum cappan'de tati.
Sappo nde nayi noy?	'Dum cappan'de nayi.
Sappo nde jowi noy?	'Dum cappan'de jowi.
Sappo nde joweego noy?	'Dum cappan'de joweego.
Sappo nde jowee'di'di noy?	'Dum cappan'de jowee'di'di.
Sappo nde joweetati noy?	'Dum cappan'de joweetati.
Sappo nde joweenayi noy?	'Dum cappan'de joweenayi.
Sappo nde sappo noy?	'Dum temerre.

Exercise 8 Addition

Noogas bee go'o noy?  
Noogas bee 'di'di noy?  
Sappo bee sappo e go'o noy?  
Sappo bee sappo e jowi noy?  
Noogas bee sappo e go'o noy?  
Noogas bee sappo e joweego noy?

'Dum noogas e go'o.  
'Dum noogas e 'di'di.  
'Dum noogas e go'o.  
'Dum noogas e jowi.  
'Dum cappan'de tati e go'o.  
'Dum cappan'de tati e joweego.

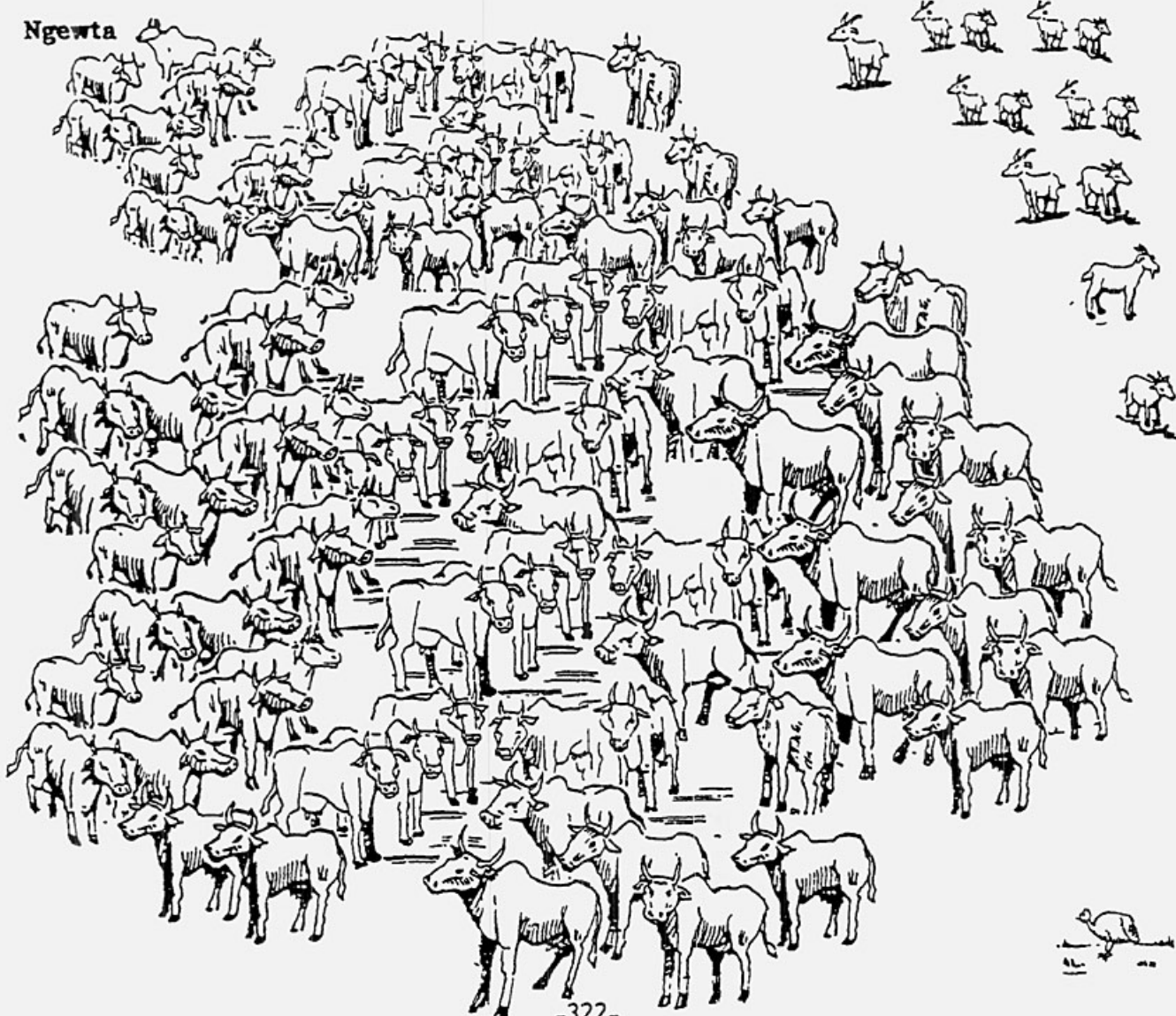
Cappan'de tati bee sappo e go'o noy?  
Cappan'de tati bee sappo e jowee'di'di noy?  
Noogas bee noogas e tati noy?  
Noogas bee noogas e joweego noy?

'Dum cappan'de nayi e go'o.  
'Dum cappan'de nayi e jowe'di'di.  
'Dum cappan'de nayi e tati.  
'Dum cappan'de nayi e joweego.

Cappan'de nayi bee sappo e go'o noy?  
Cappan'de nayi bee sappo e joweetati noy?  
Cappande tati bee noogas noy?  
Cappan'de tati bee noogas e joweetati noy?

'Dum cappan'de jowi e go'o.  
'Dum cappan'de jowi e joweetati.  
'Dum cappan'de jowi.  
'Dum cappan'de jowi e joweetati.

Ngewta



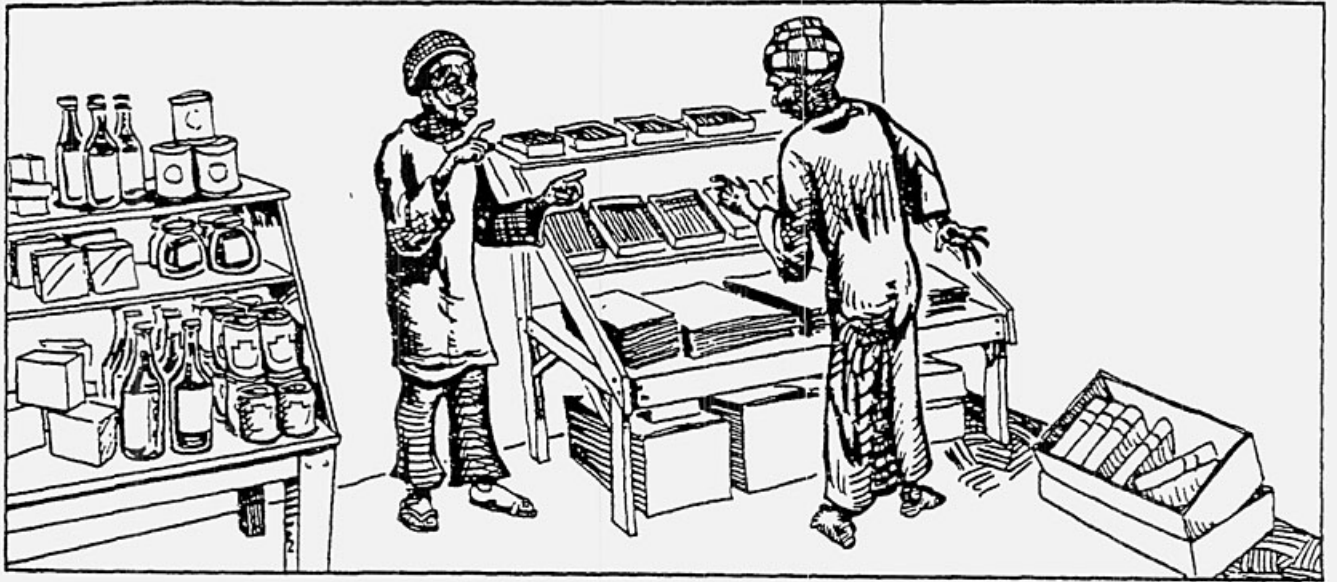
## LESSON 35

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 35, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 8 new vocabulary items
- use the terms referring to Nigerian money
- use market vocabulary and market phrases.





### Dialogue

Buuba: Sannu, mallam.

Jawmu 'dereji: Yawwa! Sannu  
maa. Noy, ko a yi'di?

B: Mi yi'di soodugo bindirgol  
bee buuli.

JD: Mi 'don mari.

B: Noy ceede man?

JD: Bindirgol maa kobo tati.  
Buuli, 'di'di koboore.

B: Too, mi yi'di bindirgol tati  
bee buuli joweego. Noy  
ceede man?

JD: Suley e koboore 'di'di.

B: Maadalla. Sey wakkati feere.

JD: Sey wakkati feere.

*(How) What do you want?*

*I want to buy a pencil and paper.*

*I have (them).*

*How much is it?*

*Your pencil is three kobo. Paper  
is two (sheets) a kobo.*

*Okay, I want three pencils and  
six sheets of paper.  
How much is it?*

*A shilling and two kobo.*

*Fine. Until another time.*

*Until another time.*

## Vocabulary

buulol (ngol) buuli ('di): *sheet of blank paper*  
suley (nde), or suleere (nde), suleeje ('de): *a coin worth 10 kobo*  
sey wakkati feere: *'til another time*

### Exercise 1 Additional Vocabulary

kondong (nde) kongdongje ('de): *banana*, generally used in the singular  
mangoro (nde), mangorooje ('de): *mango*, generally used in the singular

The following four exercises involve useful market phrases.

### Exercise 2

kusel	Mi yi'di soodugo bindirgol bee buuli.
kondong	Mi yi'di soodugo kusel.
mangoro	Mi yi'di soodugo kondong.
kondong e mangoro	Mi yi'di soodugo mangoro.
tumaatir	Mi yi'di soodugo kondong e mangoro.
tingyeere	Mi yi'di soodugo tumaatir.
tumaatir e tingyeere	Mi yi'di soodugo tingyeere.
nyebbam	Mi yi'di soodugo tumaatir e tingyeere.
liingu	Mi yi'di soodugo nyebbam.
bindirgol bee buuli	Mi yi'di soodugo liingu.
	Mi yi'di soodugo bindirgol bee buuli.

Haa toy 'be sorrata kondong?

*Where do they sell bananas?*

### Exercise 3

mangoro	Haa toy 'be sorrata kondong?
buuli	Haa toy 'be sorrata mangoro?
tumaatir	Haa toy 'be sorrata buuli?
tingyeere	Haa toy 'be sorrata tumaatir?
kusel	Haa toy 'be sorrata tingyeere?
tummu'de	Haa toy 'be sorrata kusel?
loon'de	Haa toy 'be sorrata tummu'de?
daage	Haa toy 'be sorrata loon'de?
kondong	Haa toy 'be sorrata daage?
	Haa toy 'be sorrata kondong?

Haa toy mi he'bata mangoro?

Where can I get mangoes?

Exercise 4

buuli  
kondong  
tumaatir  
kusel  
tingyeere  
nyebbam  
liingu  
bulki  
mangoro

Haa toy mi he'bata mangoro?  
Haa toy mi he'bata buuli?  
Haa toy mi he'bata kondong?  
Haa toy mi he'bata tumaatir?  
Haa toy mi he'bata kusel?  
Haa toy mi he'bata tingyeere?  
Haa toy mi he'bata nyebbam?  
Haa toy mi he'bata liingu?  
Haa toy mi he'bata bulki?  
Haa toy mi he'bata mangoro?

Exercise 5

Noy ceede man? (koboore woore)  
Noy ceede man? (kobooje 'di'di)  
Noy ceede man? (kobooje tati)  
Noy ceede man? (kobooje nayi)  
Noy ceede man? (siisi)

Koboore woore on.  
Kobooje 'di'di on.  
Kobooje tati on.  
Kobooje nayi on.  
Siisi on.

**Nigerian Money**

Coins



(1 k.) 1 kobo: kobo (nde) or koboore (nde),  
kobooje ('de)

Kobo and koboore are often used in the plural as we saw in the dialogue for this lesson.

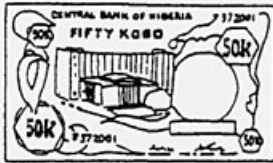


(5 k.) 5 kobo: siisi, or kobooje jowi



(10 k.) 10 kobo or one shilling: kobooje sappo or suley

Notes



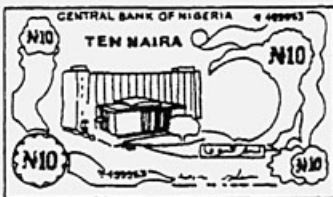
(50 k.) 50 kobo: kobooje cappan'de jowi  
or 'dereewol suley jowi



(N1.00) 1 naira: nayra gootel or suley sappo



(N5.00) 5 naira: nayra jowi or pam\* 'di'di e  
suley sappo



(N10.00) 10 naira: nayra sappo or pam\* jowi



(N20.00) 20 naira: nayra noogas or pam\* sappo

\*pam: pound, sterling (still often used, but not  
officially)

For Exercise 6, we will use the terms koboore, siisi, suley, kobooje cappan'de jowi, nayra, nayra jowi, nayra sappo, nayra noogas.

Exercise 6



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum koboore woore.



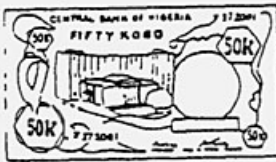
'Dum 'dume?

'Dum siisi.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum suley.



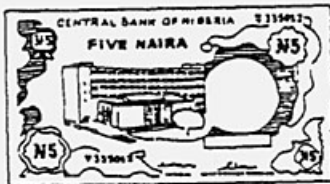
'Dum 'dume?

'Dum kobooje cappan'de jowi.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum nayra.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum nayra jowi.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum nayra sappo.



'Dum 'dume?

'Dum nayra noogas.

The number is always placed after the monetary unit to indicate the amount of money involved:

kobooje tati	<i>three kobo</i>
suley nayi	<i>four shillings</i>
nayra noogas	<i>twenty naira</i>

### Exercise 7

The number one	Plural
koboore woore	kobooje 'di'di
siisi gootel	siisi 'di'di
suley gootel	suley 'di'di
nayra gootel	nayra 'di'di

### Exercise 8 Substitution drill

'di'di	koboore woore
tati	kobooje 'di'di
siisi	kobooje tati
gootel	siisi tati
koboore	siisi gootel
suley	koboore woore
nayi	suley gootel
nayra	suley nayi
kobooje	nayra nayi
woore	kobooje nayi
'di'di	koboore woore
siisi	kobooje 'di'di
suley	siisi 'di'di
nayra	suley 'di'di
cappan'de tati	nayra 'di'di
kobooje	nayra cappan'de tati
woore	kobooje cappan'de tati
	koboore woore

However, when a number precedes the price, the meaning is *2 for something, 10 for something, etc.*

Buuli, 'di'di koboore.  
Kondong, sappo suley nayi.

*Paper, two sheets for a kobo.  
Bananas, ten for four shillings.*

### Exercise 9 Noy ceede man?

('di'di koboore, buuli)  
( 'di'di kobooje joweego, bindir'di)  
(sappo suley nayi, tumaatir)  
(sappo suley nayi, tingyeere)

Buuli, 'di'di koboore.  
Bindir'di, 'di'di kobooje joweego.  
Tumaatir, sappo suley nayi.  
Tingyeere, sappo suley nayi.

## Exercise 10

Noy ceede kobooje jowi on?	Kobooje jowi on woni siisi gootel.
Noy ceede kobooje sappo on?	Kobooje sappo on woni suley gootel.
Noy ceede 'dereewol suley sappo on?	'Dereewol suley sappo on woni kobooje cappan'de jowi.
Noy ceede siisi sappo on?	Siisi sappo on woni kobooje cappan'de jowi.
Noy ceede kobooje temerre on?	Kobooje temerre on woni nayra gootel.
Noy ceede siisi noogas on?	Siisi noogas on woni nayra gootel.
Noy ceede suley sappo on?	Suley sappo on woni nayra gootel.

## Exercise 11 Additional Vocabulary

ustugo: *to reduce, decrease (especially, in the market, the price demanded)*

'beddugo: *to increase (especially, in the market, the money offered)*

canji: *change*

Here are some commonly used marketplace phrases:

'Duu'di! Ustu se'd'da!	<i>Too much! Come down a little (on the asking price).</i>
Too, mi usti kobo sappo. Aa'a, mi ustataa!	<i>Okay, I'll come down ten kobo. No, I won't come down!</i>
'Dum se'd'da. 'Beddu se'd'da.	<i>That's too little. Increase (your offer) a little.</i>
Too, mi 'beddan kobo sappo.	<i>Okay, I'll increase ten kobo. (I'll give you ten kobo more.)</i>
Aa'a, mi 'beddataa!	<i>No, I won't pay more!</i>
A woodi canji suley naa? Mi woodi. Ndaa kobo sappo.	<i>Do you have change for a shilling? I do. Here's ten kobo.</i>
A woodi canji naa? Mi woodi canji suley gootel tan.	<i>Do you have (any) change? I only have change for a shilling.</i>

## Exercise 12

'Duu'di! Ustu se'd'da! (kobo sappo)	Too, mi usti kobo sappo.
'Duu'di! Ustu se'd'da! (suley tati)	Too, mi usti suley tati.
'Duu'di! Ustu se'd'da! (kobo cappan'de 'di'di)	Too, mi usti kobo cappan'de 'di'di.
'Duu'di! Ustu se'd'da! (nayra gootel)	Too, mi usti nayra gootel.
'Duu'di! Ustu se'd'da! (nayra tati)	Too, mi usti nayra tati.

### Exercise 13

'Dum se'd'da. 'Beddu se'd'da! (kobo sappo)  
'Dum se'd'da. 'Beddu se'd'da! (siisi)  
'Dum se'd'da. 'Beddu se'd'da! (kobo tati)  
'Dum se'd'da. 'Beddu se'd'da! (kobo  
cappan'de tati)  
'Dum se'd'da. 'Beddu se'd'da! (nayra nayi)

Too, mi 'beddan kobo sappo.  
Too, mi 'beddan siisi.  
Too, mi 'beddan kobo tati.  
Too, mi 'beddan kobo  
cappan'de tati.  
Too, mi 'beddan nayra nayi.

### Exercise 14

'Duu'di! Ustu se'd'da!  
'Dum se'd'da. 'Beddu se'd'da!  
Useni, ustu se'd'da!  
Useni, 'beddu se'd'da!  
Sey a usta se'd'da.  
Sey a 'bedda se'd'da.

Aa'a, mi ustataa.  
Aa'a, mi 'beddataa.  
Aa'a, mi ustataa.  
Aa'a, mi 'beddataa.  
Aa'a, mi ustataa.  
Aa'a, mi 'beddataa.

### Exercise 15

A woodi canji suley naa? (kobo sappo)  
A woodi canji siisi naa? (kobo jowi)  
A woodi canji 'dereewol kobo  
cappan'de jowi naa? (suley jowi)  
A woodi canji nayra gootel  
naa? (suley sappo)  
A woodi canji 'dereewol  
nayra jowi naa? (nayra jowi)

Mi woodi. Ndaa kobo sappo.  
Mi woodi. Ndaa kobo jowi.  
Mi woodi Ndaa suley jowi.  
  
Mi woodi. Ndaa suley sappo.  
  
Mi woodi. Ndaa nayra jowi.

### Exercise 16

A woodi canji naa? (suley gootel)  
A woodi canji naa? (nayra gootel)  
A woodi canji naa? (nayra jowi)  
A woodi canji naa? (nayra sappo)  
A woodi canji naa? (walaa)

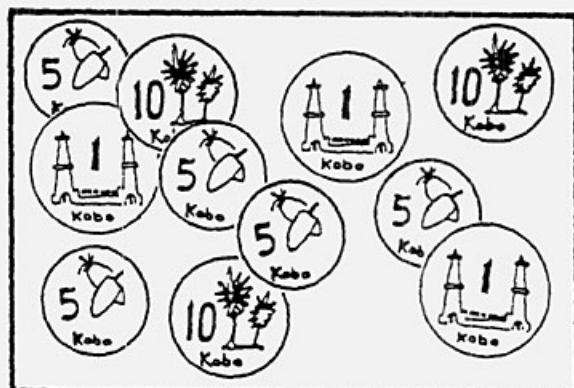
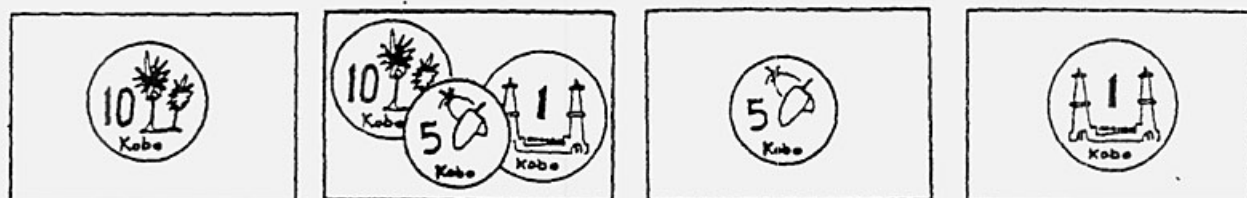
Mi woodi canji suley gootel tan.  
Mi woodi canji nayra gootel tan.  
Mi woodi canji nayra jowi tan.  
Mi woodi canji nayra sappo tan.  
Mi walaa canji.



## Jangde timmunde

Mi yi'di soodugo kosam.  
 Noy ceede maajam?  
 Kobo jowee'di'di.  
 Ustu se'd'da.  
 Mi ustataa. Mi yeccino maa goonga. Ceede maajam kobo jowee'di'di.  
 Too, amma mi walaa canji.  
 Woodi canji. Waddu ceede.  
 Ndaa suley.  
 Too, ndaa canji maa, kobo tati.  
 Maadalla. Mi yetti.  
 Sey yeeso.  
 Sey yeeso.

## Ngewta



## LESSON 36

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 36, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 13 new vocabulary items
- use the Future verb forms: -an, -ay, -ata to express future actions
- use the Future forms of the verb to express the Habitual
- use the Future forms of the verb with object personal pronouns taking special note of the first person pronoun yam
- use -e to replace maa for the Future and the Habitual
- use the Subjunctive and the Habitual interchangeably in certain situations.

## Dialogue

S: Salaamu aleykum.	
B: Aleyka salaamu.	
S: Noy saare moo'don?	<i>How is your household?</i>
B: Jam ni tawon, alhamdu lillaahi.	<i>Fine for the moment, thanks be to Allah.</i>
S: A andi ndey Yeriima warata?	<i>Do you know when the Yerima will come?</i>
B: Mi tammi o waran fa'b'bijango.	<i>I think he'll come the day after tomorrow.</i>
S: Ko waddata mo?	<i>What brings him (here)?</i>
B: O waran ma'b'bitugo juulirde.	<i>He is coming to open the mosque.</i>
S: A andi wakkati o yottata naa?	<i>Do you know the time he'll arrive?</i>
B: O yottay 'baawo juura.	<i>He'll arrive after 2 p.m.</i>
S: Bee 'beye'en o warata?	<i>With what people will he come?</i>
B: Bee debbo maako.	<i>With his wife.</i>
S: Maadalla! Sey wakkati feere.	<i>Wonderful! Until another time.</i>
B: Too, Allah hokku maa jam!	<i>Fine. May Allah give you health.</i>

## Vocabulary

alhamdu lillaahi: *thanks be to Allah*  
Yeriima: *Yerima (traditional royal title)*  
fa'b'bijango: *the day after tomorrow*  
juura: *about 2 p.m.*  
'baawo: *after*

## Future and Habitual: verb root plus -ay, -an

In general, the Future and the Habitual take the same verb form in Fulfulde. They are formed by adding -ay or -an to the verb root. Both endings are frequently used and are interchangeable.

Mi waran. *I will come. or I come (habitually).*

Mi waray. *I will come.*

The context indicates whether the Future or the Habitual meaning is intended.

### Exercise 1

#### Completed

Mi wari.  
A yotti.  
O te'i.  
Min nasti.  
En 'yami.  
On jaabi.  
'Be wi'i.

#### Future and Habitual using the -an ending

Mi waran.  
A yottan.  
O te'an.  
Min nastan.  
En 'yaman.  
On jaaban.  
'Be wi'an.

### Exercise 2

#### Continuous

Mi 'don wa" a baskur.  
A 'don laanya koombowal.  
O 'don wadda gawri.  
Min 'don wa' da tebur.  
En 'don yecca habaruuji.  
On 'don hu' b' ba yiite.  
'Be 'don fadda peewol.

#### Future and Habitual using the -ay ending

Mi wa" ay baskur.  
A laanyay koombowal.  
O wadday gawri.  
Min wa' day tebur.  
En yeccay habaruuji.  
On hu' b' bay yiite.  
'Be fadday peewol.

## The Relative Future: -ata verb form

When a question is involved in the Future or the Habitual, then the Relative Future -ata form of the verb is used. This is the form you have been using to ask questions beginning with toy, haa toy, noy, 'dume, ko, ndey and so forth.

The meaning of -ata questions thus depends on context since

'Dume Zeynabu defata? might mean: *What is Zainabu cooking?*  
*What does Zainabu (habitually) cook?*  
*What will Zainabu cook?*

### Exercise 3

#### Future and Habitual Statements

O waran fa'b'bijango.	(ndey)
O wa'dan tebur.	('dume)
O waddan gawri.	(ko)
O yahan jangirde.	(haa toy)
O he'bay kondong.	('dume)
O yottay jango.	(ndey)
O waray bee debbo maako.	(bee beye'en)
O yottay baawo juura.	(ndey)

#### Future and Habitual Questions

Ndey o warata?
'Dume o wa'data?
Ko o waddata?
Haa toy o yahata?
'Dume o he'bata?
Ndey o yottata?
Bee beye'en o warata?
Ndey o yottata?

Here is a review of questions in the Continuous.

### Exercise 4

#### Continuous or Stative Statements

O 'don roondi mbulku.	('dume)
O 'don wara 'do.	(haa toy)
O 'don defa hande.	(ndey)
O 'don roondi deftere.	(ko)
Buuba 'don yotta luumo.	(toy)
Saalihi 'don nasta suudu.	(moy)
Zeynabu 'don sorra kondong.	('dume)

#### Continuous Questions

'Dume o roondata?
Haa toy o warata?
Ndey o defata?
Ko o roondata?
Toy Buuba yottata?
Moy nastata suudu?
'Dume Zeynabu sorrata?

### Exercise 5 Additional Vocabulary

fu'd'dugo: *to begin*

timminugo: *to end, to bring to an end*

The -ata form will also occur when the normal subject-verb-object order is disrupted.

O fu'd'dan kuugal.

*He will begin work.*

Kuugal o fu'd'data.

*It is work he will begin. (or)  
It is work he is beginning.*

### Exercise 6

Future - normal order

- O nyaaman kondong.
- O fu'd'dan kuugal.
- O timminan kuugal.
- O fu'd'dan jangugo.
- O timminan jangugo.
- O defan nyamdu.
- O yahan juulirde.
- O fu'd'dan defugo.
- O timminan defugo.
- O fu'd'dan waddugo.

Future or Continuous - inverted order

- Kondong o nyaamata.
- Kuugal o fu'd'data.
- Kuugal o timminata.
- Jangugo o fu'd'data.
- Jangugo o timminata.
- Nyamdu o defata.
- Juulirde o yahata.
- Defugo o fu'd'data.
- Defugo o timminata.
- Waddugo o fu'd'data.

### Exercise 7 Additional Vocabulary

wallugo: to help

#### The Future with the object personal pronouns *yam* and *maa*

For every object personal pronoun except the first person singular *yam* and the second person singular *maa*, the *-an* and *-ay* forms are acceptable.

- |               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| O wallan mo.  | <i>He will help him.</i>            |
| O 'buray 'be. | <i>He will be better than they.</i> |

For the first person singular object pronoun, the Future verb suffix is usually *-at* and *yam* changes to *-am*.

- |              |                                  |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| O wallat am. | <i>He will help me.</i>          |
| O 'burat am. | <i>He will be better than I.</i> |

### Exercise 8

Completed

- O walli yam.
- A 'buri yam.
- On tawi yam.
- O yi'i yam.
- 'Be neli yam.

Future

- O wallat am.
- A 'burat am.
- On tawat am.
- O yi'at am.
- 'Be nelat am.

In the next exercise, unless the first person object pronoun is involved as above, the -an Future form of the verb is used.

### Exercise 9

#### Completed

O walli 'be.  
A walli yam.  
O walli mo.  
'Be tawi yam.  
Mi neli on.  
O neli yam.  
On 'buri min.  
A 'buri yam.

#### Future

O wallan 'be.  
A wallat am.  
O wallan mo.  
'Be tawat am.  
Mi nelan on.  
O nelat am.  
On 'buran min.  
A 'burat am.

When the second person singular object pronoun is involved, the Future verb suffix is -et and maa changes to -e which is attached to the -et ending.

O wallete.  
O 'burete.

*He will help you.*  
*He will be better than you.*

### Exercise 10

#### Continuous

O 'don yi'a maa.  
O 'don walla maa.  
O 'don 'bura maa.  
O 'don nela maa.  
O 'don tawa maa.

#### Future

O yi'ete.  
O wallete.  
O 'burete.  
O nelete.  
O tawete.

In the next exercise, unless the second person singular object pronoun is involved, the -ay Future form of the verb is used.

### Exercise 11

Continuous	Future
'Be 'don yi'a mo.	'Be yi'ay mo.
'Be 'don yi'a maa.	'Be yi'ete.
O 'don walla 'be.	O wallay 'be.
O 'don walla maa.	O wallete.
O 'don 'bura on.	O 'buray on.
O 'don 'bura maa.	O 'burete.
Mi 'don nela 'be.	Mi nelay 'be.
Mi 'don nela maa.	Mi nelete.

### Substitution and transformation drill

The -an form is used unless the first or second person singular object pronouns are involved.

### Exercise 12

mo	O tawat am.
yam	O tawan mo.
maa	O tawat am.
nelugo	O tawete.
yam	O nelete.
mo	O nelat am.
yam	O nelan mo.
'burugo	O nelat am.
maa	O 'burat am.
mo	O 'burete.
maa	O 'buran mo.
tawugo	O 'burete.
mo	O tawete.
maa	O tawan mo.
yam	O tawete.
	O tawat am.

The negative form of the Future and Habitual -an and -ay is -ataa. It is identical to the negative of the Continuous, so once again context is important.

### Exercise 13

Yim'be waray fa'b'bijango.	Yim'be warataa fa'b'bijango.
Buuba wa'day tebur.	Buuba wa'dataa tebur.
'Bikkoy yahay jangirde.	'Bikkoy yahataa jangirde.
Naye'en heban kondong.	Naye'en hebataa kondong.
Ndotti'en yottan jango.	Ndotti'en yottataa jango.
'Bii Abdullaahi waran bee debbo maako.	'Bii Abdullaahi warataa bee debbo maako.
Minyiraa'be Awdu yottan 'baawo juura.	Minyiraa'be Awdu yottataa 'baawo juura.



#### Exercise 14 Additional Vocabulary

nyi'bugo: to build, to construct

bukkaaru (ndu), bukkaaji ('di): beehive-shaped grass shelter (especially of nomads)

loosol (ngol), loosi ('di): twig, switch, stick, pole

tiggugo: to set up a stick or a pole

geene ('de): grass

tiitugo: to put on thatch

Here is a narrative which illustrates the use of the Habitual.

#### Exercise 15

Yim'be na'i nyi'ban bukkaaji.

'Be waddan loosi, 'be tiggan.

'Be waddan geene, 'be tiitan.

Nden kadi, 'be nastan, 'be joo'da.\*

*Cattle people build shelters.*

*They bring poles, they set them up.*

*They bring grass, they thatch.*

*And then they enter, they dwell.*

\*When the context is clear, as above, the Subjunctive may substitute for the Habitual. This happens regularly for other verb forms as well. In a sequence of actions, verbs subsequent to the first tend to be in the Subjunctive.

Here are some questions and answers based on the narrative. The answers use the -an verb suffix.

#### Exercise 16

Moy nyi'bata bukkaaji?

'Dume 'be fu'd'data waddugo?

'Dume 'be waddata kadi?

Toy 'be nastata?

Toy 'be joo'data?

Yim'be na'i nyi'ban bukkaaji.

'Be fu'd'dan waddugo loosi.

'Be waddan geene boo.

'Be nastan haa nder bukkaaji.

'Be joo'dan haa bukkaaji.

In the next exercise, change the first verb into the Habitual and the second to the Subjunctive. Use the -an form for the Habitual.

#### Exercise 17

##### Completed

'Be waddi loosi, 'be tigg.

'Be waddi geene, 'be tiiti.

'Be nasti, 'be joo'di.

'Be soodi nyamdu, 'be defi.

'Be waddi hottollo, 'be motti.

'Be ummi, 'be dilli.

##### Habitual and Subjunctive

'Be waddan loosi, 'be tigg.

'Be waddan geene, 'be tiita.

'Be nastan, 'be joo'da.

'Be soodan nyamdu, 'be defa.

'Be waddan hottollo, 'be motta.

'Be umman, 'be dilla.

### Exercise 18

#### Habitual

'Be nyi'ban bukkaaji.  
'Be waddan loosi.  
'Be tiggan.  
'Be wadday geene.  
'Be tiitay.  
'Be nastay.  
'Be joo'day.

#### Subjunctive

'Be nyi'ba bukkaaji.  
'Be wadda loosi.  
'Be tigga.  
'Be wadda geene.  
'Be tiita.  
'Be nasta.  
'Be joo'da.

### Exercise 19 Additional Vocabulary

asaweere warande (nde): *next week*

lewru darandu (ndu): *next month*

mawri: *next year*

heesikeenya: *the day before yesterday*

### Exercise 20 Repetition drill

Hande mi 'don yotta Giirey.  
Keenya mi yotti Giirey.  
Jango mi yottay Giirey.

Jooni mi 'don lima dabbaaji amin.  
Heesikeenya mi limi dabbaaji amin.  
Fa'b'bijango mi liman dabbaaji amin.

Asaweere 'do 'be 'don nyi'ba bukkaaji.  
Asaweere saaliinde 'be nyi'bi bukkaaji.  
Asaweere warande 'be nyi'bay bukkaaji.

Lewru 'do 'be 'don tiita.  
Lewru saaliindu 'be tiiti.  
Lewru darandu 'be tiitan.

Hikka o 'don yiida bee mawniiko.  
Rowani o yiidi bee mawniiko.  
Mawri o yiidan bee mawniiko.  
Heesikeenya o yiki bee mawniiko.

## Substitution drills

### Exercise 21 Use the -an form for the Future.

keenya	Fa'b'bijango mi yottan Giirey.
jooni	Keenya mi yotti Giirey.
'don lima dabbaaji amin	Jooni mi 'don yotta Giirey.
heesikeenya	Jooni mi 'don lima dabbaaji amin.
fa'b'bijango	Heesikeenya mi limi dabbaaji amin.
asaweere 'do	Fa'b'bijango mi liman dabbaaji amin.
'don yotta Giirey	Asaweere 'do mi 'don lima dabbaaji amin.
jango	Asaweere 'do mi 'don yotta Giirey.
hande	Jango mi yottan Giirey.
fa'b'bijango	Hande mi 'don yotta Giirey.
	Fa'b'bijango mi yottan Giirey.

### Exercise 22 Use the -ay form for the Future.

asaweere 'do	Asaweere warande 'be nyi'bay bukkaaji.
asaweere saaliinde	Asaweere 'do 'be 'don nyi'ba bukkaaji.
lewru darandu	Asaweere saaliinde 'be nyi'bi bukkaaji.
lewru 'do	Lewru darandu 'be nyi'bay bukkaaji.
'be 'don tiita	Lewru 'do 'be 'don nyi'ba bukkaaji.
lewru darandu	Lewru 'do 'be 'don tiita.
lewru saaliindu	Lewru darandu 'be tiitay.
mawri	Lewru saaliindu 'be tiiti.
lewru darandu	Mawri 'be tiitay.
lewru saaliindu	Lewru darandu 'be tiitay.
lewru 'do	Lewru saaliindu 'be tiiti.
'be 'don yiida bee bandiraa'be	Lewru 'do 'be 'don yiida bee bandiraa'be.
mawri	Mawri 'be yiiday bee bandiraa'be.
rowani	Rowani 'be yiidi bee bandiraa'be.
hikka	Hikka 'be 'don yiida bee bandiraa'be.
don nyi'ba bukkaaji	Hikka 'be 'don nyi'ba bukkaaji.
mawri	Mawri 'be nyi'bay bukkaaji.
asaweere warande.	Asaweere warande 'be nyi'bay bukkaaji.

## Jangde timmunde

Minyiraa'be Awdu 'don joo'di haa Giirey. Mi andi wuro ngo 'be joo'data.  
'Bi'b'be Saalihu 'don nasta jangirde haa 'Yoola. A andi jangirde nde 'be nastata?  
Wor'be 'don huuwa haa ngesa laamii'do too. Mi andi ngesa ka 'be huuwata.  
Toy minyiraa'be Buuba joo'data? Naane 'be 'donno joo'di haa Giirey amma  
asaweere warande 'be eggan haa Pariya.  
A andi jangirde nde 'bi'b'be Yaakubu nastata? Mi andaa nde 'be nastata amma  
jango mi yi'ay 'be, mi 'yamay 'be.  
Haa toy ngesa Yeriima woni? Mi tammi ka 'don haa laawol luumo, amma mi  
andaa. Haa mi 'yama wor'be 'be 'don huuwa haa ngesa ka. Jango mi andan.  
Too. Useko.



## LESSON 37

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 37, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 6 new vocabulary items
- use the -an- Benefactive verbal infix to indicate *to* or *for*
- use the correct order for direct and indirect objects
- use the Future Benefactive and *maa*
- use the Subjunctive and *maa*
- use the Subjunctive Benefactive and *maa*
- use the Imperative Benefactive and *yam*.



### Dialogue

Buuba: Usumaanu!

*Usmanu!*

Usumaanu: Na'am baaba.

*Yes, father.*

B: Yahu luumo, a soodana yam asaana.

*Go to the market and buy me matches.*

U: Ko mi soodante?

*What shall I buy for you?*

B: Asaana. A he'bana yam gooro kadi.  
Yeccu jawmu gooroje o su'btana  
yam boo'd'de.

*Matches. Get me some cola nuts too.  
Tell the colanut man to choose  
some good ones for me.*

U: Too, baaba. Toy ceede?

*Okay, father. Where's the money?*

B: Hey! Zeynabu! Waddanam ceede  
'de woni haa jiiba dawrawol am.  
Hokku 'de Usumaanu.

*Hey! Zainabu! Bring me the money  
which is in the pocket of my gown.  
Give it to Usmanu.*

Z: Too, ndaa 'de.

*Okay, here it is.*

B: Boo'd'dum. Wartu lawlaw.

*Good. Come back quickly.*

U: Sey to mi warti!

*Until I come back!*

## Vocabulary

gooro (ngo) goorooje ('de): *colanut* (often used collectively in the singular)  
su'btugo: *to choose, to select*  
boo'd'de: *good ones* (for 'de class nouns)  
dawrawol (ngol), dawraaji ('di): *gown*  
jiiba (ka), jibaaji ('di): *pocket*

## Benefactives, to and/or: -an- infix

To express what is called the Benefactive, that is, doing something for the benefit of someone or something, in English we have two ways:

They built a house for John.            or            They built John a house.

"John" is the indirect object. "House" is the direct object.

In Fulfulde Benefactive constructions, the indirect object always precedes the direct object, and -an- is inserted between the verb root and the final ending.

### Continuous

O 'don waddana Buuba puccu.

*He is bringing Buba a horse.*

### Completed

O waddani Buuba puccu.

*He brought Buba a horse.*

### Future-Habitual

O waddanan Buuba puccu.

*He will bring Buba a horse.*

O waddanay Buuba puccu.

*He brings Buba a horse.*

### Subjunctive

Ndikka o waddana Buuba puccu.

*He should bring Buba a horse.*

### Imperative

Waddanu Buuba puccu!

*Bring Buba a horse!*

Buuba is the indirect object. Puccu is the direct object.

In Adamawa, the a of -an- sometimes changes to i (-in-) or u (-un-), usually to agree with the final vowel of the verb root. In this lesson, we will write -an- even though you will use the -in-, -un- variation orally.

### Exercise 1

Continuous	Indirect Object	Benefactive
O 'don wadda puccu.	yam	O 'don waddana yam puccu.
O 'don sorra na'i.	Saalihi	O 'don sorrana Saalihi na'i.
O 'don he'ba gooro.	mo	O 'don he'bana mo gooro.
O 'don su'btā boo'd'de.	min	O 'don su'btana min boo'd'de.
O 'don fu'd'da kuugal.	en	O 'don fu'd'dana en kuugal.
O 'don winda pataakewol.	on	O 'don windana on pataakewol.
O 'don sooda asaana.	Buuba	O 'don soodana Buuba asaana.
O 'don nela habaru.	laamii'do	O 'don nelana laamii'do habaru.

### Exercise 2

Completed	Indirect Object	Benefactive
'Be waddi puccu.	mo	'Be waddani mo puccu.
Mi sorri na'i.	maa	Mi sorrani maa na'i.
On he'bi gooro.	Abdullaahi	On he'bani Abdullaahi gooro.
A su'btā boo'd'de.	en	A su'btani en boo'd'de.
O windi pataakewol	min	O windani min pataakewol.
Min soodi kusel	Zeynabu	Min soodani Zeynabu kusel.
En waddi ceede.	'be	En waddani 'be ceede.
Mi neli habaru.	Buuba	Mi nelani Buuba habaru.

The Future suffix for Benefactive constructions involving the first person object pronoun is -t. So, for this particular construction we have:

verb root +-an- (Benefactive infix) +-t- (Future infix) +-am (first person object pronoun)

A sorrantam na'i.  
O jangantam Alkur'aana.

*You will buy cows for me.  
He will read me the Koran.*

### Exercise 3

Future	Indirect Object	Benefactive
Mi waddan puccu.	mo	Mi waddanan mo puccu.
A sorran na'i.	yam	A sorrantam na'i.
O he'ban gooro.	Buuba	O he'banan Buuba gooro.
Min su'btan boo'd'de.	modibbo	Min su'btanan modibbo boo'd'de.
En soodan kondong.	on	En soodanan on kondong.
On windan pataakewol.	'be	On windanan 'be pataakewol.
'Be waddan ceede.	Zeynabu	'Be waddanan Zeynabu ceede.
Mi nelan habaru.	ndottiijo	Mi nelanan ndottiijo habaru.
O jangan Alkur'aana.	yam	O jangantam Alkur'aana.



The Future Benefactive construction  
and the second person singular object pronoun.

We saw in Lesson 36 that the Future form of the verb is affected by the use of the pronoun *maa*. The Future form of the Benefactive construction is also affected by the use of this pronoun.

When the second person singular object pronoun is the indirect object in a Future Benefactive construction, we have:

verb root + -an- (Benefactive) + -t- (Future) + -e (second person object pronoun)

O soodante goorooje.  
O su'btante boo'd'de.

*He will buy kola nuts for you.*  
*He will choose good ones for you.*

Exercise 4

Completed

O soodani maa goorooje.  
O su'btani maa boo'd'de.  
Mi ustani maa se'd'da.  
Mi 'beddani maa se'd'da.  
'Be windani maa pataakewol.  
'Be he'bani maa nyamdu.

Future

O soodante goorooje.  
O su'btante boo'd'de.  
Mi ustante se'd'da.  
Mi 'beddante se'd'da.  
'Be windante pataakewol.  
'Be he'bante nyamdu.

In the following exercise, use the -an Future form of the verb unless the second person singular object pronoun is involved.

Exercise 5

Continuous

O 'don soodana 'be goorooje.  
O 'don soodana maa goorooje.  
Mi 'don su'btana mo boo'd'de.  
Mi 'don su'btana maa boo'd'de.  
'Be 'don he'bana min nyamdu.  
'Be 'don he'bana maa nyamdu.  
O 'don ustana mo se'd'da.  
O 'don ustana maa se'd'da.

Future

O soodanan 'be goorooje.  
O soodante goorooje.  
Mi su'btanan mo boo'd'de.  
Mi su'btante boo'd'de.  
'Be he'banan min nyamdu.  
'Be he'bante nyamdu.  
O ustanan mo se'd'da.  
O ustante se'd'da.

## Substitution and transformation drill

Use the -ay Future form of the verb unless the second person singular object pronoun is involved.

### Exercise 6

mo	○ soodante gooroje.
su'btugo	○ soodanay mo gooroje.
maa	○ su'btanay mo gooroje.
min	○ su'btante gooroje.
he'bugo	○ su'btanay min gooroje.
maa	○ he'banay min gooroje.
sorrugo	○ he'bante gooroje.
mo	○ sorrante gooroje.
soodugo	○ sorranay mo gooroje.
min	○ soodanay mo gooroje.
maa	○ soodanay min gooroje.
	○ soodante gooroje.

## Subjunctive

### Exercise 7

Subjunctive	Indirect Object	Benefactive
Sey mi wadda puccu.	Buuba	Sey mi waddana Buuba puccu.
Ndikka a he'ba gooro.	yam	Ndikka a he'bana yam gooro.
Sey o sorra na'i.	'be	Sey o sorrana 'be na'i.
Ndikka min su'bta boo'd'de.	on	Ndikka min su'btana on bo'd'de.
Sey en winda pataakewol.	Hawsaajo	Sey en windana Hawsaajo pataakewol.
Ndikka on sooda kusel.	min	Ndikka on soodana min kusel.
Sey 'be wadda ceede.	en	Sey 'be waddana en ceede.
Ndikka a nela habaru.	debbo Buuba	Ndikka a nelana debbo Buuba habaru.

### Exercise 8 Additional Vocabulary

hollugo: *to show*

## The Subjunctive and the second person singular object pronoun

In a Subjunctive construction when the second person singular object pronoun is involved, the Subjunctive ending -a is omitted and maa becomes -e and is attached directly to the verb root.

Sey mi holle.	<i>Let me show you.</i>
Sey mi 'yame.	<i>Let me ask you.</i>

Use sey plus the Subjunctive in the following exercise.

Exercise 9

Continuous

Mi 'don holla maa.  
Mi 'don 'yama maa.  
Mi 'don tawa maa.  
O 'don yecca maa.  
O 'don jaaba maa.  
O 'don walla maa.

Subjunctive

Sey mi holle.  
Sey mi 'yame.  
Sey mi tawe.  
Sey o yecce.  
Sey o jaabe.  
Sey o walle.

**The Subjunctive Benefactive construction  
and the second person singular object pronoun**

When the second person singular object pronoun is involved in a Subjunctive Benefactive construction as an indirect object, the verb root is followed by the Benefactive infix *-an-*, the Subjunctive ending *-a* is omitted, and *maa* changes to *-e* and is attached directly to the *-an-* infix.

Haa mi soodane gooro.      *Let me buy you colanuts.*  
Haa mi jangane deftere.      *Let me read you a book.*

Use haa plus the Subjunctive in the following exercise.

Exercise 10

Completed or Stative

Mi soodani maa gooro.  
Mi jangani maa deftere.  
O wuwani maa suudu.  
O roondani maa akootiru.  
Milaanyani maa mootaa.  
Mi defani maa nyiiri.

Subjunctive

Haa mi soodane gooro.  
Haa mi jangane deftere.  
Haa o wuwane suudu.  
Haa o roondane akootiru.  
Haa mi laanyane mootaa.  
Haa mi defane nyiiri.

Use ndikka plus the Subjunctive in the following exercises.

Exercise 11

Continuous or Stative

Mi 'don soodana mo gooro.  
Mi 'don soodana maa gooro.  
O 'don jangana 'be deftere.  
O 'don jangana maa deftere.  
Mi 'don roondani on akootiru.  
Mi 'don roondani maa akootiru.  
O 'don defana min nyiiri.  
O 'don defana maa nyiiri.

Subjunctive

Ndikka mi soodana mo gooro.  
Ndikka mi soodane gooro.  
Ndikka o jangana 'be deftere.  
Ndikka o jangane deftere.  
Ndikka mi roondana on akootiru.  
Ndikka mi roondane akootiru.  
Ndikka o defana min nyiiri.  
Ndikka o defane nyiiri.

## Imperative Benefactive

For the first person object pronoun, as we have seen in Lesson 24, the -u suffix is omitted and -am is used in place of yam.

Waddanam puccu.	<i>Bring me a horse.</i>
Waddanu mo puccu.	<i>Bring him a horse.</i>

## Exercise 12

Imperative	Indirect Object	Benefactive
Waddu puccu.	yam	Waddanam puccu.
He'bu gooro.	mo	He'banu mo gooro.
Sorru na'i.	Pullo	Sorranu Pullo na'i.
Su'btu boo'd'de.	yam	Su'btanam boo'd'de.
Windu pataakewol.	en	Windanu en pataakewol.
Soodu kusel.	min	Soodanu min kusel.
Waddu ceede.	yam	Waddanam ceede.
Nelu habaru.	Abdullaahi	Nelanu Abdullaahi habaru.

The rule "indirect object before direct object" in Fulfulde Benefactive constructions becomes especially important when both objects are object personal pronouns.

'Be hofnani min mo.	<i>They greeted him for us.</i>
'Be hofnani mo min.	<i>They greeted us for him.</i>

## Substitution drill

Exercise 13 In this drill the indirect objects are changed.

maa	'Be hofnani min mo.
'be	'Be hofnani maa mo.
wallugo	'Be hofnani 'be mo.
min	'Be wallani 'be mo.
maa	'Be wallani min mo.
yeccugo	'Be wallani maa mo.
on	'Be yeccani maa mo.
min	'Be yeccani on mo.
hofnugo	'Be yeccani min mo.
	'Be hofnani min mo.

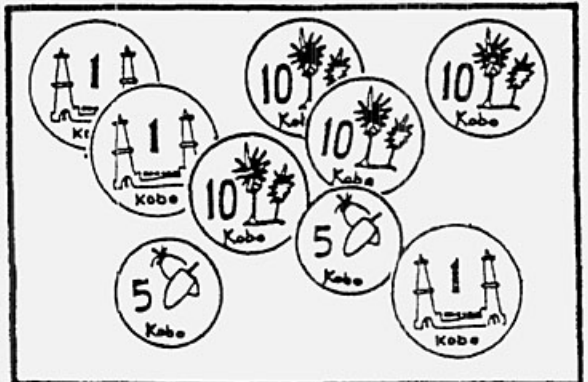
Exercise 14 In this drill the direct objects are changed.

'be	Mi hollani mo maa.
on	Mi hollani mo 'be.
jaabugo	Mi hollani mo on.
'be	Mi jaabani mo on.
'yamugo	Mi jaabani mo 'be.
on	Mi 'yamani mo 'be.
maa	Mi 'yamani mo on.
en	Mi 'yamani mo maa.
hollugo	Mi 'yamani mo en.
'be	Mi hollani mo en.
maa	Mi hollani mo 'be.
	Mi hollani mo maa.

**Jangde timmunde**

Useni yahu kanti, soodanam asaana.  
 Mi soodani maa asaana keenya. 'Dume mi soodante hande?  
 Too, ndikka a soodana yam lootirde. Nde am jinri.  
 Too. Jooni mi 'don wuuwana Saaliu suudu, amma kiiki'de mi yahata, mi soodane.  
 Too, mi yetti. Sey kiiki'de.  
 Sey kiiki'de.

**Ngewta**

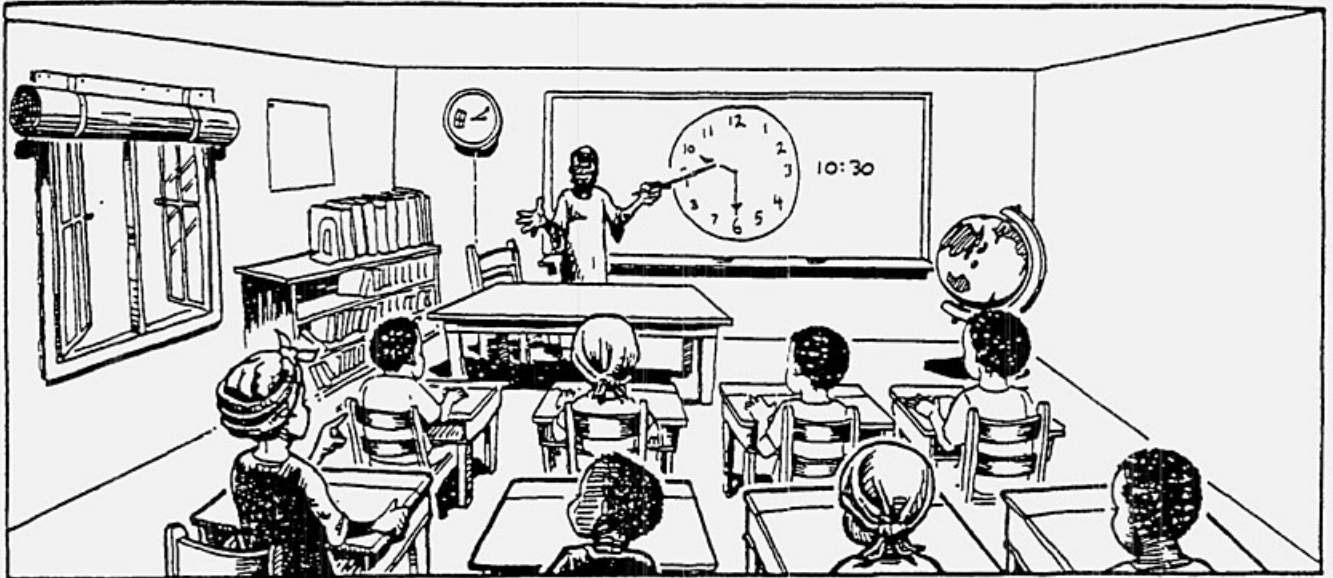


## LESSON 38

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 38, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 12 new vocabulary items
- tell time in Fulfulde
- use Ndey wakkati, ndey nyande
- use Wakkati ndey, nyande ndey
- use the Relative Future Benefactive
- use diga and diga \_\_\_\_\_ haa \_\_\_\_\_
- use the Fulfulde adjective derived from mawnugo.



### Dialogue

Wakkati agoogo.

*Clock time.*

Mallumjo: Pukaraajo, jooni noy wakkati?

*Student, what time is it now?*

Pukaraajo: Jooni kam 'dum njamndi sappo bee reeta.

*Now it's ten thirty.*

M: Ndey wakkati hasitugo haa mo'on?

*What is breakfast time in your household?*

P: Wakkati hasitugo 'dum njamndi jowee'di'di bee minti sappo e jowi.

*Breakfast time is seven fifteen.*

M: Too, ndey en nyaamata kadi?

*Okay, and when do we all eat again?*

P: En nyaaman caka naange. Caka nange boo, 'dum njamndi sappo e 'di'di cap.

*We eat at noon. Noon is twelve o'clock exactly.*

M: Wakkati ndey 'be jarribata fukaraa'be haa jangirde nde?

*What time do they examine the students at this school?*

P: Mallum Abdullaahi andini fukaraa'be maako 'be wara hande asira njamndi nayi cap, o jarriban 'be.

*Malam Abdullahi told his students to come in the evening at four o'clock sharp, and he will examine them.*

M: Too, boo'd'dum. Joo'du jooni.

*Fine, good. Now be seated.*

## Vocabulary

njamndi (ndi), jam'de ('de): *o'clock* (literally *metal*, a reference to a clock striking the hour)

reeta (ka), reetaaji ('di): *half*

agoogo (nga), or agoogowa (nga), agoogooji ('di): *watch, clock*

hasitugo: *to have breakfast*

minti (nde) or mintiire (nde), mintiiji ('di): *minute*

jarribugo: *to examine*

andinugo: *to inform, to tell*

asira (nde) or asiriire (nde): *late afternoon, evening*

## Exercise 1 Additional Vocabulary

luttugo: *to remain*

## Exercise 2 Wakkati agoogo

1.



Jooni, noy wakkati?

Jooni kam 'dum njamndi tati cap.

2.



Jooni, noy wakkati?

Jooni kam 'dum njamndi tati bee minti jowi.

3.



Jooni, noy wakkati?

Jooni kam 'dum njamndi tati bee minti sappo.

4.



Jooni, noy wakkati?

Jooni kam 'dum njamndi tati bee minti sappo e jowi.

5.



Jooni, noy wakkati?

Jooni kam 'dum njamndi tati bee reeta.



6.



Jooni, noy wakkati?

Jooni kam 'dum njamndi  
nayi lutti minti  
noogas e jowi.

7.



Jooni, noy wakkati?

Jooni kam 'dum njamndi  
nayi lutti minti noogas.

8.



Jooni, noy wakkati?

Jooni kam 'dum njamndi  
nayi lutti minti  
sappo e jowi.

9.



Jooni, noy wakkati?

Jooni kam 'dum njamndi  
nayi cap.

Exercise 3 Ndey en nyaamata?

1.



En nyaaman caka naange.

2.



En nyaaman njamndi sappo e 'di'di bee  
minti sappo e jowi.

3.



En nyaaman njamndi sappo e 'di'di bee reeta.

4.



En nyaaman njamndi ngooti lutti minti sappo e jowi.

5.



En nyaaman njamndi 'di'di bee reeta.

6.



En nyaaman njamndi jowee'di'di lu tti  
minti sappo e jowi.

7.



En nyaaman njamndi jowee'di'di be minti sappo e jowi.

8.



En nyaaman njamndi jowee'di'di bee reeta.

9.



En nyaaman njamndi jowee'tati lutti minti sappo e jowi.

Ndey wakkati and ndey nyande, followed by the Infinitive, form useful questions.

#### Exercise 4

hasitugo  
jarribugo fukaraa'be  
timminugo kuugal  
yahugo ngesa  
yahugo luumo  
jangugo  
nastugo jangirde  
ndey nyande  
yahugo 'Yoola  
hootugo  
ma'b'bitugo jangirde  
timminugo kuugal  
fu'd'dugo kuugal  
ndey wakkati

Ndey wakkati fu'd'dugo kuugal?  
Ndey wakkati hasitugo?  
Ndey wakkati jarribugo fukaraa'be?  
Ndey wakkati timminugo kuugal?  
Ndey wakkati yahugo ngesa?  
Ndey wakkati yahugo luumo?  
Ndey wakkati jangugo?  
Ndey wakkati nastugo jangirde?  
Ndey nyande nastugo jangirde?  
Ndey nyande yahugo 'Yoola?  
Ndey nyande hootugo?  
Ndey nyande ma'b'bitugo jangirde?  
Ndey nyande timminugo kuugal?  
Ndey nyande fu'd'dugo kuugal?  
Ndey wakkati fu'd'dugo kuugal.

Wakkati ndey and nyande ndey may also be used in forming questions. The Relative Future -ata form is generally used with this inverted structure.

When the Relative Future is involved in a Benefactive construction, the first -a of the -ata suffix is omitted. With maa, however, the construction is the same as that introduced in Lesson 37.

#### Habitual Benefactive

O soodani mo goorooje.  
O su'btani maa boo'd'de.  
O ustani 'be se'd'da.  
O defanan min nyamdu.  
A hollanan mo laawol.

#### Relative Future Benefactive

'Dume o soodanta mo?  
Ko o su'btante?  
Noy o ustanta 'be?  
Wakkati ndey o defanta min nyamdu?  
Wakkati ndey a hollanta mo laawol?







#### Exercise 5

en fu'd'dan hasitugo  
o yaaran dabbaaji  
'be hofnan jawmu saare  
o defanan min nyamdu  
a hollanan mo laawol  
nyande ndey  
o yaaran dabbaaji  
'be nastan jangirde  
'be ma'b'bitan jangirde  
'be jarriban fukaraa'be  
wakkati ndey

Wakkati ndey 'be jarribata fukaraa'be?  
Wakkati ndey en fu'd'data hasitugo?  
Wakkati ndey o yaarata dabbaaji?  
Wakkati ndey 'be hofnata jawmu saare?  
Wakkati ndey o defanta min nyamdu?  
Wakkati ndey a hollanta mo laawol?  
Nyande ndey a hollanta mo laawol?  
Nyande ndey o yaarata dabbaaji?  
Nyande ndey 'be nastata jangirde?  
Nyande ndey 'be ma'b'bitata jangirde?  
Nyande ndey 'be jarribata fukaraa'be?  
Wakkati ndey 'be jarribata fukaraa'be?

Sometimes the words *fajiri* (*morning*), *juura* (*about 2 p.m.*), *asira* (*after juura, late afternoon*), and *jemma* (*after sunset, night*) are used with clocktime expressions in order to make them more precise.

Exercise 6 Wakkati agoogo: Noy wakkati?

- |    |   |        |  |
|----|---|--------|--|
| 1. |    | fajiri | Jooni kam 'dum fajiri njamndi joweetati cap.                 |
| 2. |    | fajiri | Jooni kam 'dum fajiri njamndi sappo bee minti noogas.        |
| 3. |    | juura  | Jooni kam 'dum juura njamndi 'di'di bee minti jowi.          |
| 4. |  | juura  | Jooni kam 'dum juura njamndi 'di'di bee reeta.               |
| 5. |  | asira  | Jooni kam 'dum asira njamndi nayi lutti minti noogas e jowi. |
| 6. |  | asira  | Jooni kam 'dum asira njamndi nayi lutti minti sappo.         |

7.



jemma

Jooni kam 'dum jemma njamndi joweetati cap.

8.



jemma

Jooni kam 'dum jemma njamndi sappo bee minti noogas.

### Exercise 7 Additional Vocabulary

diga: *from*

To say *from one place to another* Fulfulde uses *diga* and *haa*.

O yaari dabbaaji diga saare  
haa luumo.

*He brought the animals from the  
compound to the market.*

### Exercise 8 Substitution drill

diga luumo haa saare  
diga ladde haa saare  
diga saare haa ladde  
diga waalde haa wuro  
diga wuro haa waalde  
diga luumo haa saare  
diga saare haa luumo

O yaari dabbaaji diga saare haa luumo.  
O yaari dabbaaji diga luumo haa saare.  
O yaari dabbaaji diga ladde haa saare.  
O yaari dabbaaji diga saare haa ladde.  
O yaari dabbaaji diga waalde haa wuro.  
O yaari dabbaaji diga wuro haa waalde.  
O yaari dabbaaji diga luumo haa saare.  
O yaari dabbaaji diga saare haa luumo.

### Exercise 9 Additional Vocabulary

durugo: *to herd*

Diga and haa are also used to say *from one time to another*.

Exercise 10 Substitution drill

huuwa	'Be 'don dura diga njamndi jowee'di'di haa njamndi 'di'di.
mi 'don 'daani	'Be 'don huuwa diga njamndi jowee'di'di haa njamndi 'di'di.
mi 'don janga	Mi 'don 'daani diga njamndi jowee'di'di haa njamndi 'di'di.
diga njamndi jowee'tati haa njamndi tati	Mi 'don janga diga njamndi jowee'di'di haa njamndi 'di'di.
o 'don dura	Mi 'don janga diga njamndi jowee'tati haa njamndi tati.
diga fajiri haa jemma	O 'don dura diga njamndi jowee'tati haa njamndi tati.
'be 'don rema	O 'don dura diga fajiri haa jemma.
dura	'Be 'don rema diga fajiri haa jemma.
diga njamndi jowee'di'di haa njamndi 'di'di	'Be 'don dura diga fajiri haa jemma.
	'Be 'don dura diga njamndi jowee'di'di haa njamndi 'di'di.

Exercise 11 Additional Vocabulary

Gombe: *town in Northern Nigeria.*

Exercise 12

Diga toy a wari?	(diga saare)	Mi wari diga saare.
Diga toy 'be wari?	(diga luumo)	'Be wari diga luumo.
Diga toy on eggi?	(diga Gombe)	Min eggi diga Gombe.
Diga toy Ful'be man eggi?	(diga Gombe)	'Be eggi diga Gombe.
Diga toy yim'be mon eggi?	(diga Gombe)	'Be eggi diga Gombe.

## Adjectives

Adjectives in Fulfulde are derived from verbs and agree with the noun they modify in accordance with the noun class system of concord. The adjective *big* is derived from *mawnugo*.

### Exercise 13

Noun class	<i>Big</i>
nde	mawnde
ngal	manngal
nge	mannge
ngu	manngu
ndu	mawndu
ko	makko
ka	makka
nga	mannga
ngo	manngo
ngol	manngol
ndi	mawndi
ki	makki
ngel	manngel
koy	makkoy
'de	maw'de
'di	maw'di
o	maw'do
'be	maw'be

### Exercise 14 Substitution drill

dammugal	saare mawnde
pagge	dammugal manngal
puccu	nagge mannge
suudu	puccu manngu
hunduko	suudu mawndu
ngesa	hunduko makko
agoogo	ngesa makka
daago	agoogo mannga
dawrawol	daago manngo
leddi	dawrawol manngol
'bokki	leddi mawndi
'bingel	bokki makki
'bikkoy	'bingel manngel
ci'e	'bikkoy makkoy
cuu'di	ci'e maw'de
gorko	cuu'di maw'di
wor'be	gorko maw'do
saare	wor'be maw'be
	saare mawnde

In the following exercise, two sentences are transformed into one using the adjective derived from mawnugo.

### Exercise 15

Keenya mi yi'i hunduko. Ko mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i hunduko makko.
Keenya mi yi'i 'bokki. Ki mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i 'bokki makki.
Keenya mi yi'i suudu. Ndu mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i suudu mawndu.
Keenya mi yi'i koroowal. Ngal mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i koroowal manngal.
Keenya mi yi'i mbeewa. Nga mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i mbeewa mannga.
Keenya mi yi'i daago. Ngo mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i daago manngo.
Keenya mi yi'i soorowol. Ngol mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i soorowol manngol.
Keenya mi yi'i puccu. Ngu mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i puccu manngu.
Keenya mi yi'i nagge. Nge mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i nagge mannge.
Keenya mi yi'i 'bingel. Ngel mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i 'bingel manngel.
Keenya mi yi'i ngesa. Ka mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i ngesa makka.
Keenya mi yi'i debbo. O mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i debbo maw'do.
Keenya mi yi'i cuu'di. 'Di mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i cuu'di maw'di.
Keenya mi yi'i ci'e. 'De mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i ci'e maw'de.
Keenya mi yi'i wor'be. 'Be mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i wor'be maw'be.
Keenya mi yi'i 'bikkoy. 'Be mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i 'bikkoy makkoy.
Keenya mi yi'i leddi. Ndi mawni.	Keenya mi yi'i leddi mawndi.

### **Jangde timmunde**

Njamndi noy a warata, Buuba?  
Mi waran njamndi 'di'di bee reeta.  
A tawataa yam njamndi 'di'di bee reeta kam.  
Njamndi noy mi tawata maa kadi?  
A tawat am njamndi jowi bee reeta.  
Too, mi nani. Sey to mi wari kadi.  
Sey to a wari.

Haa toy a durata?  
Mi 'don dura haa nder ladde.

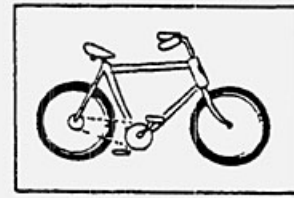
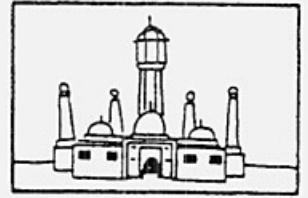
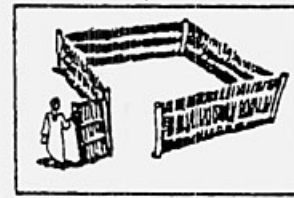
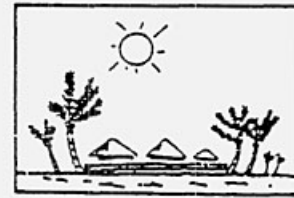
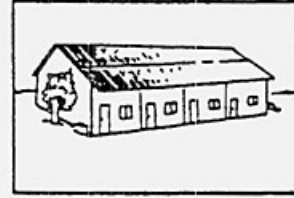
Njamndi noy on hasitata?  
Min 'don hasita njamndi joweetati.  
Njamndi noy on caka naange?  
Njamndi sappo e 'di'di cap.

Diga toy o yaari kare 'de.  
O yaari 'de diga 'Yoola haa Gombe.  
Diga toy a waddi mbaala nga?  
Mi waddi nga diga ngesa am.

Keenya Buuba yehi luumo bee 'bingel maako. O soodi mbeewa mannga haa ton.  
Haa laawol 'be yi'i wor'be maw'be. Soorowol manngol 'be nyibata kombi laawol  
ngol. Nden Buuba bee 'biyiiko hooti.



Ngewta



## LESSON 39

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 39, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 15 new vocabulary items
- use *ko* in relative clauses
- use the noun class marker for *which* and *that* in relative clauses
- use *haa* for *where* in relative clauses
- use the noun class marker for *where* in relative clauses
- use *mo* and *'be* for *who* and *whom* in relative clauses
- use the adjective *peetel* and the adjective derived from *fam'dugo*.



### Dialogue

Zeynabu: Use Buuba. A warti naa?

*Greetings Buba. Are you back then?*

Buuba: Yawwa, sannu. Mi warti.  
Saare fuh jam?

*Yes! Hello! I'm back. Is all  
well (here) at home?*

Z: Jam ni tawon. Noy habaru  
jangirde?

*Just fine. What news (have you)  
of school?*

B: Nde woo'di. Walaa ko mi wi'ata  
sey manoore. Mallum Yaakubu  
tini'i do masin. Mo nasti aji man,  
doole o yetta mo ngam ballal ngal  
o 'beddanta min.

*It was good. There's nothing that I  
will say except praise. Malam  
Yakubu is very energetic.  
Whoever entered his class  
must thank him for the help he  
lavishes upon (increases to) us.*

Z: Yawwa! Haala ka weli. Too,  
ndaa goorooje 'de mi soodi  
haa luumo. 'De wa'di naa?

*That's fine! Those words are pleasant.  
Well, here are the colanuts I bought  
at the market. Are they okay?*

B: Ooho, 'de woo'di.

*Yes, they're fine.*

Z: Ja'bu!

*Have one!*

## Vocabulary

aji (nga) or ajiwa (nga), ajiji ('di): class  
manoore (nde): praise  
tiniido (o), tiniibe ('be): zealous person, hard-working person  
mo in mo nasti aji man: he who, who  
doole: perforce, obligatorily  
ballal (ngal): help, assistance  
wa'dugo: to do (as in will it do?), to be okay  
ja'bugo: to accept, to receive (cf. mi ja'bi)

### Exercise 1 Additional Vocabulary

faamugo: to understand

### Relative Clauses

#### a) ko in a relative clause

We have seen ko used as a question marker at the beginning of a sentence. Ko yaari maa Giirey? Ko can also mean what or that in a relative clause when there is no specific noun class involved.

Mi yi'i ko a mari.  
Walaa ko o faamaay.  
Walaa ko mi wi'ata.

*I saw what you had.  
There is nothing that he didn't understand.  
There is nothing that I will say.*

### Substitution drills

#### Exercise 2

o he'bi  
o woodi  
o soodi  
o soodani maa  
o yi'di  
o defani 'be  
o mari

Mi yi'i ko o mari.  
Mi yi'i ko o he'bi.  
Mi yi'i ko o woodi.  
Mi yi'i ko o soodi.  
Mi yi'i ko o soodani maa.  
Mi yi'i ko o yi'di.  
Mi yi'i ko o defani 'be.  
Mi yi'i ko o mari.

#### Exercise 3

o nanaay  
o yi'aay  
o yi'daa  
o andaa  
o yeccaay  
o faamaay

Walaa ko o faamaay.  
Walaa ko o nanaay.  
Walaa ko o yi'aay.  
Walaa ko o yi'daa.  
Walaa ko o andaa.  
Walaa ko o yeccaay.  
Walaa ko o faamaay.

#### Exercise 4

woodi  
ndaa  
mi faamata  
woodi  
walaa  
mi nanata  
ndaa  
woodi  
mi wi'ata  
walaa

Walaa ko mi wi'ata.  
Woodi ko mi wi'ata.  
Ndaa ko mi wi'ata.  
Ndaa ko mi faamata.  
Woodi ko mi faamata.  
Walaa ko mi faamata.  
Walaa ko mi nanata.  
Ndaa ko mi nanata.  
Woodi ko mi nanata.  
Woodi ko mi wi'ata.  
Walaa ko mi wi'ata.

#### Exercise 5

'be waddi  
'be sorrani maa  
a soodi keenya  
min tawi haa laawol  
ko a yi'di

Hokkam ko a yi'di.  
Hokkam ko 'be waddi.  
Hokkam ko 'be sorrani maa.  
Hokkam ko a soodi keenya.  
Hokkam ko min tawi haa laawol.  
Hokkam ko a yi'di.

#### b) The noun class marker in a relative clause

When a specific noun is involved, the noun class marker is used in place of ko in a relative clause.

Ndaa deftere nde mi soodi.

*Here is the book that I bought.*

Ndaa deftere mawnde nde mi soodante. *Here is the big book I will buy for you.*

#### Substitution drills

#### Exercise 6

jaawngal  
'dereewol  
kosam  
tebur  
daago  
goorooje  
bulki  
deftere

Ndaa deftere nde mi soodi.  
Ndaa jaawngal ngal mi soodi.  
Ndaa 'dereewol ngol mi soodi.  
Ndaa kosam 'dam mi soodi.  
Ndaa tebur nga mi soodi.  
Ndaa daago ngo mi soodi.  
Ndaa goorooje 'de mi soodi.  
Ndaa bulki 'di mi soodi.  
Ndaa deftere nde mi soodi.

## Exercise 7

koroowal	Ndee deftere mawnde nde mi soodante.
nagge	Ndaa koroowal mawngal ngal mi soodante.
puccu	Ndaa nagge manngge nge mi soodante.
akootiru	Ndaa puccu manngu ngu mi soodante.
ngesa	Ndaa akootiru mawndu ndu mi soodante.
mbeewa	Ndaa ngesa makka ka mi soodante.
leeso	Ndaa mbeewa mannga nga mi soodante.
ngapaleewol	Ndaa leeso manngo ngo mi soodante.
baalel	Ndaa ngapaleewol manngol ngol mi soodante.
mbaaloy	Ndaa baalel manngel ngel mi soodante.
kolobaaaji	Ndaa mbaaloy makkoy koy mi soodante.
payan'de	Ndaa kolobaaaji maw'di 'di mi soodante.
deftere	Ndaa payan'de maw'de 'de mi soodante.
	Ndaa deftere mawnde nde mi soodante.

Before explaining the use of *haa* in relative clauses, we'll review the various uses of *haa* we have seen so far.

### Haa - at

Zeynabu 'don haa 'Yoola.  
Zeynabu 'don haa nder suudu.  
Zeynabu 'don haa yonnde.  
Zeynabu 'don haa yeeso.  
Zeynabu 'don haa 'baawo.  
Zeynabu 'don haa 'do.  
Zeynabu 'don haa ton.  
Zeynabu 'don haa toy?  
Sawru 'don haa jungo mallumjo.  
Haa toy Zeynabu woni?  
Woodi yim'be 'duu'd'be haa luumo.

Especially before *nder*, *'do* and *ton*, *haa* may be omitted.

### Haa - where

Mi andi haa o woni.	<i>I know where he is.</i>
O joo'da haa o yi'di.	<i>Let him sit where he will.</i>
Ndaa haa o joo'dino.	<i>There's where he used to live.</i>

Haa - to (much less frequent and can usually be omitted)

Zeynabu 'don yaha haa saare Mallum Yaakubu.  
Zeynabu 'don dilla haa waalde.  
Zeynabu 'don wara haa luumo.  
Zeynabu 'don warta haa jangirde.

Haa - until

O nanaay habaru haa jooni.	<i>He didn't hear the news yet.</i>
O nanaay habaru haa keenya.	<i>He didn't hear the news until yesterday.</i>
O nanaay habaru haa nyande Alat.	<i>He didn't hear the news until Sunday.</i>
O yehi haa o somi.	<i>He went until he was tired.</i>
O nyaami haa o hari.*	<i>He ate until he was full.</i>
O joo'di haa o nee'bi.	<i>He sat until he had been a long time.</i>

\*harugo: to have eaten enough, to be full, to be satisfied

Haa - let

Haa mi laara.	<i>Let me see.</i>
Haa 'be wara.	<i>Let them come.</i>
Haa en nyaama.	<i>Let's eat.</i>

And now to return to relative clauses.

### c) Haa in a relative clause meaning where

#### Exercise 8 Additional Vocabulary

waancugo: to walk  
heftugo: to discover, to find out

We have seen the question word *toy?* where?: Toy suudu Zeynabu? Toy a yahata?

In relative clauses, however, the locative *where* is *haa* when a specific noun is not involved.

O 'don waanca haa o yi'di.	<i>He walks where he wants (to walk).</i>
A hefti haa o yehi naa?	<i>Did you find out where he went?</i>

In the following exercise, emphatic pronouns are the cues, but the sentences use the subject pronouns.

Exercise 9 Substitution drill

min	O 'don waanca haa o yi'di.
kam'be	Mi 'don waanca haa mi yi'di.
darugo	'Be 'don waanca haa 'be yi'di.
enen	'Be 'don dari haa 'be yi'di.
waalugo	En 'don dari haa en yi'di.
onon	En 'don waali haa en yi'di.
nee'bugo	On 'don waali haa on yi'di.
kam'be	On 'don nee'bi haa on yi'di.
waancugo	'Be 'don nee'bi haa 'be yi'di.
kanko	'Be 'don waanca haa 'be yi'di.
	O 'don waanca haa o yi'di.

Here are some questions and their positive answers.

Exercise 10

A hefti haa o yehi naa?	Ooho, mi hefti haa o yehi.
O yecci maa haa o yehi naa?	Ooho, o yecci am haa o yehi.
On nani haa o yehi naa?	Ooho, min nani haa o yehi.
A 'yami mo haa o eggi naa?	Ooho, mi 'yami mo haa o eggi.
'Be andi haa o eggi naa?	Ooho, 'be andi haa o eggi.
A hefti haa o eggi naa?	Ooho, mi hefti haa o eggi.

Here are some questions and their negative answers.

Exercise 11

A hefti haa o yehi naa?	Aa'a, mi heftaay haa o yehi.
O yecci maa haa o yehi naa?	Aa'a, o yeccaay am haa o yehi.
On nani haa o yehi naa?	Aa'a, min nanaay haa o yehi.
A 'yami mo haa o eggi naa?	Aa'a, mi 'yamaay mo haa o eggi.
'Be andi haa o eggi naa?	Aa'a, 'be andaa haa o eggi.
A hefti haa o eggi naa?	Aa'a, mi heftaay haa o eggi.

Exercise 12 Additional Vocabulary



pellel (ngel), pallelji ('di): *place*

ruumorde (nde), duumor'di ('di): *rainy season  
encampment*



d) The noun class marker in a relative clause meaning *where*

Often, especially when a specific place is mentioned, the noun class marker is used in place of *haa* to mean *where* in a relative clause.

Mi yehi haa ruumorde nde o joo'dino.      *I went to the encampment where he had lived.*

Exercise 13 Substitution drill

pellet	Mi yehi haa ruumorde nde o joo'dino.
bukkaaru	Mi yehi haa pellet ngel o joo'dino.
soorowol	Mi yehi haa bukkaaru ndu o joo'dino.
pellet	Mi yehi haa soorowol ngol o joo'dino.
ruumorde	Mi yehi haa pellet ngel o joo'dino.
bukkaaru	Mi yehi haa ruumorde nde o joo'dino.
saare	Mi yehi haa bukkaaru ndu o joo'dino.
wuro	Mi yehi haa saare nde o joo'dino.
leddi	Mi yehi haa wuro ngo o joo'dino.
bukkaaru	Mi yehi haa leddi ndi o joo'dino.
pellet	Mi yehi haa bukkaaru ndu o joo'dino.
ruumorde	Mi yehi haa pellet ngel o joo'dino.
	Mi yehi haa ruumorde nde o joo'dino.

e) *Mo* and *'be* in relative clauses

*Mo* and *'be* are used to mean *who* and *whom* in relative clauses.

Ndaa gorko mo nasti aji man.	<i>Here is the man who entered that class.</i>
Gorko mo a yi'i nee'bi haa wuro.	<i>The man whom you saw remained in town a long time.</i>
Mi yetti wor'be 'be 'beddani min ballal ngal.	<i>I thanked the men who gave us that help.</i>
Fukaraa'be 'be mi yiidi 'be jangan diga fajiri haa jemma.	<i>The students whom I met read (Habitual) from morning until night. (or)</i>
Fukaraajo mo mi yiidi jangan diga fajiri haa jemma.	<i>The student whom I met will read from morning until night.</i>

In the following exercise, two sentences are combined into one using *mo* or *'be* in the relative clause.

Exercise 14

Ndaa gorko. O nasti aji.	Ndaa gorko mo nasti aji.
Ndaa debbo. O motti hottollo ko'o.	Ndaa debbo mo motti hottollo ko'o.
Mi wolwi bee jawmu ku'b'bir'dum. O waddi leggal ngal.	Mi wolwi bee jawmu ku'b'bir'dum mo waddi leggal ngal.
Mi yehi haa jawmu'en kanti. 'Be he'bani yam gooro.	Mi yehi haa jawmu'en kanti 'be he'bani yam gooro.
Mi yilli yim'be. 'Be joo'di haa pellet nge'el.	Mi yilli yim'be 'be joo'di haa pellet nge'el.

### Exercise 15

	Gorko mo mi yi'i nee'bi haa luumo.
modibbo	Modibbo mo mi yi'i nee'bi haa luumo.
Tuurankeejo	Tuurankeejo mo mi yi'i nee'bi haa luumo.
mi yiidi	Tuurankeejo mo mi yiidi nee'bi haa luumo.
jangan diga fajiri	Tuurankeejo mo mi yiidi janga diga fajiri haa jemma.
haa jemma	
fukaraa'be	Fukaraa'be 'be mi yiidi janga diga fajiri haa jemma.
mallum'en	Mallum'en 'be mi yiidi janga diga fajiri haa jemma.
naye'en	Naye'en 'be mi yiidi janga diga fajiri haa jemma.
gorko	Gorko mo mi yiidi janga diga fajiri haa jemma.
mi yi'i	Gorko mo mi yi'i janga diga fajiri haa jemma.
nee'bi haa luumo	Gorko mo mi yi'i nee'bi haa luumo.

### Exercise 16 Additional Vocabulary

peetel: *little*

Peetel is one adjective not subject to concord in Adamawa Fulfulde. It is used without change for all the noun classes.

Here are some questions and their negative answers.

### Exercise 17

Saare ndeya mawni naa?	Aa'a, nde peetel.
Suudu nduya mawni naa?	Aa'a, ndu peetel.
Luumo ngoya mawni naa?	Aa'a, ngo peetel.
Ngesa kaya mawni naa?	Aa'a, ka peetel.
Debbo oya mawni naa?	Aa'a, o peetel.
Cuu'di 'diya mawni naa?	Aa'a, 'di peetel.
Ci'e 'deya mawni naa?	Aa'a, 'de peetel.
Leddi ndiya mawni naa?	Aa'a, ndi peetel.

The Fulfulde word for *small*, however, is derived from the verb *fam'dugo* and changes for each noun class.

Here are some exercises to help you learn the Fulfulde word for *small*. Like *big*, *small* is not apt to be used with 'dam class nouns.

### Exercise 18

Noun class	<i>Small</i>
nde	famarde
ngal	pamaral
nge	famare
ngu	pamaru
ndu	famardu
ko	pamaro

Exercise 19 Additional Vocabulary



'boosaaru (ndu), 'boosaaji ('di): dog



mbe'du (ngu), be'di ('di): small mat to cover pots, etc.

Exercise 20

ruumorde  
gertogal  
nagge  
mbe'du  
hunduko  
'boosaaru

'boosaaru famardu  
ruumorde famarde  
gertogal pamaral  
nagge famare  
mbe'du pamaru  
hunduko pamaro  
'boosaaru famardu

In the following exercise, two sentences are combined into one using the adjective derived from fam'dugo.

Exercise 21

Mi mari loonde. Nde fam'di.  
Mi mari gertogal. Ngal fam'di.  
Mi mari nagge. Nge fam'di.  
Mi mari mbe'du. Ngu fam'di.  
Mi mari 'boosaaru. Ndu fam'di.  
Mi mari hunduko. Ko fam'di.

Mi mari loonde famarde.  
Mi mari gertogal pamaral.  
Mi mari nagge famare.  
Mi mari mbe'du pamaru.  
Mi mari 'boosaaru famardu.  
Mi mari hunduko pamaro.

Exercise 22

Noun class

ka  
nga  
ngo  
ngol  
ndi  
ki

Small

pamara  
pamara  
famaro  
pamarol  
pamardi  
pamari

### Exercise 23

agoogo	ngesa pamara
daago	agoogo pamara
dawrawol	daago famaro
njamndi	dawrawol pamarol
'bokki	njamndi pamardi
ngesa	'bokki pamari
	ngesa pamara

### Exercise 24

Mi woodi ngesa. Ka fam'di.	Mi woodi ngesa pamara.
Mi woodi agoogo. Nga fam'di.	Mi woodi agoogo pamara.
Mi woodi leeso. Ngo fam'di.	Mi woodi leeso famaro.
Mi woodi ngapaleewol. Ngol fam'di.	Mi woodi ngapaleewol pamarol.
Mi woodi njamndi. Ndi fam'di.	Mi woodi njamndi pamardi.
Mi woodi lekki. Ki fam'di.	Mi woodi lekki pamari.

### Exercise 25

Noun class	<i>Small</i>
ngel	pamarel
koy	pamaroy
'de	pamar'de
'di	pamar'di
o	pamaro
'be	famar'be

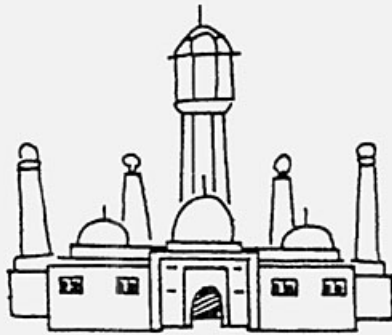
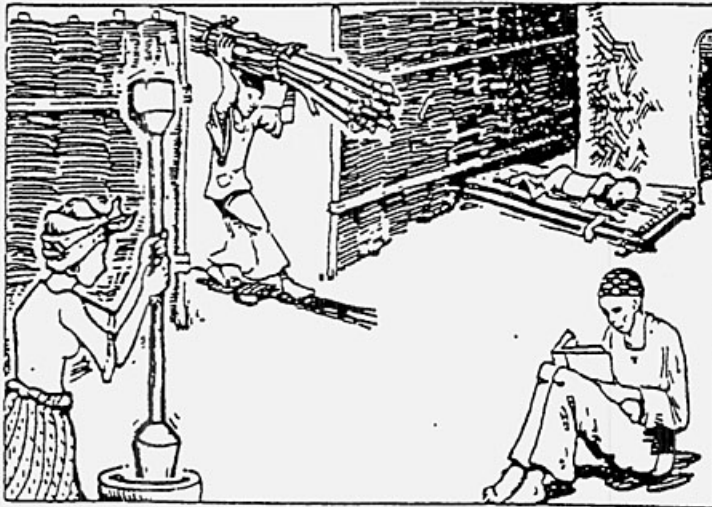
### Exercise 26

mbaaloy	baalel pamarel
ci'e	mbaaloy pamaroy
bukkaaji	ci'e pamar'de
debbo	bukkaaji pamar'di
rew'be	debbo pamaro
baalel	rew'be famar'be
	baalel pamarel

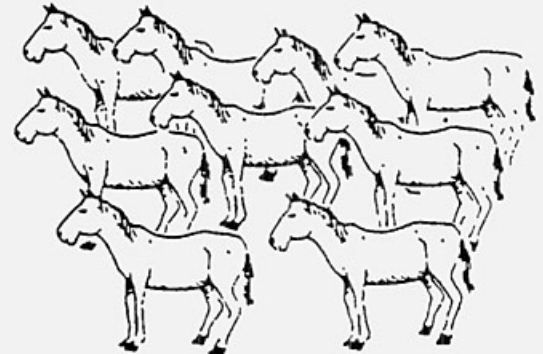
### Exercise 27

Mi he'bi 'bingel. Ngel fam'di.	Mi he'bi 'bingel pamarel.
Mi he'bi 'bikkoy. Koy fam'di.	Mi he'bi 'bikkoy pamaroy.
Mi he'bi loo'de. 'De fam'di.	Mi he'bi loo'de pamar'de
Mi he'bi bukkaaji. 'Di fam'di.	Mi he'bi bukkaaji pamar'di.
Mi he'bi debbo. O fam'di.	Mi he'bi debbo pamaro.
Mi he'bi 'bi'b'be. 'Be fam'di.	Mi he'bi 'bi'b'be famar'be.

Ngewta



29	13	100	.16
85	48	60	94
86	47	31	33
87	52	79	34



## LESSON 40

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 40, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 12 new vocabulary items
- use the Conditional: to
- use Counterfactuals: to and daa
- use the Fulfulde adjective derived from 'duu'dugo.

## Dialogue

Umaru: Hey, Buuba am, toy  
a yehi keenya?

Hey, Buba, where were you  
yesterday?

Buuba: Mi yehi Fufuore. Nde  
mi yotti, mi nasti aji  
maw'be haa ton.

I went to Fufuore. When I got  
there, I entered (enrolled in)  
an adult class there.

U: Kilnii'dum! Ngam 'dume a  
yi'di ekkitugo jangde?

Amazing! Why do you want  
to learn reading?

B: A'a! To go'd'do waawataa  
jangugo jamanu 'do, o  
nanataa bel'dum.

!! If a person can't read  
in this era, he won't enjoy  
life (lit. feel pleasure).

U: Non boo. Goonga maa'da.

Just so. You're right.  
(lit. your truth)

B: Amma, to o waawi jangugo  
bee windugo fuh, joonde maako  
haa duniyaaru welan.

But if he is able both to read  
and write, his sojourn in the  
world will be pleasant.

U: To mi andiino, daa mi  
yaadiino bee maa. Useni, to  
a loraa, yaaram.

If I had known, I would have  
gone with you. Please, if you  
go back, take me (with you).

## Vocabulary

kilnii'dum: *surprising*  
jamanu (ngu): *era, age, period*  
nanugo bel'dum: *to feel pleasure*  
fuh: *too, also, here both*  
joonde (nde): *sojourn, residence*  
duniyaaru (ndu): *world*  
yaadugo: *to go with, accompany*  
lorugo: *to go back*  
Fufuore: *Fufuore (place name)*

## Exercise 1 Additional Vocabulary

findimugo: to awaken  
filugo: to trade, to retail  
yanugo: to fall

### To

The conditional *if* isto in Fulfulde. To is used with the Continuous, Stative, Completed and Future-Habitual forms of the verb and with other verb-like constructions such as woodi and walaa.

To 'be 'don huuwa, accu 'be. To ngel 'don 'daani, taa findinu ngel.	<i>If they are working, leave them. If he (child) is sleeping, don't awaken him.</i>
To a waawi filugo, a he'ban ceede. To 'be nastan, ma'b'bitanu 'be dammugal.	<i>If you can trade, you will get money. If they are entering, open the door for them.</i>
To mi walaa, mi hokkataa maa gooro.	<i>If I don't have any, I won't give you colanuts.</i>

In the following exercise, two sentences are combined into one beginning with to.

### Exercise 2

A waawi Fulfulde. A nanan. A waawi nyi'bugo. A timminan lawlaw. A waawi su'btugo. A soodan goorooje 'boo'd'de.	To a waawi Fulfulde, a nanan. To a waawi nyi'bugo, a timminan lawlaw. To a waawi su'btugo, a soodan goorooje boo'd'de.
A 'don huuwa. Mi accan maa. O waawi wa"ugo baskur. O yanataa. A waawi filugo. A he'ban ceede. A filan. A nanan bel'dum. A loran. Yaaram. O 'don 'daani. Mi findinataa mo. O yanan. Mi wallan mo.	To a 'don huuwa, mi accan maa. To o waawi wa"ugo baskur o yanataa. To a waawi filugo, a he'ban ceede. To a filan, a nanan bel'dum. To a loran, yaaram. To o 'don 'daani, mi findinataa mo. To o yanan, mi wallan mo.

Substitution drills

### Exercise 3

'yamugo  
timminugo  
lorugo  
joo'dugo  
wi'ugo goonga  
warugo

To a waran, mi hokkan maa gooro.  
To a 'yaman, mi hokkan maa gooro.  
To a timminan, mi hokkan maa gooro.  
To a loran, mi hokkan maa gooro.  
To a joo'dan, mi hokkan maa gooro.  
To a wi'an goonga, mi hokkan maa gooro.  
To a waran, mi hokkan maa gooro.



#### Exercise 4

ceede  
he'bataa  
mo  
nyamdu  
'be (object)  
ndiyam  
wala  
maa  
gooro

To mi wala, mi hokkataa maa gooro.  
To mi wala, mi hokkataa maa ceede.  
To mi he'bataa, mi hokkataa maa ceede.  
To mi he'bataa, mi hokkataa mo ceede.  
To mi he'bataa, mi hokkataa mo nyamdu.  
To mi he'bataa, mi hokkataa 'be nyamdu.  
To mi he'bataa, mi hokkataa 'be ndiyam.  
To mi wala, mi hokkataa 'be ndiyam.  
To mi wala, mi hokkataa maa ndiyam.  
To mi wala, mi hokkataa maa gooro.

#### Exercise 5

'daani  
findinu mo  
wolwu  
huuwa  
nyaama nyiiri  
joo'du  
dari  
dillu  
nastu  
waali

To o 'don waali, taa nastu.  
To o 'don 'daani, taa nastu.  
To o 'don 'daani, taa findinu mo.  
To o 'don 'daani, taa wolwu.  
To o 'don huuwa, taa wolwu.  
To o 'don nyaama nyiiri, taa wolwu.  
To o 'don nyaama nyiiri, taa joo'du.  
To o 'don dari, taa joo'du.  
To o 'don dari, taa dillu.  
To o 'don dari, taa nastu.  
To o 'don waali, taa nastu.

#### Exercise 6

o 'don 'daani  
findinataa mo  
wolwataa  
o 'don huuwa  
o 'don nyaama nyiiri  
joo'dataa  
o 'don dari  
dillataa  
nastataa  
waali

To o 'don waali, mi nastataa.  
To o 'don 'daani, mi nastataa.  
To o 'don 'daani, mi findinataa mo.  
To o 'don 'daani, mi wolwataa.  
To o 'don huuwa, mi wolwataa.  
To o 'don nyaama nyiiri, mi wolwataa.  
To o 'don nyaama nyiiri, mo joo'dataa.  
To o 'don dari, mi joo'dataa.  
To o 'don dari, mi dillataa.  
To o 'don dari, mi nastataa.  
To o 'don waali, mi nastataa.

In the following exercise, the Imperative first sentences are changed into conditional sentences beginning with to.

Exercise 7

Wa'du kuugal ngal, haa mi hokka maa ceede.	To a wa'di kuugal ngal, mi hokkan maa ceede.
Joo'du'do, haa a ekkita.	To a joo'di 'do, a ekkitan.
Fu'd'du jooni, haa mi waddane 'dereewol.	To a fu'd'di jooni, mi waddante 'dereewol.
Daru ton, haa a nana haala am.	To a dari ton, a nanan haala am.
Nyaamu ndi, haa mi 'beddane.	To a nyaami ndi, mi 'beddante.

When speaking of the future, to may also mean *when*.

To a wari, waddanam deftere maa. or To a waran, waddanam deftere maa.	<i>When you come, bring me your book.</i>
--	---

In the following exercise, two sentences are combined to form one beginning with to. The first verb in the sentence beginning with to takes the Completed form.

Exercise 8

A waran. Waddanam deftere maa.	To a wari, waddanam deftere maa.
A waran. Mi hokkan maa gooro.	To a wari, mi hokkan maa gooro.
O nastan. Mi ma'b'bitanan mo dammugal.	To o nasti, mi ma'b'bitanan mo dammugal.
'Be 'yaman. Mi jaaban 'be.	To 'be 'yami, mi jaaban 'be.

In the next exercise, combine the two sentences as above, but this time use the Future following to.

Exercise 9

A waran. Waddanam deftere maa.	To a waran, waddanam deftere maa.
A waran. Mi hokkan maa gooro.	To a waran, mi hokkan maa gooro.
O nastan. Mi ma'b'bitanan mo dammugal.	To o nastan, mi ma'b'bitanan mo dammugal.
'Be 'yaman. Mi jaaban 'be.	To 'be 'yaman, mi jaaban 'be.

## daa: Counterfactuals

Counterfactuals describe what would have happened if something else had also happened but didn't. Fulfulde Counterfactuals use *to* preceding the first clause and *daa* preceding the second clause. Both verbs of this construction take the *-no* suffix.

To a warino, daa mi hokkino  
maa gooro.

*If you had come, I would  
have given you colanuts.*

To o nastanno, daa mi ma'b'bitanino  
mo dammugal.

*If he had been about to enter,  
I would have opened the door  
for him.*

### Exercise 10

To a wari, mi hokkan  
maa gooro.

To a warino, daa mi  
hokkino maa gooro.

To o nasti, mi ma'b'bitanan  
mo dammugal.

To o nastino, daa mi  
ma'b'bitanino mo dammugal.

To 'be 'yami, mi jaaban 'be.

To 'be 'yamino, daa mi  
jaabino 'be.

To on somi, on siwtan.

To on somino, daa on  
siwtino.

To mi nee'bi, o tokkan am.

To mi nee'bino, daa o  
tokkino am.

To mi andi, mi yaadan bee maa.

To mi andino, daa mi yaadino  
bee maa.

## Adjectives: *many* and *much*

The Fulfulde adjectives for *many* and *much* are derived from the verb 'duu'dugo, cf. 'duu'di. As in other languages, *many* and *much* are used mainly to modify collective nouns and plural nouns, so for many of the Fulfulde noun classes, they simply won't occur. Here is a list of the most commonly used Fulfulde forms for *many* and *much*.

### Exercise 11

#### Noun class

ngal  
'dam  
ka  
ko  
ngol  
ndi  
koy  
'de  
'di  
'be

#### Many, much

'duungal  
'duu'dam  
'duu'dka  
'duu'dko  
'duungol  
'duundi  
'duu'dkoy  
'duu'de  
'duu'd'di  
'duu'd'be

Exercise 12 Substitution drill

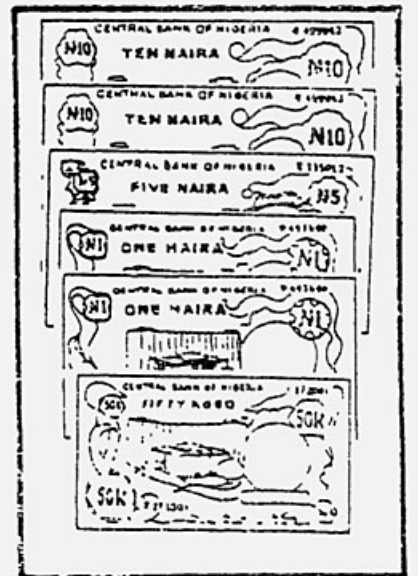
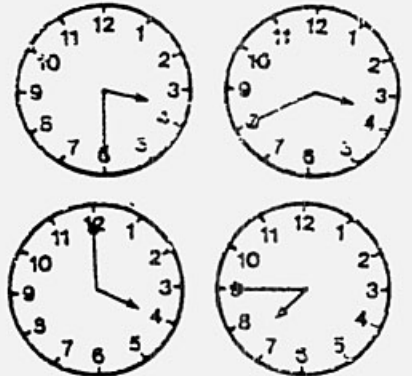
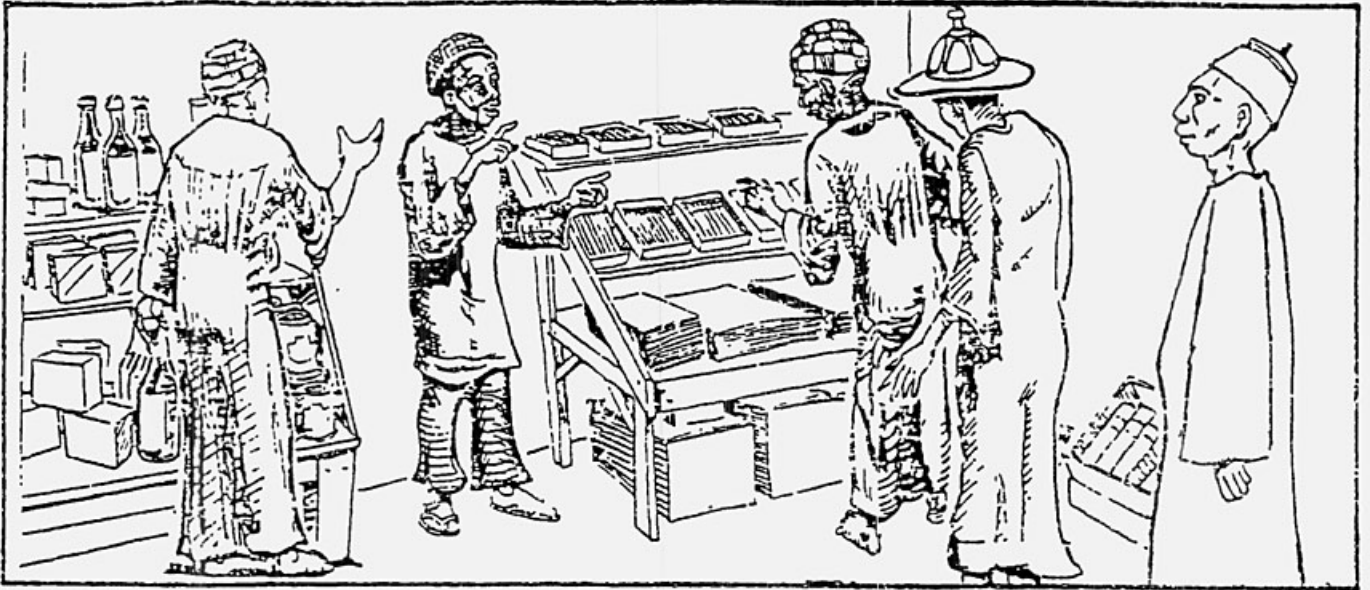
ndiyam	kuugal 'duungal
haala	ndiyam 'duu'dam
hottollo	haala 'duu'dka
peewol	hottollo duu'dko
nyiiri	peewol 'duungal
'bikkoy	nyiiri 'duundi
ka'b'be	'bikkoy 'duu'dkoy
li'd'di	ka'b'be 'duu'de
wor'be	li'd'di 'duu'd'di
kuugal	wor'be 'duu'd'be
	kuugal 'duungal

The following exercise transforms two sentences into one using the adjective derived from 'duu'dugo.

Exercise 13

Hande woodi yim'be haa luumo. 'Be 'duu'di.	Hande woodi yim'be 'duu'd'be haa luumo.
Hande woodi gertoo'de haa luumo. 'De 'duu'di.	Hande woodi gertoo'de 'duu'd'de haa luumo.
Hande woodi dabbaaji haa luumo. 'Di 'duu'di.	Hande woodi dabbaaji 'duu'd'di haa luumo.
Hande woodi hottollo haa luumo. Ko 'duu'di.	Hande woodi hottollo 'duu'dko haa luumo.
Hande woodi peewol haa luumo. Ngol 'duu'di.	Hande woodi peewol 'duungal haa luumo.
Hande woodi gawri haa luumo. Ndi 'duu'di.	Hande woodi gawri 'duundi haa luumo.
Hande woodi haala haa luumo. Ka 'duu'di.	Hande woodi haala 'duu'dka haa luumo.
Hande woodi kuugal haa luumo. Ngal 'duu'di.	Hande woodi kuugal 'duungal haa luumo.
Hande woodi Ful'be haa luumo. 'Be 'duu'di.	Hande woodi Ful'be 'duu'd'be haa luumo.
Hande woodi kosam haa luumo. 'Dam 'duu'di.	Hande woodi kosam 'duu'dam haa luumo.

Ngewta



## LESSON 41

### Objectives

After completing Lesson 41, the student will be able to:

- identify and correctly use 8 new vocabulary items
- use the Fulfulde Distantive ~~-oy-~~ verbal infix
- use the Fulfulde Causative ~~-in-~~ verbal infix
- use the Fulfulde adjective derived from woo'dugo
- use *nde* for *when*.



### Dialogue

Awdu: To a yehoyi keenya, Buuba?

*Where did you go yesterday, Buba?*

Buuba: Mi yehi ekkitooyo jangde.

*I went to learn reading.*

A: Moy jangini on?

*Who taught you reading?*

B: Maalam Yaakubu jangini min.  
Nde min yotti haa maako, o  
ja'b'bi min, o nastini min  
haa saare.

*Malam Yakubu taught us. When  
we arrived at his compound,  
he welcomed us and had us  
enter.*

A: Too, 'baawo 'don boo, ko  
o wa'di?

*I see, and after that, what  
did he do?*

B: O wurtini daage haa suudu,  
min joo'di.

*He brought mats out from a room  
and we sat down.*

A: Nden on fu'd'di janguko koo?

*Then did you begin to read?*

B: Non boo. Kuugal woo'di masin.  
Nde min timmini jangde, min fuh  
min yetti mo. Nden min hootoyi.  
Hande kiiki'de boo mi yahan ton.

*That's right. The work went very  
well. When we finished reading, we all  
thanked him. Then we headed for  
home. This afternoon I'll go  
there again.*

A: Too, sey to a lortoyi.

*Well. Until you return!*

B: Sey to mi lortoyi.

*Until I return!*

## Vocabulary

ja'b'bugo: to welcome (cf. ja'b'baama)  
'baawo 'don: after that, next  
wurtugo: to go out, come out  
lortugo: to return  
nde: when

### Distantive: -oy- infix

When a verb describes something occurring at a distance, Fulfulde will sometimes use the infix -oy- which is inserted between the verb root and the final ending.

O jangi.	<i>He read. or He studied.</i>
O jangoyi.	<i>He studied some distance away.</i>

Often -oy- implies movement to the distant location.

Mi yehi Kano, mi jangi.	<i>I went to Kano and studied.</i>
Mi jangoyi haa Kano.	<i>I went away to study at Kano.</i>

When the -oy- infix is used with the Infinitive, the u is dropped from the Infinitive suffix.

Mi yehi ekkitugo.	<i>I went to learn.</i>
Mi yehi ekkitoygo.	<i>I went a distance to learn.</i>

### Exercise 1

O jangi.	O jangoyi.
O 'don janga.	O 'don jangoya.
O jangan.	O jangoyan.
O yehi jangugo.	O yehi jangoygo.
O ekkiti.	O ekkitoyi.
O 'don ekkita.	O 'don ekkitoya.
O dilli ekkitugo.	O dilli ekkitoygo.

In the following exercise, the first sentence is transformed into a sentence using -oy-. Yehi is omitted from the second sentence.

### Exercise 2

Mi yehi Kano mi jangi.	Mi jangoyi haa Kano.
Mi yehi 'Yoola mi huuwi.	Mi huuwoyi haa 'Yoola.
O yehi Marwa o nyaami luumo.	O nyaamoyi luumo haa Marwa.
Min yehi Ngawndere min siwti.	Min siwtoyi haa Ngawndere.
'Be yehi Jaalingo 'be te'i.	'Be te'oyi haa Jaalingo.

### Exercise 3 Additional Vocabulary

timmugo: to be finished



### Causative: -in- infix

To cause someone to do something and to cause something to be something are expressed in Fulfulde by the -in- infix which is placed between the verb root and the final ending. For example, timminugo is actually the verb timmugo with the -in- infix.

Kuugal timmi. O timmini kuugal.	<i>The work is finished. He finished the work. (He caused the work to be finished.)</i>
O ekkiti. O ekkitini.	<i>He learned. He taught. (He caused someone to learn.)</i>
O nasti saare. O nastini min saare.	<i>He entered the compound. He let us into the compound. (He caused us to enter the compound.)</i>

### Substitution drills

#### Exercise 4

Buuba jawmu saare debbo Buuba Mallum Abdullaahi o	O nastini min saare. Buuba nastini min saare. Jawmu saare nastini min saare. Debbo Buuba nastini min saare. Mallum Abdullaahi nastini min saare. O nastini min saare.
---	--

#### Exercise 5

Zeynabu leese haa soorowol 'bingel nastini kare fuh Usumaanu wurtini haa saare daage	Usumaanu wurtini daage haa saare. Zeynabu wurtini daage haa saare. Zeynabu wurtini leese haa saare. Zeynabu wurtini leese haa soorowol 'Bingel wurtini leese haa soorowol. 'Bingel nastini leese haa soorowol. 'Bingel nastini kare fuh haa soorowol. Usumaanu nastini kare fuh haa soorowol. Usumaanu wurtini kare fuh haa soorowol. Usumaanu wurtini kare fuh haa saare. Usumaanu wurtini daage haa saare.
---	--

The next two exercises involve combining two sentences into one using the -in- infix.

### Exercise 6

Buuba yecci yam. Jooni mi andi.  
Laamii'do yecci yam. Jooni mi andi.  
Mallumjo yecci min. Jooni min andi.  
Buuba yecci 'be. Jooni 'be andi.  
Daada yecci maa. Jooni a andi.

Buuba andini yam.  
Laamii'do andini yam.  
Mallumjo andini min.  
Buuba andini 'be.  
Daada andini maa.

### Exercise 7

Mi wa'di kuugal. Ngal timmi.  
Mi jangi. Jangde timmi.  
O windi. Windugo timmi.  
Min nyi'bi suudu. Nyi'bugo timmi.  
'Be remi ngesa. Remugo timmi.

Mi timmini kuugal.  
Mi timmini jangde.  
O timmini windugo.  
Min timmini nyi'bugo suudu.  
'Be timmini remugo ngesa.

In the following exercise, a sentence using *ekkiti* is transformed into a sentence using *ekkitini*.

### Exercise 8

Mi ekkiti haa Mallum Abdullaahi.  
'Be ekkiti haa Mallum Abdullaahi.  
On ekkiti haa Mallum Abdullaahi.  
'Bi'b'be amin ekkiti haa  
Mallum Abdullaahi.  
'Bi'b'be wuro ekkiti haa  
Mallum Abdullaahi.  
Usumaanu e soobaajo maako ekkiti  
haa Mallum Abdullaahi.

Mallum Abdullaahi ekkitini yam.  
Mallum Abdullaahi ekkitini 'be.  
Mallum Abdullaahi ekkitini on.  
Mallum Abdullaahi ekkitini 'bi'b'be amin.  
Mallum Abdullaahi ekkitini 'bi'b'be wuro.  
Mallum Abdullaahi ekkitini Usumaanu  
e soobaajo maako.

### Exercise 9 Additional Vocabulary

nde: *when*  
sa'i nde: *the hour that*  
wakkati nde: *the time that*  
juulugo: *to say the Muslim prayers*

In referring to past time, when in Fulfulde is either *nde*, *sa'i nde* or *wakkati nde*.

Nde mi juuli, mi 'daani.  
Sa'i nde mi juuli, mi 'daani.  
Wakkati nde mi juuli, mi 'daani.

*When I had prayed, I slept.*

Exercise 10 Substitution drill

sa'i nde  
wakkati nde  
mi hooti, mi nyaami  
nde  
sa'i nde  
'di yari, 'di warti  
nde  
wakkati nde  
mi juuli, mi 'daani  
sa'i nde  
nde

Nde mi juuli, mi 'daani.  
Sa'i nde mi juuli, mi 'daani.  
Wakkati nde mi juuli, mi 'daani.  
Wakkati nde mi hooti, mi nyaami.  
Nde mi hooti, mi nyaami.  
Sa'i nde mi hooti, mi nyaami.  
Sa'i nde 'di yari, 'di warti.  
Nde 'di yari, 'di warti.  
Wakkati nde 'di yari, 'di warti.  
Wakkati nde mi juuli, mi 'daani.  
Sa'i nde mi juuli, mi 'daani.  
Nde mi juuli, mi 'daani.

In the following exercises, the first sentence is transformed into another sentence using either *nde*, *sa'i nde* or *wakkati nde*.

Exercise 11 For these sentences, use *nde*.

Mi yehi. Nden mi jangi.  
O hooti. Nden o nyaami nyiiri.  
Min ummi. Nden min yehi ngesa.  
Mi yehi Kano. Nden mi jangi.

Nde mi yehi, mi jangi.  
Nde o hooti, o nyaami nyiiri.  
Nde min ummi, min yehi ngesa.  
Nde mi yehi Kano, mi jangi.

Exercise 12 For these sentences, use *sa'i nde*.

'Be timmini kuugal. Nden 'be hooti.  
Mi juuli. Nden mi 'daani.  
'Di yari ndiyam. Nden 'di warti.  
O yani. Nden mi walli mo.

Sa'i nde 'be timmini kuugal 'be hooti.  
Sa'i nde mi juuli, mi 'daani.  
Sa'i nde 'di yari ndiyam, 'di warti.  
Sa'i nde o yani, mi walli mo.

Exercise 13 -For these sentences, use *wakkati nde*.

O ekkitini mo. Nden o dilli.  
O andini yam. Nden mi yehi.  
'Be timmini haala. Nden 'be dilli.  
'Be juuli. Nden 'be nastini daage.

Wakkati nde o ekkitini mo, o dilli.  
Wakkati nde o andini yam, mi yehi.  
Wakkati nde 'be timmini haala, 'be dilli.  
Wakkati nde 'be juuli, 'be nastini daage.

## Adjectives: *good*

The Fulfulde adjective for *good* is derived from the verb *woo'dugo*: *to be good, nice, attractive, fine* cf. *woo'di*.

### Exercise 14

Noun class	<i>Good</i>
nde	woonnde
ngal	boonngal
nge	woonnge
ndu	woonndu
ngu	boonngu
ko	boo'dko

### Exercise 15 Substitution drill

jaawngal	O he'bi deftere woonnde.
nagge	O he'bi jaawngal boonngal.
sawru	O he'bi nagge woonnge.
mbulku	O he'bi sawru woonndu.
hottollo	O he'bi mbulku boonngu.
deftere	O he'bi hottollo boo'dko.
	O he'bi deftere woonnde.

In the following exercise, two sentences are combined into one using the adjective derived from *woo'dugo*.

### Exercise 16

Mi yi'di fayande nde, ngam nde woo'di.	Mi yi'di fayande woonde nde.
Mi yi'di jaawngal ngal, ngam ngal woo'di.	Mi yi'di jaawngal boonngal ngal.
Mi yi'di akootiru ndu, ngam ndu woo'di.	Mi yi'di akootiru woonndu ndu.
Mi yi'di hu'do ko, ngam ko woo'di.	Mi yi'di hu'do boo'dko ko.
Mi yi'di liingu ngu, ngam ngu woo'di.	Mi yi'di liingu boonngu ngu.
Mi yi'di nagge nge, ngam nge woo'di.	Mi yi'di nagge woonnge nge.

### Exercise 17

Noun class	<i>Good</i>
'dam	boo'd'dam
ka	boo'dka
nga	boonnga
ngo	woonngo
ngol	boonngol
ndi	mboonndi

Exercise 18 Substitution drill

ngesa	O mari kosam boo'd'dam.
moota	O mari ngesa boo'dka.
daago	O mari moota boonnga.
buulol	O mari daago woonngo.
njamdi	O mari buulol boonngol.
kosam	O mari njamdi mboonndi.
	O mari kosam boo'd'dam.

Exercise 19 Combined sentences

Mi yi'di tebur nga, ngam nga woo'di.	Mi yi'di tebur boonnga nga.
Mi yi'di wuro ngo, ngam ngo woo'di.	Mi yi'di wuro woonngo ngo.
Mi yi'di bindirgol ngol, ngam ngol woo'di.	Mi yi'di bindirgol boonngol ngol.
Mi yi'di haala ka, ngam ka woo'di.	Mi yi'di haala boo'dka ka.
Mi yi'di leddi ndi, ngam ndi woo'di.	Mi yi'di leddi mboonndi ndi.
Mi yi'di nyebbam 'dam ngam 'dam woo'di.	Mi yi'di nyebbam boo'd'dam 'dam.

Exercise 20

Noun class	Good
ki	boo'dki
ngel	boonngel
koy	mboo'dkoy
'de	boo'd'de
'di	boo'd'di
o	boo'd'do
'be	woo'd'be

Exercise 21 Substitution drill

baalel	Mi woodi lekki boo'dki.
mbaaloy	Mi woodi baalel boonngel.
luube	Mi woodi mbaaloy mboo'dkoy.
laabi	Mi woodi luube boo'd'de.
gorko	Mi woodi laabi boo'd'di.
bandiraa'be	Mi woodi gorko boo'd'do.
lekki	Mi woodi bandiraa'be woo'd'be.
	Mi woodi lekki boo'dki.

Exercise 22 Combined sentences

Mi yi'di yim'be 'be, ngam 'be woo'di.  
Mi yi'di 'bikkoy koy, ngam 'be woo'di.  
Mi yi'di colli 'di, ngam 'di woo'di.  
Mi yi'di gure 'de, ngam 'de woo'di.  
Mi yi'di lekki ki, ngam ki woo'di.  
Mi yi'di pella ngel, ngam ngel woo'di.  
Mi yi'di mallumjo o, ngam o woo'di.

Mi yi'di yim'be woo'd'be 'be.  
Mi yi'di 'bikkoy mboo'dkoy koy.  
Mi yi'di colli boo'd'di 'di.  
Mi yi'di gure boo'd'de 'de.  
Mi yi'di lekki boo'd'ki ki.  
Mi yi'di pella boonngel ngel.  
Mi yi'di mallumjo boo'd'do o.

**Jangde timmunde**

Keenya Buuba neli Usumaanu haa luumo.  
O neli mo o soodana mo asaana.  
O neli mo o soodana mo gooro kadi. Nde o yehi luumo Usumaanu soodani baaba maako asaana bee goorooje fuh.  
Nden Usumaanu hooti waddani baaba asaana bee goorooje boo'd'de.  
Buuba ja'bi 'de, yetti mo. Nden o nastini kuuje 'de haa nder suudu.

Heesikeenya Buuba 'don haa laawol. Nden o yiidi e Hawsaajo feere bee dabbaaji maako fuh. 'Be wolwi se'd'da haa laawol, ndaa ko 'be wi'i:

Salaamu aleykum.  
Aleyka salaamu.  
A nyalli jam?  
Jam koo'dume.  
Noy comri?  
Jam tawon.  
Dabbaaji noy a mari?  
Mi woo'di nagge woote bee mbaala ngoota bee 'boosaaru wooru tan.  
Amma a woo'di nagge mannge koo?  
Ooho, nge mannge. Amma mbaala mannga nga naa nga am. An a mari gertogal boonngal ngal naa?  
Aa'a. Naa ngal am.  
Ngal moy?  
Ngal Muusa, fuh bee mbeewa boonnga 'do.  
Too. Boo'd'dum. Mi nani.  
Min, mi hooti jooni. Hofnu debbo maa bee saare maa fuh. Yawwa, 'be nanan.  
Sey yeeso kadi.  
Sey yeeso.



## FINAL READING

Jooni on jangi deftere nde. On yi'i habaruuji feere feere haa nder maare. On fu'd'di ekkitugo Fulfulde. On jangi habaruuji Buuba Bello bee bandiraa'be maako bee esiraa'be maako bee sooba'en maako. On andi wuro ngo 'be joo'data bee ko 'be huuwata haa maango. Maw'be reman gese ma'b'be, dura dabbaaji ma'b'be. 'Bikkoy wallan maw'be kuugal, amma kadi 'be 'don yaha jangirde haa wuro 'be ekkita jangugo bee windugo. Innde mallumjo ma'b'be Mallum Abdullaahi. Rew'be huuwan haa saare, kuugal defugo. Amma naa defugo tan. 'Be 'don motta, 'be 'don una, 'be 'don wuuwa saare. Kay! Kuu'de ma'b'be feere feere 'duu'di masin.

Yim'be wuro finan fajiri cup. Nde 'be hasiti, 'be fuh 'be dilla haa gese maa boo bal'de. Amma nyande luumo 'be yahataa. Nyande nde 'be nyaamata luumo, 'be 'don yiida bee sooba'en ma'b'be. Haa luumo 'be nanata habaruuji leddi fuh. Luumo Pariya ngo manngo. Yim'be 'duu'd'be warata diga leddi Adamaawa.

Amma, nde asira wa'di, yim'be wuro hootata. Nde jemma wa'di, 'be nyaama nyiiri, 'be siwta, 'be 'don wolwa. Rew'be 'don yecca 'bikkoy taali.\* Nden 'be juulata, 'be nasta cuu'di, 'be 'daana. Sey fajiri kadi.

Nonnon yim'be wuro ngo wa'data. Onon boo, on nani habaru ma'b'be. Ndikka on wara, on yi'a bee giite moo'don Hawsa'en wi'ata "Yi'ugo 'buri nanugo." Sey on wara haa leddi Adamaawa. Ja'b'baama. Haala ka timmi. Sey to on wari.

\*taalol (ngol), taali ('di): *story, tale, oral narrative*



## Appendix A: The Fulfulde Noun Class System

It is usually possible, when you hear a noun, to guess its class; but not always. Here is some guidance.

- 1) If it ends in -a, then it is either nga or ka. Nga is usually big things, such as nyiiwa: *elephant*, or ngelooba: *camel*, or mootaa: *car*; also a number of animals that are not necessarily large, e.g. mbeewa and mbaala. Nga class words also often begin with n or m. Ka is rarer and not often used for living things. It includes haala: *word, speech, utterance*; ngesa: *farm*; and gewta: *conversation*.
- 2) If it ends in -e and is not either *fire*, *sun*, or one of the many words for a bovine (in which case it is nge, e.g. wiige: *heifer*, fadale: *cow with white tail*), then it must be nde, a very big class. Unless of course it is a plural, in which case it is 'de, if non-human; 'be, if human.
- 3) If it ends in -i, if it is plural, it is of course 'di class. If singular, it is either ki or ndi. Ki tends to be limited to trees (and medicine, which comes from trees). Ndi class includes grains, e.g. ya'diiri, gawri, mbayeeri.
- 4) If it ends in -o, if it is human, it must be o class. If non-human, it must be either ngo (which includes, among others, a number of body parts, jungo: *hand*, baawo: *back*) or ko. Ko class includes only a few common words, such as hottollo: *cotton*, hunduko: *mouth*, hu'do: *grass (useful)*, and haako: *leaf*. So the chances are it is ngo class, if non-human. There is another ko class, the plural of nga, when used to mean a *big one*, e.g. daadawa: *big mother*, daadaho: *big mothers*.
- 5) If it ends in -u, it is either ndu or ngu. Perhaps this is the hardest one to guess. If it is ndu class, it will usually end in -du or -ru; if it is ngu class, it will have some consonant other than d or r before the u: e.g. puccu, ngabbu, mbuubu: *fly*, mbe'du: *pot cover (like a round table mat)*. Note, this last has 'd, which is different from d. Ngu includes a number of abstracts, e.g. laamu: *kingship*; mallumku: *being a teacher, scholarship*; Pulaaku: *Fulbe code of behavior*.
- 6) If it ends in -am, then it is 'dam class and probably a liquid.
- 7) If it ends in -el, then it is ngel class and likely to be a diminutive. But note e.g. pelle: *place*.
- 8) If it ends in -al, it is almost certainly ngal class, but there is a special kal class, used to mean a small quantity of anything, e.g. kottollal: *a small amount of cotton*.

9) If it ends in -ol, it is almost certainly ngol class. There is, however, a kol class which is said to contain only one noun - nyalahol: *female calf*. Even more restricted, in fact, than the other class for bovines, nge.

10) If it ends in -oy (-on in some dialects), then it is plural and used for nouns in the ngel class.

11) A word ending in -en is a human plural belonging to a sub-class of 'be.

12) A word ending in -um (e.g. boo'd'dum: *good*) is not usually a noun but a derivative from a verb or adjective root, and therefore outside the noun class system. However, there is a rarely used ngum class, which has a pejorative meaning, so pukarayum (from pukaraajo: *student*) means *nasty little student*, and if we wish to refer to one — and surely we never will — we would use ngum.

Lastly, there are a number of words which at first sight don't fit. These are mostly words borrowed into Fulfulde from other languages, which have two forms: a) the original, e.g. kobo - which does not look like nde class and b) an adapted form, e.g. koboore - which marks it for nde class. Either form can be used, but often the original form is more common. Furthermore, Fulbe may disagree over the class in which they put such a word, or indeed use several.

If the word already has a suitable ending, it may go straight into a class without adaptation. So mootaa entered nga class when borrowed. Here is a list for those of such words as we have met, with two forms, the class markers and the plural:

aji (nga)	ajiwa (nga)	ajiji ('di)
asaana (ka)	asaanawa (nga)	asaanaaji ('di)
baskur (nga)	baskurwa (nga)	baskurji ('di)
footo (nga)	footowa (nga)	footooji ('di)
gooro (nde)	gooroore (nde)	goorooje ('de)
kanti (nga)	kantiwa (nga)	kantiji ('di)
kondong (nde)	kondongre (nde)	kondongji ('di)
kobo (nde)	koboore (nde)	kobooje ('de)
koloba (ndu)	kolobaaru (ndu)	kolobaaaji ('di)
mangoro (nde)	mangoroore (nde)	mangorooje ('de)
mootaa (nga)	mootawa (nga)	mootaaji ('di)
suley (nde)	suleere (nde)	suleeje ('de)
taaga (nga)	taagawa (nga)	taagaaji ('di)
tebur (nga)	teburwa (nga)	teburji ('di)
tumaatir (nde)	tumaatiire (nde)	tumaatirji ('de)
wakkati (nde)	wakkatiire (nde)	wakkattiji ('di)

## Appendix B: Aspects of Fulfulde Concord

Noun Class	Possessive Pronoun	Emphatic Pronoun	One
nde	maare	kayre	woore
ngal	maangal	kangal	gootal
nge	maange	kange	woote
ngu	maangu	kangu	ngootu
ndu	maaru	kayru	wooru
ko	maako	kanko	—
'dam	maajam	kanjam	—
ka	maaka	kanka	ngoota
nga	maanga	kanga	ngoota
ngo	maango	kango	wooto
ngol	maangol	kangol	gootol
ndi	maari	kayri	ngooti
ki	maaki	kanki	ngooti
ngel	maangel	kangel	gootel
koy	maakoy	kankoy	—
'de	maaje	kanje	—
'di	maaji	kanji	—
o	maako	kanko	gooto
'be	ma'b'be	kam'be	—

Noun Class	This, these	Which?	That
nde	nde, nde'e, ndee	ndeye	ndeya
ngal	ngal, nga'al, ngaal	ngale	ngala
nge	nge, nge'e, ngee	ngeye	ngeya
ngu	ngu, ngu'u, nguu	nguye	nguya
ndu	ndu, ndu'u, nduu	nduye	nduya
ko	ko, ko'o, koo	koye	koya
'dam	'dam, 'da'am, 'daam	'dame	'dama
ka	ka, ka'a, kaa	kaye	kaya
nga	nga, nga'a, ngaa	ngaye	ngaya
ngo	ngo, ngo'o, ngoo	ngoye	ngoya
ngol	ngol, ngo'ol, ngool	ngole	ngola
ndi	ndi, ndi'i, ndii	ndiye	ndiya
ki	ki, ki'i, kii	kiye	kiya
ngel	ngel, nge'el, ngeel	ngele	ngela
koy	koy, ko'oy, kooy	koye	koya
'de	'de, 'de'e, 'dee	'deye	'deya
'di	'di, 'di'i, 'dii	'diye	'diya
o	o, o'o, oo	moye	oya
'be	'be, 'be'e, 'bee	'beye	'beya

Noun Class	Small	Big	Many, much
'nde	famarde	mawnde	—
ngal	pamaral	manngal	'duungal
nge	famare	mannge	—
ngu	pamaru	manngu	—
ndu	famardu	mawndu	—
ko	pamaro	makko	duu'dko
'dam	—	—	'duu'dam
ka	pamara	makka	'duu'dka
nga	pamara	mannga	—
ngo	famaro	manngo	—
ngol	pamarol	manngol	'duungol
ndi	pamardi	mawndi	'duundi
ki	pamari	makki	—
ngel	pamarel	manngel	—
koy	pamaroy	makkoy	duu'dkoy
'de	pamar'de	maw'de	'duu'd'de
'di	pamar'di	maw'di	'duu'd'di
o	pamaro	maw'do	—
'be	famar'be	maw'be	'duu'd'be

Noun Class	Good	Black
nde	woonnde	'baleere
ngal	boonngal	'baleewal
nge	woonnge	'baleeye
ngu	boonngu*	'baleewu
ndu	woonndu	'baleeru
ko	boo'dko *	'baleho
'dam	boo'd'dam *	'baleejam
ka	boo'dka *	'baleha
nga	boonnga *	'baleewa
ngo	woonngo	'baleewo
ngol	boonngol	'baleewol
ndi	mboonndi	'baleeri
ki	boo'dki	'baleehi
ngel	boonngel	'baleyel
koy	mboo'dkoy	'balehoy
'de	boo'd'de	'baleeje
'de	boo'd'di	'baleeji
o	'boo'd'do	'baleejo
'be	woo'd'dbe	'balee'be

\*These forms also occur with a prenasalised consonant: mboongu, mboo'dko, mboo'd'dam, mboo'dka, mboonga.

## Appendix C: Initial Consonant Alternation

In most dialects of Fulfulde, some initial consonants of words alternate so that one rather than another will occur according to grammatical context. Here are the consonants involved, each with its alternate:

f	alternates with	p
h /	alternates with	k
s	alternates with	c
w	alternates with	b or g
y	alternates with	g or j
r or l	alternates with	d

In addition, in certain contexts:

b	alternates with	mb
g	alternates with	ng
j	alternates with	nj
d	alternates with	nd

### OTHER INITIAL CONSONANTS DO NOT ALTERNATE

One of the most common places where these changes occur is between verbs with singular subjects (*he is reading*) and plural subjects (*they are reading*). However, younger speakers in Adamawa now tend to no longer make this particular change. This is also true of Cameroun. Here are some examples.

<i>he is playing</i>	o 'don fija
<i>they are playing</i>	'be 'don fija (Adamawa)
	'be don pija (elsewhere)
<i>he is working</i>	o 'don huuwa
<i>they are working</i>	'be 'don huuwa (Adamawa)
	'be 'don kuuwa (elsewhere)
<i>he is resting</i>	o 'don siwta
<i>they are resting</i>	'be 'don siwta (Adamawa)
	'be 'don ciwta (elsewhere)
<i>he is writing</i>	o 'don winda
<i>they are writing</i>	'be 'don winda (Adamawa)
	'be 'don mbinda (elsewhere)
<i>he is doing</i>	o 'don wa'da
<i>they are doing</i>	'be 'don wa'da (Adamawa)
	'be 'don nga'da (elsewhere)

<i>he is going</i>	o 'don yaha
<i>they are going</i>	'be 'don yaha (Adamawa)
	'be 'don njaha (elsewhere)
<i>he is chatting</i>	o 'don yewta
<i>they are chatting</i>	'be 'don yewta (Adamawa)
	'be 'don ngewta (elsewhere)
<i>he is looking</i>	o 'don laara
<i>they are looking</i>	'be 'don laara (Adamawa)
	'be 'don ndaara (elsewhere)

In Adamawa, as well as in other dialects, initial consonant alternation does occur when the noun changes from singular to plural, for example: gorko: *man*, wor'be: *men*; pukaraajo: *student*, fukaraa'be: *students*; and when a noun is derived from a verb, for example: yahugo: *to go* and jahangal: *journey*; yi'dugo: *to like* and gi'dal: *liking, love*; windugo: *to write* and bindirgol: *pen*.

Initial consonant change for plural nouns is taught in Lessons 17, 18 and 19. The remainder of this Appendix gives examples only of initial consonant changes for verb plurals. The vocabulary and constructions used are taken from the textbook.

The following table will give you some guidance in determining the initial consonant alternation for verbs.

Verb roots beginning with	d	change to	nd	in the plural,
	f		p	
	h		k	
	j		nj	
	s		c	
	w		mb or ng	
	y		ng or nj	
	r		nd (rare)	
	l		nd (rare)	

#### OTHER INITIAL CONSONANTS DO NOT CHANGE.

However, as with the nouns whose initial consonants alternate, there will be exceptions, and you may already have wondered how to tell if w will change to mb or ng or if y will change to ng or nj. Again the solution is simple. Learn the plural form of a verb whose initial consonant changes when you first meet it.



## Singular

O 'don defa.  
 O 'don fiya.  
 O 'don huuwa.  
 O 'don siwta.  
 O 'don janga.  
 O 'don winda.  
 O 'don wara.  
 O 'don yecca.  
 O 'don yara.  
 O 'don resa.  
 O 'don laara.

## Plural

'Be 'don ndefa.  
 'Be 'don pija.  
 'Be 'don kuuwa.  
 'Be 'don ciwta.  
 'Be 'don njanga.  
 'Be 'don mbinda.  
 'Be 'don ngara.  
 'Be 'don ngecca.  
 'Be 'don njara.  
 'Be 'don ndesa.  
 'Be 'don ndaara.

The following examples include some verbs whose initial consonant does not alternate.

## Singular

'Dume Zeynabu wa'data?  
 Zeynabu 'don defa.  
  
 'Dume Aa'i mottata?  
 Aa'i 'don motta hottollo.  
  
 Ndey Alim yahata jangirde?  
  
 Buuba 'don nyaama luumo  
 nyande Alat.  
  
 Keenya Zeynabu uni gawri.  
  
 O 'don sooda ngapaleewol.  
 O 'don laara puccu.  
 Sutura 'don wuuwa saare.  
 Usumaanu 'don yara ndiyam.

## Plural

'Dume Zeynabu bee Aa'i nga'data?  
 Zeynabu bee Aa'i 'don ndefa.  
  
 'Dume Aa'i e Zeynabu mottata?  
 Aa'i e Zeynabu 'don motta hottollo.  
  
 Ndey Alim e Usumaanu njahata jangirde?  
  
 Buuba e Saalihi 'don nyaama  
 luumo nyande Alat.  
  
 Keenya Zeynabu bee Sutura uni gawri.  
  
 'Be 'don cooda ngol.  
 'Be 'don ndaara ngu.  
 Sutura e Zeynabu 'don mbuuwa nde.  
 Usumaanu e Adamu 'don njará 'dam.

A fini jam?

Jam koo'dume.

Yim'be saare fuh 'don 'do naa? Zeynabu 'don defa hande naa?

Aa'a. Yim'be fuh walaa 'do. Zeynabu defataa fajiri sey nyande Alhamiisa. O 'don yaha luumo jonta. Zeynabu bee Sutura bee Aa'i fuh 'don njaha luumo haa Pariya.

Buuba 'don ton haa ngesa. O 'don huuwa. Buuba bee Saalihi 'don kuuwa hande haa ngesa ton.

Usumaanu boo 'don yaha jangirde.

Too. Useko, mi nani.

Use.

Useko.

Sannu.

Sannu

Salaamu aleykum.

Aleyka salaamu.

A waali jam?

Jam koo'dume.

Toy yim'be saare Abdullaahi?

Ndaa yim'be saare Abdullaahi fuh.

'Dume 'be nga'data hande?

Hande 'be 'don njanga.

Ndey Abdullaahi yahata juulirde?

O 'don yaha juulirde nyande Jum'baare.

Too. Moy yahata juulirde nyande Jum'baare kadi?

Yim'be Pariya fuh 'don njaha juulirde nyande Jum'baare. 'Be fuh 'be 'don njaha.

Too. Boo'd'dum. Useko.

Salaamu aleykum.

Aleyka salaamu.

A nyalli jam?

Jam koo'dume.

Yim'be saare Buuba fuh 'don 'do jooni.

Toy Buuba?

Ndaa Buuba ton.

'Dume o wa'data?

Buuba bee Usumaanu 'don nga'da tebur.

Too. Zeynabu bee Sutura 'don 'do kadi naa?

Ooho. Ndaa Zeynabu bee Sutura. 'Be 'don una. Aa'i boo 'don defa nyamdu hande. Abdullaahi 'don 'do haa saare Buuba jonta. O 'don siwta. Abdullaahi bee nayeejo

bee ko'do Buuba fuh 'don ciwta! 'Be comi.

Too. Noy innde nayeejo man?

'Dum Bello. Bello 'dum baaba Buuba.

Too, mi nani. Noy innde ko'do man kadi?

'Dum Muusa. Muusa 'dum Hawsaajo.

Too.

'Dume 'do? 'Dum fayande on.

Too. 'Dum, 'dum ha'b'bere naa?

Aa'a, naa 'dum ha'b'bere, 'dum hottollo. Zeynabu bee Sutura 'don motta hottollo kiikii'de.

Too. Boo'd'dum. Mi nani.

Saalaamu aleykum.

Aleyka salaamu.

A fini jam?

Jam tawon.

A waali jam?

Ndaa yim'be Pariya. 'Be 'don nyaama luumo hande fajiri. Sutura e Aa'i 'don ndaara nyamdu. Yim'be ladde boo nyaamataa luumo hande. 'Be nyaamataa luumo sey nyande Salaasa. Yim'be wuro 'don ngara haa luumo hande. 'Be 'don ndaara nyamdu fuh.

Sannu.

Sannu.

A nyalli jam?

Jam tawon.

Toy Buuba jonta? Buuba 'don 'do haa saare. Buuba bee Saalihi 'don ndesa hottollo bee ha'b'bere haa nder suudu.

Too, Usumaanu boo 'don wa'da 'dume? O 'don yaha luumo. Aa'a, Usumaanu bee Alim njahataa luumo tawon. 'Be 'don njaha jangirde, 'be ngarataa luumo sey kiiki'de Jooni, be 'don njanga, 'be 'don mbinda 'be 'don ekkita fuh.

Ja'b'baama.

Mi ja'bi.

Use e warugo.

Jam tawon.

Sutura bee Zeynabu 'don 'do naa?

Ooho, 'be 'don 'do haa saare. 'Be fuh 'be 'don kuuwa; 'be ciwtataa sey caka naange.

'Be 'don una, 'be 'don ndefa, 'be 'don mbuuwa fajiri fuh.

Too, useko, mi nani.

## Appendix D: Inverted Subject Pronouns

Although the practice is now relatively rare in Adamawa, some speakers of Fulfulde place subject pronouns after rather than before the verb in certain situations.

Mi, a, on and en are the pronouns which may be inverted and it is important to note that the verb undergoes phonological changes in the inversion process.

The inverted forms are used when:

- 1) the sentence begins with a question word like moy, noy, toy, diga toy, ko, 'dume, ndey, ngam 'dume;

Mi 'don wa'da tebur.            *I am making a table.*  
Ko nga'da-t-aa?            *What are you making?*

- 2) the verb is part of a relative clause;

Mi waddi gawri.            *I brought the millet.*  
Gawri ndi ngaddu'daa jinni.            *The millet which you brought is finished.*

- 3) the normal word order is changed for emphasis;

Keenya mi yi'i Buuba.            *Yesterday, I saw Buba.*  
'Dum Buuba ngii'du-mi.            *It was Buba I saw yesterday.*

### Inverted Form: Continuous and Future-Habitual

The same inverted form is used for both the Continuous and the Future-Habitual. Here are the rules.

- a) in verbs susceptible to initial consonant change, the plural form is used for both singular and plural;

Toy njahataa?

- b) the -a suffix is used with mi, a and on;  
for en, the -a changes to -e;

Toy njaha-ta-mi?  
Toy njahē-t-en?

- c) -ta- is inserted before mi; -t- is inserted before a, on and en;

Toy njaha-ta-mi?  
Toy njaha-t-on?

d) the pronoun a is lengthened and pronounced aa.

Toy njaha-t-aa?

Mi 'don yaha luumo.  
Toy njaha-ta-mi?

*I am going to the market.  
Where am I going?*

Continuous (statement)

Inverted Form (question)

Mi 'don yaha luumo.  
A 'don yaha luumo.  
On 'don njaha luumo.  
En 'don njaha luumo.

Toy njaha-ta-mi?  
Toy njaha-t-aa?  
Toy njaha-t-on?  
Toy njaha-t-en?

Mi 'don yaara gooro.  
A 'don yaara gooro.  
On 'don njaara gooro.  
En 'don njaara gooro.

Ko njaara-ta-mi?  
Ko njaara-t-aa?  
Ko njaara-t-on?  
Ko njaara-t-en?

Mi 'don wolwa nonnon.  
A 'don wolwa nonnon.  
On 'don mbolwa nonnon.  
En 'don mbolwa nonnon.

Ngam 'dume mbolwa-ta-mi nonnon?  
Ngam 'dume mbolwa-t-aa nonnon?  
Ngam 'dume mbolwa-t-on nonnon?  
Ngam 'dume mbolwa-t-en nonnon?

Future Habitual

Inverted Form

Mi nastan aji maw'be jango.  
A nastan aji maw'be jango.  
On nastan aji maw'be jango.  
En nastan aji maw'be jango.

Ndey nasta-ta-mi aji maw'be?  
Ndey nasta-t-aa aji maw'be?  
Ndey nasta-t-on aji maw'be?  
Ndey nasta-t-en aji maw'be?

Mi yottay Jaalingo.  
A yottay Jaalingo.  
On yottay Jaalingo.  
En yottay Jaalingo.

Haa toy njotta-ta-mi?  
Haa toy njotta-t-aa?  
Haa toy njotta-t-on?  
Haa toy njotta-t-en?

**Inverted Form: Completed**

a) in verbs susceptible to initial consonant change, the plural form is used for both singular and plural;

'Dume ngaddu-mi?

- b) for most verbs the Completed form, -i, changes to -u; notable exceptions to this rule are wi'ugo and yi'ugo which retain the -i form for the inverted and lose the glottal stop;

'Dume ngaddu-mi?  
Ko mbii-mi?

- c) a 'd is inserted before a, on and en;

'Dume ngaddu-'d-on?

- d) the pronoun a is lengthened and pronounced aa;

'Dume ngaddu-'d-aa.

The following contains statements followed by their corresponding questions.

Mi waddi gawri.  
A waddi gawri.  
On ngaddi gawri.  
En ngaddi gawri.

'Dume ngaddu-mi?  
'Dume ngaddu-'d-aa?  
'Dume ngaddu-'d-on?  
'Dume ngaddu-'d-en?

Mi wi'i nonnon.  
A wi'i nonnon.  
On mbi'i nonnon.  
En mbi'i nonnon.

Ko mbii-mi?  
Ko mbii-'d-aa?  
Ko mbii-'d-on?  
Ko mbii-'d-en?

Mi soodi bee'i 'di'di.  
A soodi bee'i 'di'di.  
On coodi bee'i 'di'di.  
En coodi bee'i 'di'di.

Noy coodu-mi?  
Noy coodu-'d-aa?  
Noy coodu-'d-on?  
Noy coodu-'d-en?

Mi wari diga Giirey.  
A wari diga Giirey.  
On ngari diga Giirey.  
En ngari diga Giirey.

Diga toy ngaru-mi?  
Diga toy ngaru-'d-aa?  
Diga toy ngaru-'d-on?  
Diga toy ngaru-'d-en?

Mi yi'i saare maako.  
A yi'i saare maako.  
On ngi'i saare maako.  
En ngi'i saare maako.

'Dume ngii-mi?  
'Dume ngii-'d-aa?  
'Dume ngii-'d-on?  
'Dume ngii-'d-en?

The statement: regular form

A 'don yaha luumo.  
A yaha luumo.  
A yahan luumo.  
A yahata luumo.  
Mi 'don wadda gertoo'de.  
On 'don ngadda jowi.  
En 'don nga'd'da cappan'de tati.  
Mi wari diga luumo.  
A wari diga jangirde.  
On ngari diga Giirey.  
En ngari diga lesdi Kamerun.

The question: inverted form

Toy njaha-t-aa?  
Toy njaha-t-aa?  
Toy njaha-t-aa?  
Toy njaha-t-aa?  
Ko ngadda-ta-mi?  
Noy ngadda-t-on?  
Noy ngadda-t-en?  
Diga toy ngaru-mi?  
Diga toy ngaru-'d-aa?  
Diga toy ngaru-'d-on?  
Diga toy ngaru-'d-en?

Question

Diga toy ngaru-'d-aa?  
Noy ngadda-t-on?  
Toy njaha-t-aa?  
Haa toy njottu-'d-aa?  
Moy ngii-'d-on?  
Ko mbii-'d-aa?  
Ndey ngarta-t-on?

Answer

Mi wari diga Giirey.  
Min 'don ngadda joweego.  
Mi 'don yaha juulirde.  
Mi yotti haa Jaalingo.  
Min ngi'i debbo maako.  
Mi wi'i nonnon.  
Min ngartan asaweere warande.

Here are some examples of inverted subject pronouns used in relative clauses.

Gawri ndi ngaddu-'d-aa jinni.  
Ngapaleewol ngol coodu-mi woo'daay.  
Mi andaa ko mbii-'d-aa.  
Hokkam ko njaaru-'d-on keenya.  
Walaa ko mbii-'d-en sey manoore.  
Nge coodu-mi buri nge coodu-'d-aa.

And here are some examples of inverted subject pronouns used in a sentence with a focused object or subject.

'Dum Buuba ngii-du-mi keenya.  
Mi wi'i gawri coodu-mi.  
Enen ngaru-'d-en diga 'Yoola.  
Pucci corre-t-en.  
Hottollo cooda-t-aa.

### Inverted Form: Subjunctive

a) in verbs susceptible to initial consonant change, the plural form is used for both singular and plural;

Ndikka ndill-aa.

b) for *mi* the pronoun is added to the Subjunctive *-a* form;

Ndikka ndilla-mi.

c) for *a*, *on*, and *en*, the Subjunctive *-a* ending is omitted;

Ndikka ndill-aa.

Ndikka ndill-on.

Ndikka ndill-en.

d) the pronoun *a* is lengthened to *aa*;

Ndikka ndill-aa.

Unlike the case for the Continuous, Future-Habitual and Completed inverted forms, there are no special circumstances governing the use of the Subjunctive inverted form. Inversion simply provides an alternate way to use the Subjunctive.

Ndikka *mi dilla*.  
Ndikka *a dilla*.  
Ndikka *on ndilla*.  
Ndikka *en ndilla*.

Ndikka ndilla-mi.  
Ndikka ndill-aa.  
Ndikka ndill-on.  
Ndikka ndill-en.

Sey *mi 'yama mo*.  
Sey *a holla mo*.  
Sey *on njoo'da*.  
Sey *en yecca 'be*.

Sey 'yama-mi mo.  
Sey kollaa-mo.  
Sey njoo'd-on.  
Sey ngecc-en 'be.

Structures such as *en njaha* (*let us go*) are very often expressed in the inverted form: *njahren*.

En *njaha*.  
En *ndilla*.  
En *umma*.  
En *njoo'da*.  
En *pu'd'da*

Njahren.  
Ndillen.  
Ummen.  
Njoo'den.  
Pu'd'den.



## Appendix E: Formulaic Expressions

Use.	a word derived from the verb <i>usugo</i> : to <i>express appreciation</i>
Useko.	used as a response to use; useko by itself often means <i>thank you</i>
Use maa.	a greeting to one person
Use maa'da.	a greeting to one person
Sannu.	<i>Hello, hi.</i>
Sannu.	
Sannu maa.	a greeting to one person
Sannu maa'da.	a greeting to one person
Sannu mo'on.	a greeting to more than one person
Yawwa.	exclamations of pleasure or approval often
Maadalla.	used in response to a greeting
Ja'b'baama.	<i>Welcome.</i>
Ja'b'baama poy!	<i>(Much) Welcome.</i>
Mi ja'bi.	<i>I accept.</i>
A waali jam?	<i>Good morning. (Have you spent the night in health?)</i>
Jam.	<i>Yes, fine. (Health)</i>
Jam koo'dume.	<i>All is fine.</i>
Jam tawon.	<i>Fine for the moment.</i>
Jam ni tawon.	<i>Fine for the moment.</i>
A nyalli jam?	<i>Good afternoon. (Have you spent the morning in health)</i>
A hirti jam?	<i>Good evening. (Are you spending the evening in health?)</i>
Gaafara.	<i>Excuse me; excuse me, may I come in?; make way please!; I beg your pardon.</i>
Sannu e warugo.	<i>Greetings on your arrival.</i>
Use e warugo.	<i>Greetings on your arrival.</i>
Salaamu aleykum.	<i>Peace be with you.</i>
Aleyka salaamu.	<i>Peace be with you too.</i>
Yottu danki.	<i>Come on in. (Arrive at the shelter.)</i>
A wari naa?	<i>Have you arrived?</i>
A wari jam?	<i>Have you arrived well?</i>
Mi wari.	<i>I have (arrived).</i>

A warti naa?  
Mi warti.

*Have you returned?  
I have (returned).*

Noy saare?  
Noy saare moo'don?  
Saare fuh jam.

*How is the household?  
How is your (pl.) household?  
They (the household) are all well.*

Kay!  
A'a!  
Af!  
A!

*exclamations of surprise*

Too.  
Boo'd'dum.

*Okay, fine.  
Good, okay, fine.*

Sey yeeso.  
Sey jango.  
Sey nyande go.  
Sey wakkati feere.  
Siwtu jam.  
Waalu jam.  
Jippu jam.  
Wartu jam.  
Mi nani.  
Mi yetti.  
Mi nooti.

*See you soon. (Until soon.)  
See you tomorrow. (Until tomorrow.)  
Goodbye. (Until another day.)  
Goodbye. (Until another time.)  
Goodbye. (Rest well.)  
Sleep well.  
Stay well. (Remain here well.)  
Return well.  
I understand.  
I thank (you).  
I am going home.*

Allah hokku mo saa'a.  
Allah hokku maa jam.  
Allah hokku on jam.  
Jurum'dum!  
Allah hoynu.  
Aamiina.

*May God give him good luck.  
May Allah give you health.  
May Allah give you (and your family) health.  
I'm sorry to hear that. Very sorry.  
May Allah give ease.  
Amen.*

Wartu lawlaw.  
Sey to mi warti.  
Sey to a warti.  
Sey to mi lortoyi.  
Sey to a lortoyi.  
Goonga maa.

*Return quickly.  
See you when I return. (Until I return.)  
See you when you return. (Until you return.)  
See you when I return. (Until I return.)  
See you when you return. (Until you return.)  
You are right. (your truth)*



## GLOSSARY

### A

- a: second person singular subject pronoun: *you* (12)  
 a fini jam?: *Have you awakened in health?* (lit.) *Good morning.* (fig.) (12)  
 a hirti jam?: *Are you spending the evening well?* (lit.) *Good evening.* (fig.)  
     cf. *hirtugo* (10)  
 a jano?: *Are you well?* (31)  
 a nyalli jam?: *Have you spent the morning well?* (lit.) *Good afternoon.* (fig.) (7)  
 a waali jam?: *Have you spent the night well?,* (lit.) *How are you this morning?* (fig.) (6)  
 a wari jam?: *Have you arrived well?* (8)  
 a'a!: exclamation of surprise (20)  
 aa'a: *no* (3)  
 Aa'i: *Ai* (woman's name) (6)  
 aamiina: *amen* (19)  
 Abdullaahi: *Abdullahi* (man's name) (1)  
 accugo: *to leave, leave off, let go* (33)  
 Adamu: *Adamu* (man's name) (15)  
 Adamaawa: *Adamawa*, emirate founded by Modibbo Adama and his sons c. 1810 (5)  
 af!: exclamation of surprise (17)  
 agoogo or agoogowa (nga), agoogooji ('di): *watch, clock* (38)  
 aji or ajiwa (nga), ajiiji ('di): *class* (39)  
 akootiru (ndu), akootiiji ('di): *box* (9)  
 Alarba: *Wednesday* (10)  
 Alat: *Sunday* (10)  
 aleyka salaamu: *peace be with you* (9)  
 alhamdu lillaahi: *thanks be to Allah* (36)  
 Alhamiisa: *Thursday* (10)  
 Alim: *Alim* (man's name) (13)  
 Alkur'aana: *the Koran* (9)  
 Allah hokku on jam!: *May Allah give you peace!* (19)  
 alluha (ka): *board, slate* (20)  
 alluha makka: *blackboard* (20)  
 Altine: *Monday* (10)  
 -am: first person singular object pronoun: *me* cf. *yam* (24)  
 Amerikaaajo (o), Amerika'en ('be): *American person* (17)  
 amin: first person plural possessive pronoun (exclusive): *our* (26)  
 Amiinatu: *Aminatu* (woman's name) (32)  
 amma: *but* (12)  
 an: second person singular emphatic pronoun: *you, yourself* (19, 28)  
 andinugo: *inform, tell* (38)  
 andugo: *to know* (22)  
 asaana (nga): *matches* (23)  
 Asawe: *Saturday* (10)  
 asaweere (nde), asaweewe ('de): *week* (27)  
 asaweere 'do: *this week* (27)  
 asaweere saaliinde: *last week* (27)  
 asaweere warande: *next week* (36)  
 asee: *really* (expresses mild surprise) (10)  
 asira or asiriire (nde): *late afternoon, evening* (38)

Astawaa'bi: *Astawabi* (woman's name) (32)  
Awdu: *Audu* (man's name) (32)  
Azbinkeejo (o), Azbinko'en ('be): *Tuareg person* (17)

## B

baaba or baabiraawo (o), baabiraa'be ('be): *father* (2, 21)  
baalel (ngel), mbaaloy (koy): *lamb* (15)  
baalte (nde): *morning* (from 8 to 10) (10)  
Bakari: *Bakari* (man's name) (28)  
ballal (ngal): *help, assistance* (39)  
bandiraawo (o), bandiraa'be ('be): *blood relative* (32)  
baskur or baskurwa (nga), baskurji ('di): *bicycle* (31)  
bee: *and, with* (8)  
Bello: *Bello* (family name, man's name) (14)  
bindirgol (ngol), bindir'di ('di): *pencil* (23)  
boo: *as far, indeed* (11)  
boo'd'de ('de): *good ones* (37)  
boo'd'dum: *good, fine* (6)  
bukkaaruu (ndu), bukkaa'ji ('di): *beehive-shaped grass shelter* (36)  
Buuba: *Buba* (man's name) (1)  
buulol (ngol), buuli ('di): *blank sheet of paper* (35)  
buutugo: *to be inexpensive* (29)

## 'B

'baawo (ngo): *back* (20)  
'baawo: *in back of, behind, in the rear, after* (20)  
'baawo 'don: *after that, next* (41)  
'badugo: *to be near* (23)  
'balwugo: *to be black* (30)  
'bandu (ndu), 'balli ('di): *body, skin* (25)  
'bandu am sey jam: *I am fine.* (25)  
'be: *third person plural subject pronoun: they* (12)  
'be: *third person plural object pronoun: them* (24)  
'beddugo: *to increase* (35)  
'bernde (nde): *heart* (25)  
'bii or bi'd'do (o), 'bi'b'be ('be): *offspring, son, daughter* (1)  
'bingel (ngel), 'bikkoy (koy): *child* (1, 17)  
'bokki (ki), 'bo'd'de ('de): *baobab tree* (15)  
'boosaaru (ndu), boosa'aji ('di): *dog* (39)  
'burugo: *to surpass, exceed* (31)

## C

caka: *middle, mid, center, in the middle of* (18)  
caka naange (nge): *noon (mid-sun)* (10)  
canji ('di): *change (money)* (35)  
ceede ('de): *money* (24)  
coggu (ngu), cogguuji ('di): *bargaining, trading* (17)  
comri (ndi): *tiredness, fatigue* (10)

## D

- daa: a word used to indicate Fulfulde counterfactuals (40)  
 daada or daadiraawo (o), daadiraabe ('be): mother  
 daada saare: mistress of the household, senior wife, courtesy title of the senior wife (7)  
 daago (ngo), daage ('de): a mat of palm fiber (2, 18)  
 daande (nde): neck (25)  
 dammugal (ngal), dammu'de ('de): door, doorway (3)  
 danki (ki), dang'de ('de): shelter (16)  
 darugo: to stand, stop, come to a halt (13)  
 Dawda: Dauda (man's name) (33)  
 dawrawol (ngol), dawraaji ('di): gown (37)  
 debbo (o), rew'be ('be): woman, wife (1, 17)  
 deftere (nde), defte ('de): book (2)  
 defugo: to cook, to prepare food (9)  
 dewer'diraawo (o), dewer'diraabe ('be): sibling, sister, brother (32)  
 diga: from (38)  
 dillugo: to go away, go (22)  
 doggugo: to run (24)  
 doole: perforce, obligatorily (39)  
 dow: on, above, on top of, up (15)  
 duniyaaru (ndu): world (40)  
 durugo: to herd (38)

## 'D

- 'daanugo: to sleep (13)  
 'dereewol (ngol), 'dereeeji ('di): paper, document (2)  
 'do: here (7)  
 'don: is at, is around (7)  
 'dum: it, he, she (1)  
 'dum wa'di: ago (27)  
 'dume: what (2)  
 'dumeejo (o), 'dume'en ('be) or 'beye'en ('be): what nationality?, of what ethnic group (1, 17)  
 'duu'd'be: many (people) (17)  
 'duu'dugo: to be many, much, plentiful, excessive (22)

## E

- e: and  
 eggugo: to migrate, change domicile (32)  
 ekkitugo: to learn (20)  
 en: first person plural subject pronoun (inclusive): we (12)  
 en: first person plural object pronoun (inclusive): us (24)  
 enen: first person plural emphatic pronoun (inclusive): we, us, ourselves (28)  
 esiraawo (o), esiraa'be ('be): in-law (32)

F

- faamugo: to understand (39)  
 fa'b'bijango: the day after tomorrow (36)  
 faddugo: to ward off (30)  
 fahin: also cf. haa fahin (13)  
 fajiri (ndi): morning (10)  
 fajiri cup: very early morning, around 5 a.m. (26)  
 fam'dugo: to be small (30)  
 Faransaajo (o), Faransa'en ('be): French person (17)  
 fayande (nde), payan'de ('de): cooking pot (6, 18)  
 feere: another, other, different (15)  
 feere feere: various (19)  
 fijirde (nde), pijir'de ('de): game (9)  
 fijugo: to play (a game) (9)  
 filugo: to trade, to retail (40)  
 findinugo: to awaken someone (40)  
 footo (nga): photograph, picture (13)  
 fu'd'dugo: to begin (36)  
 Fufoore: Fufore (place name) (40)  
 fuh: all, both, also (12)  
 Fulfulde: Fulfulde, Fula

G

- gaafara: excuse me, make way please, I beg your pardon (8)  
 gawri (ndi): millet, guinea corn (3)  
 geene ('de): grass (36)  
 gertogal (ngal), gertoo'de ('de): chicken (15)  
 Gi'daa'do: Gidado (man's name) (4)  
 Giirey: Girei (name of a town) (32)  
 go'd'do (o), wo'b'be ('be): a certain person, someone (17)  
 go'd'dum: something (18)  
 Gombe: Gombe (town in Northern Nigeria) (38)  
 goonga (nga): truth (26)  
 gooro (ngo), goorooje ('de): collarnut (37)  
 gorko (o), wor'be ('be): man, husband (1, 17)  
 gurel (ngel), gurelji ('di): village

H

- haa: at (8)  
 haa: until (14)  
 haa 'baawo: in back of, behind, in the rear (20)  
 haa dow: in the air, in the sky (15)  
 haa fahin: again, moreover (13)  
 haa jungo: in the hand (15)  
 haa les: on the ground (15)  
 haa nder: within, in (8)  
 haa yaasi: outside, the outside (16)  
 haa yeeso: in front of, in front, at the front of (20)  
 haala (ka), haalaaaji ('di): talk, palaver, matter, gossip (in plural) (26)  
 habaru (ndu), habaruuji ('di): news (22)  
 ha'b'bere (nde), ka'b'be ('de): a bundle (of anything) (3)

ha'b'bere gawri: *a bundle of guinea corn or millet (approx. 15 kilos)* (3)  
hande: *today* (8)  
hasitugo: *to have breakfast* (38)  
Hawsaajo (o), Hawsa'en ('be): *a Hausa person* (5, 17)  
he'bugo: *to obtain, to get, attain* (19)  
heesikeenya: *the day before yesterday* (36)  
heftugo: *to discover, find out* (39)  
he'ugo: *to be sufficient* (30)  
hikka: *this year* (27)  
him'be ('be): *people, relatives* (12)  
hinere (nde): *nostril* (25)  
hirtugo: *to spend the evening, eat dinner*  
hitaande (nde), kitaale ('de): *year* (27)  
hofnugo: *to greet* (24)  
hokkugo: *to give* (24)  
hollugo: *to show* (37)  
hoore (nde): *head* (25)  
hootugo: *to go home*  
hottollo (ko): *cotton* (3)  
hoynugo: *to make easy* (25)  
hu'b'birde (nde), ku'b'bir'de ('de): *place designated for a cooking fire* (20)  
hu'b'bugo: *to make a fire, light a fire* (30)  
hu'do (ko): *grass* (5)  
hunduko (ko): *mouth* (25)  
huunde (nde), kuuje ('de): *thing* (15)  
huuwugo: *to work* (11)

## I

ii: *yes* (18)  
innde (nde), inn'de ('de): *name* (5)

## J

jaabugo: *to answer* (27)  
Jaalingo: *Jalingo* (name of a town) (32)  
jaawngal (ngal), jaawle ('de): *guinea fowl* (32)  
ja'b'baama: *welcome* (5)  
ja'b'bugo: *to welcome* (41)  
ja'bugo: *to accept, receive* (39)  
jam: *health* (6)  
jamanu (ngu): *age, era, period* (40)  
jam koo'dume: *everything is fine* (12)  
jam ni tawon: *fine for the moment* (19)  
jangde (nde): *reading* (20)  
jangirde (nde), jangir'de ('de): *school* (10)  
jango: *tomorrow* (12)  
jangugo: *to read* (9)  
jarribugo: *to examine* (38)  
jawmu (o), jawmu'en ('be): *owner, master, possessor* (7)  
jawmu saare: *owner of the compound, head of the household* (7)  
jemma, jemmaare (nde), *night* (10)



jigaawal (ngal), jigaaje ('de): vulture (15)  
 jiiba (ka), jibaa'ji ('di): pocket (37)  
 jinnugo: to be used up (26)  
 jippugo: stay for a while, dismount (26)  
 jippu jam: stay well (26)  
 jogugo: to hold (19)  
 jokkere (nde), jokke ('de): arm (25)  
 joo'dugo: to sit, dwell, reside (13)  
 joonde (nde): sojourn, residence (40)  
 jooni: now (10)  
 jonta: now (10)  
 Jum'baare: Friday (10)  
 jungo (ngo), juu'de ('de): hand (14)  
 juulde (nde): prayer (23)  
 juulirde (nde), juulir'de ('de): mosque (10)  
 juulugo: to say the Muslim prayers (41)  
 juura: about 2 p.m. (36)

## K

kadi: then, indeed, even, also, moreover (1)  
 kam: indeed (3)  
 kam'be: third person plural emphatic pronoun: they, them, themselves (28)  
 kanko: third person singular emphatic pronoun: he/she, him/her, himself/herself (28)  
 kanti or kantiwa (nga), kantii'ji ('di): small shop, store (8, 19)  
 kare ('de): goods (13)  
 kay!: exclamation of surprise (13)  
 keenya: yesterday (22)  
 kilnii'dum: surprising (40)  
 kiiki'de, kiikii'deere (nde): evening (10)  
 kine ('de): nose (25)  
 ko: what?, = 'dume (32)  
 ko: or (18) cf. koo boo  
 kobo or koboore (nde), kobooje ('de): kobo, Nigerian cent (23)  
 ko'do (o), ho'b'be ('be): stranger, guest, visitor (5)  
 koloba or kolobaaru (ndu), kolobaaji ('di): bottle (8)  
 kombi: near, about, next to (16)  
 kondong (nde), kondongje ('de): banana (35)  
 koombowal (ngal), koombooje ('de): canoe, boat (31)  
 koo: interrogative (12)  
 koo boo: or, on the other hand (18)  
 koo'dume: anything, everything (12)  
 koowaagol (ngol): cornstalk fence (15)  
 kori: surely (33)  
 koroowal (ngal), koromje ('de): chair, stool (2)  
 kosam ('dam): milk (fresh or sour) (13)  
 kosngal (ngal), kos'de ('de): leg, foot (25)  
 koy'dum: easy, not too bad (21)  
 ku'b'bir'dum: firewood (lit. that which is kindled) (6)  
 kusel (ngel), kuselji ('di): meat (29)  
 kuugal (ngal), kuu'de ('de): work, exercise, activity, function (22)

## L

- laamii'do (o), laami'be ('be): *emir, king* (8, 21)  
 laanyugo: *to pole (a boat), to drive (a car)* (31)  
 laarugo: *to look at* (17)  
 laawol (ngol), laabi ('di): *road, way* (25)  
 ladde (nde): *uncultivated and usually unpopulated area, the bush* (10)  
 law: *quickly* (23)  
 lawlaw: *very quickly* (23)  
 le: *then, indeed* (29) leddi (ndi), lesdi (ndi): *ground, earth, land, country* (26)  
 leeso (ngo), leese ('de): *bed* (2, 18)  
 leggal (ngal), le'd'de ('de): *tree, piece of wood* (3)  
 lekki (ki): *tree (generic), medicine* (5)  
 les: *under, below, beneath, down* (15)  
 lesdi (ndi), leddi (ndi): *ground, earth, land, country* (26)  
 lewru (ndu), lebbi ('di): *moon, month* (26)  
 lewru 'do: *this month* (27)  
 lewru saaliindu: *last month* (27)  
 lewru darandu: *next month* (36)  
 liingu (ngu), li'd'di ('di): *fish* (5)  
 limugo: *to count* (34)  
 loonde (nde), loo'de ('de): *water storage pot* (18)  
 loosol (ngol), loosi ('di): *twig, switch, stick, pole* (36)  
 lootirde (nde): *soap* (23)  
 lortugo: *to return* (41)  
 lorugo: *to go back* (40)  
 luttugo: *to be remaining* (38)  
 luumo (ngo), luu'be ('de): *market, marketplace* (8)

## M

- ma, maa: *second person singular object pronoun: you* (25)  
 maa: *or* (18) cf. maa boo  
 maa, maa'da: *second person singular possessive pronoun: your* (25)  
 maa boo: *or, on the other hand* (18)  
 maadalla: *expression of pleasure, approval* (26)  
 maako: *third person singular possessive pronoun: his, her* (25)  
 maamiraawo (o), maamiraa'be ('be): *grandparent, grandfather, grandmother* (32)  
 Maamudu: *Mamudu (man's name)* (31)  
 maayo (ngo), maa'je ('de): *river* (8)  
 ma'b'be: *third person plural possessive pronoun: their* (26)  
 ma'b'bugo: *to close, cover* (9)  
 ma'b'bitugo: *to open, uncover* (9)  
 majjugo: *to be lost, be missing, to have vanished* (3)  
 malla: *or* (18)  
 ma||am: *sir*  
 mallum'jo (o), mallum'en ('be): *teacher* (1, 17)  
 man: *the one referred to* (5)  
 manda (ka): *salt* (26)  
 mangoro (nde), mangoro'je ('de): *mango* (35)  
 manoore (nde): *praise* (39)  
 marugo: *to possess, have* (19)  
 masin: *very, very much, a lot* (30)

maw'do (o), maw'be ('be): *a big one, adult* (1)  
 mawniraawo (o), mawniraa'be ('be): *older sibling* (32)  
 mawnugo: *to be big, adult, important* (30)  
 mawri: *next year* (36)  
 'ayram ... Maḥḥan.ḥ (w:man's name) (32)  
 mbaala (nga), baali ('di): *sheep, ewe* (15, 19)  
 mbe'du (ngu), be'di ('di): *small mat to cover pot, etc.* (39)  
 mbeewa (nga), bee'i ('di): *goat* (7, 19)  
 mbulku (ngu), bulki ('di): *water pot* (13)  
 mee'den, men: *first person plural possessive pronoun (inclusive): our* (26)  
 mee'dugo: *to do once, to have done before* (31)  
 meemugo: *to touch* (25)  
 mi: *first person singular subject pronoun: I* (12)  
 mi hooti: *I am going home* (15)  
 mi nani: *I understand* (12)  
 mi yetti: *I thank (you)* (14)  
 min: *first person plural subject pronoun (exclusive): we* (12)  
 min: *first person plural object pronoun (exclusive): us* (24)  
 min: *first person singular emphatic pronoun: I, me, myself* (28)  
 min boo kam: *as for me, as for myself* (emphatic expression) (26)  
 minin: *first person plural emphatic pronoun (exclusive): we, us, ourselves* (28)  
 minti or mintiire (nde), mintiiji ('di): *minute* (38)  
 minyiraawo (o), minyiraa'be ('be): *younger sibling* (31)  
 mo: *third person singular object pronoun: him, her* (24)  
 mo: *who* (39)  
 modibbo (o), modi'b'be ('be): *learned person, teacher* (5)  
 mood'on, mon: *second person plural possessive pronoun: your* (26)  
 mootaa (nga), mootaaaji ('di): *car* (15, 19)  
 mottugo: *to spin (fiber)* (9)  
 moy: *who* (1)  
 moyjo (o), moy'en ('be): *what type of person* (1)  
 muu'dum: *his, hers* (25)  
 Muusa: *Musa* (man's name) (5)

## N

naa: *negative interrogative* (3)  
 naane: *former time, formerly, previously* (14)  
 naange (nge): *sun* (5)  
 naawugo: *to ache, hurt, be sore, be in pain, feel pain* (25)  
 na'am: *here I am* (24)  
 nagge (nge), na'i ('di): *cow, cattle* (5, 19)  
 nanugo: *to understand, to hear* (22)  
 nanugo bel'dum: *to feel pleasure* (40)  
 Nasaraare (nde): *English or French language* (12)  
 nastugo: *to enter* (29)  
 nawliraawo (o), nawliraa'be ('be): *co<sup>1</sup>wife* (32)  
 nayeejo (o), naye'en ('be): *old man* (9, 17)  
 nayra: *naira* (unit of Nigerian currency) (35)  
 ndaa: *here (is, are)* (2)  
 ndabbawa (nga), dabbaaaji ('di): *domestic animal* (21)  
 nde: *times (multiplication)* (21)  
 nde: *when* (41)

nden: *then* (22)  
 nder: *within, in* (8)  
 ndey: *when* (10)  
 ndikka: *better, it is better, it is better that, please* (29)  
 ndiyam ('dam): *water* (7)  
 ndottiijo (o), ndotti'en ('be): *respectable man over 35* (9)  
 ne'd'do (o), yim'be ('be): *person* (24)  
 nee'bugo: *to be a long time, be slow, take a long time* (22)  
 nelal (ngal): *errand* (24)  
 nelugo: *to send* (24)  
 ngabbu (ngu), gabbi ('di): *hippopotamus* (7)  
 ngam: *for, because of, because* (18)  
 ngam 'dume?: *why?* (27)  
 ngapaleewol (ngol), ngapaleeji ('di): *man's garment* (7, 19)  
 ngeccawol (ngol), ngeccaaji ('di): *story* (17)  
 ngesa (ka), geše ('de): *farm, field* (7)  
 ngewta (ka), ngewtaaji ('di): *conversation* (23)  
 ni, ni'i: *thus* (19)  
 njamndi (ndi), jam'de ('de): *o'clock* (38)  
 -no: *Past suffix* (14)  
 noddugo: *to summon, call* (24)  
 nofuru (ndu), noppi ('di): *ear* (25)  
 non: *so, thus, like that* (13)  
 nonnon: *just so, exactly so, all right* (13)  
 nonde (nde): *type, size, color* (16)  
 noy: *how, how many, how much* (5)  
 noy 'bandu: *how's your health* (25)  
 noy a waali: *did you sleep well* (29)  
 noy saare: *how's your household* (19)  
 nyallugo: *to spend the day*  
 nyamdu (ndu): *food* (7)  
 nyaamugo: *to eat* (9)  
 nyaamugo luumo: *to take part in a market, to be held (market)* (11)  
 nyande (nde): *day* (10)  
 nyebbam ('dam): *oil (usually cooking)* (7)  
 nyi'bugo: *to build, construct* (36)  
 nyiiri (ndi): *porridge made from guinea corn* (7)

## O

o: *third person singular subject pronoun: he, she, it* (11)  
 on: *second person plural subject pronoun: you* (12)  
 on: *second person plural object pronoun: you* (24)  
 onon: *second person plural emphatic pronoun: you, yourselves* (28)  
 ooho: *yes* (3)

## P

Pariya: *Paria (place name)* (8)  
 pataakewol (ngol), pataakeeji ('di): *letter, note* (9)  
 peetel: *little* (39)

peewol (ngol): cold (30)  
pellel (ngel), pelleji ('di): place (39)  
piiroowal (ngal), piirooji ('di): airplane (15)  
poy: many, a lot (3)  
puccu (ngu), pucci ('di): horse (5)  
pukaraajo (o), fukaraa'be ('be): student (1)  
Pullo (o), Ful'be ('be): Pullo, Fulani

## R

ranwugo: to be white (30)  
reedu (ndu): stomach (25)  
reeta (ka), reetaaji ('di): half (38)  
remugo: to cultivate (31)  
resugo: to put down, deposit (17)  
roondugo: to carry (a load on the head) (13)  
rowani or rowaniire (nde): last year (27)  
rowtani: two years ago (27)  
ruumorde (nde), duumor'di ('di): rainy season encampment (39)

## S

saa'a (nga): luck (31)  
Saalihu: Salihu (man's name) (2)  
saare (nde), ci'e ('de): compound, household, home (2)  
saare laamii'do: home of the emir, palace (8)  
sa'i nde: the hour that (41)  
Salaasa: Tuesday (10)  
salaamu aleykum: peace be with you (9)  
sappugo: to point (25)  
sam: at all, ever (31)  
sannu: hello, hi (3)  
sannu ma: a greeting to one person (4)  
sawru (ndu): stick, cane (14)  
se'd'da: a little (25)  
se'd'da se'd'da: just a little (28)  
sey: except, only, please (11)  
sey nyande go: until another day (lit.), goodbye (fig.) (14)  
sey to: until (23)  
sey to a lortoyi: until you return (41)  
sey to a warti: until you return (23)  
sey to mi lortoyi: until I return (41)  
sey to mi warti: until I return (23)  
sey wakkati feere: until another time (35)  
sey yeeso: so long, see you soon (8)  
siisi: 5 kobo (35)  
silminugo: to greet someone with salaamu aleykum (30)  
siwtaare (nde): rest, holiday, vacation (12)  
siwtu jam: rest well (lit.) goodbye (fig.) (11)  
somugo: to be tired (22)  
sondu (ndu), colli ('di): bird (5)  
soobaaajo (o), soobaa'en ('be): friend (27)  
soodugo: to buy (9)

soofugo: *to be wet, to urinate (euphemistic)* (30)  
soorowol (ngol), soorooji ('di): *mud roofed or flat roofed house* (15)  
soorugo: *to sell* (17)  
su'btugo: *to choose, select* (36)  
suley or suleere (nde), suleeje ('de): *a coin worth 10 kobo* (35)  
Sutura: *Sutura (woman's name)* (9)  
suudu (ndu), cuu'di ('di): *small house with thatched roof; hut, room* (3)

## T

taa: *do not* (23)  
taaga (nga), taagaa'ji ('di): *window* (13)  
taalol (ngol), taali ('di): *tale* (24)  
taaniraawo (o), taaniraa'be ('be): *grandchild* (33)  
tammugo: *to think* (22)  
tan: *only* (21)  
tawon: *still, (not) yet* (12)  
tawugo: *to find* (22)  
tebur (nga), teburji ('di): *table* (2, 19)  
te'ugo: *to marry, to marry and live at* (32)  
tiggugo: *to set up a stick or pole* (36)  
tiitugo: *to thatch* (36)  
timminugo: *to end, to bring to an end* (36)  
timmugo: *to be finished* (41)  
tingyeere (nde), tingyeeje ('de): *onion* (29)  
tiniido (o), tiniibe ('be): *zealous person, industrious person* (39)  
to: *if* (23)  
tokkugo: *to follow* (22)  
ton: *there* (7)  
too: *there, over there* (15)  
too: *okay* (5)  
toy: *where (is, are)* (2)  
tumaatir or tumaatiire (nde), tumaatirji ('di): *tomato* (29)  
tumude (nde), tummu'de ('de): *calabash* (3, 18)  
Tuurankejo (o), Tuuranko'en: *European, English person* (17)

## U

Umaru: *Umaru (man's name)* (32)  
ummugo: *to get up* (25)  
undugal (ngal), undu'de ('de): *pestle* (15, 18)  
unordu (ndu): *mortar* (15)  
unugo: *to pound (in mortar)* (11)  
use: *a greeting derived from the verb usugo: to express appreciation* (2)  
use e warugo: *greetings upon your arrival* (8)  
useko: *response to a greeting; by itself, thank you* (2)  
useni: *please* (29)  
ustugo: *to reduce, decrease* (35)  
Usumaanu: *Usumanu (man's name)* (1)

W

- waalde (nde), bal'de ('de): corral (8)  
 waalu jam: sleep well, good night (13)  
 waalugo: to lie down, spend the night (13)  
 waancugo: to walk (39)  
 waawugo: to be able (31)  
 waddugo: to bring (29)  
 wa'dugo: to do, make, cause (9)  
 wa'dugo: to be okay (39)  
 waflaare (nde): pillow (3)  
 wakkati or wakkatiire (nde), wakkatiiji ('di): time (23)  
 wakkati nde: the time that (41)  
 walaa: there (is, are) not (3)  
 wallugo: to help (36)  
 wartugo: to come back (23)  
 warugo: to come (8)  
 wa''ugo: to mount, climb, ride (31)  
 wawru (ndu): well (8)  
 wayrugo: to leave off, to be a long time without (31)  
 welugo: to be pleasant, nice, good tasting (30)  
 windugo: to write (9)  
 wi'ugo: to say, speak, speak to (24)  
 wo'd'dugo: to be far (30)  
 wolwugo: to speak, talk, converse (12)  
 wonugo: to be, exist (15)  
 woodi: there (is, are) (3)  
 woodugo: to have (21)  
 woo'di: is nice, good, attractive, fine (13)  
 woo'dugo: to be nice, good, attractive, fine (41)  
 woojugo: to be red (30)  
 wuro (ngo), gure ('de): town, city (12)  
 wurtugo: to go out, come out (41)  
 wuuwugo: to sweep (16)

Y

- Yaakubu: Yakubu (man's name) (9)  
 yaadugo: to accompany, go with (40)  
 yaarugo: to take to a place (32)  
 yahugo: to go (10)  
 yam: first person singular object pronoun: me cf. am (24)  
 yam'ditugo: to be recovered from an illness, feel better, (25)  
 yam'dugo: to be well (30)  
 yanugo: to fall (40)  
 yarugo: to drink (17)  
 yaasi: outside, the outside (16)  
 yawwa: exclamation of pleasure or approval (4)  
 yeccugo: to tell (17)  
 yeeso (ngo): face, front (20)  
 yeeso: in front of, in front, at the front of (20)  
 yejjitugo: to forget (23)  
 Yeriima: Yerima (traditional royal title) (36)

yettoore Allah: *thanks be to Allah* (29)  
yettugo: *to thank* (14)  
yi'dugo: *to love* (22)  
yiidugo: *to meet* (25)  
yiite (nde), yiiteeji ('di): *fire* (30)  
yiitere (nde), giite ('de): *eye* (25)  
yillugo: *to visit* (26)  
yim'be ('be): *people, relatives* (12, 26)  
yi'ugo: *to see* (28)  
yonnde (nde): *entrance to a compound* (9)  
yoorugo: *to be dry* (30)  
yottu danki: *come to the shelter* (lit.) *come in* (fig.) (16)  
yottugo: *to reach, arrive at* (32)

## ry

'yamol'(ngol), 'yami ('di): *question* (21)  
'yamugo: *to ask* (27)  
'Yoola: *Yola* (capital of Gongola State) (8)

## Z

Zeynabu: *Zainabu* (woman's name) (1)





